PREFACE.

In response to the demand for a Shorter Latin Grammar based on the GILDERSLIEVE-LODGE work of 1894 the following manual has been prepared. Historical detail and grammatical exposition intended for advanced students mainly have been discarded, and the phraseology has been simplified wherever it seemed possible without a sacrifice of scientific exactness. Still greater abridgment might have been more in accordance with methods that are in vogue just now; but a grammar that shall serve the average student throughout his course in school or college cannot be reduced to a skeleton, and we have not been able to gain our own consent to save space by limiting the illustrative examples to lean and meaningless sentences, holding as we do that the pupil ought to have something more to remember than a mere group of words. Much attention has been paid to the typography, and by retaining the old section-numbers (as has been done except in the list of verbs, 137–165) the parallel use of the larger and the smaller grammars has been facilitated.

In conclusion, we desire to express our obligations to Dr. W. Gordon McCabe, Headmaster of the University School; Richmond, Va., who has read the book in proof-sheets and has given us the advantage of his scholarly criticisms; and to Mr. Charles W. Bain, Headmaster of the Sewanee Grammar School in the University of the South, who has also read all the proof-sheets and given material assistance in adapting the book to the wants of younger students.

By these criticisms and others that have reached us we have endeavored to profit, and it is hoped that a wider sphere of usefulness awaits this result of our joint labors.

Basil L. Gildersleeve.
Gonzalez Lodge.

Baltimore and Bryn Mawr, June 1, 1898.
CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

Letters and Syllables . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1-15
  Alphabet, 1; Vowels, 2, 3; Diphthongs, 4; Conso-
nants, 6, 7; Syllables, 10, 11; Quantity, 12-14;
Accentuation, 15.

Parts of Speech . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16

Inflection of the Substantive . . . . . . . . . 17-71
  Definitions, 18; Gender, 19-21; Number, 22;
Cases, 28-25; Declensions, 26; Endings, 27; First
Declension, 29, 30; Second Declension, 31-34; Third
Declension, 35-60; Fourth Declension, 61, 62; Fifth
Declension, 63, 64; Greek Substantives, 65, 66; Ir-
regular Substantives, 67-71.

Inflection of the Adjective . . . . . . . . . . . 72-90
  Definition, 72; First and Second Declension, 73-
76; Pronominal Adjectives, 76; Third Declension,
77-83; Irregular Adjectives, 84, 85; Comparison of
Adjectives, 86-90.

Adverbs . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 91-93
  Formation of Adverbs, 91, 92; Comparison, 93.

Numerals . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 94-98
  Cardinals, 94; Ordinals, 94; Distributives, 97;
Adverbs, 98.

Pronouns . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 99-111
  Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demon-
strative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; In-
definites, 107; Adjectives, 108; Correlative, 109-111.

Inflection of the Verb . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 112-175
  Definitions, 112, 113; Endings, 114, 115; Inflection
of esse, 116, 117; of prōdēssee, 118; of possee, 119. Reg-
ular Verbs, 120-167; Division, 120; Rules for forming
Tenses, 121. First Conjugation, 122; Second Conju-
gation, 123, 124; Third Conjugation, 125, 126; Fourth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS.</th>
<th>vii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gerund and Gerundive</td>
<td>425-433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive, 428; Dative, 429; Accusative, 430; Ablative, 431; with Prepositions, 432, 433.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine</td>
<td>434-436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative, 435; Ablative, 436.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particles</td>
<td>437, 438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>439-449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negatives, 441-449.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete (Interrogative) Sentence</td>
<td>450-471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Simple Questions, 453-457; Direct Disjunctive Questions, 458, 459; Indirect Questions, 460; Moods in Direct, 462-466; Moods in Indirect, 467.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Sentence</td>
<td>472-670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coördinate Sentence</td>
<td>473-503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copulative, 474-482; Adversative, 488-491; Disjunctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinate Sentences</td>
<td>504-670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses, 509-519; Reflexive in, 520-522.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Sentences</td>
<td>523-537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced by quod, 524, 525; in Accusative and Infinitive, 526, 527, 532-535; in Nominative and Infinitive, 528; in Participle, 536, 537.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal Sentences</td>
<td>538-542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced by quod, quis, etc., 539-541; by quod, with verbs of Emotion, 542.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences of Design and Tendency</td>
<td>543-558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final, 544-550; Pure Final, 545; Complementary Final, 546-549; After Verbs of Fear, 550.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive, 551; Pure Consecutive, 552; Complementary Consecutive, 553-557; Exclamatory Questions, 558.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Sentences</td>
<td>559-588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-579; Subsequent Action, 574-577; Sentences with cum, 578-588.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Sentences</td>
<td>589-602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical, 595; Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Incomplete, 598-601; Of Comparison, 602.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concessive Sentences</td>
<td>603-609</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Relative Sentences .......................... 610-637
  Concord, 614-621; Tenses, 622, 623; Moods, 624-
  637.
Comparative Sentences ....................... 638-644
  Correlative, 642; with atque or et, 643; with quam,
  644.
The Abridged Sentence ....................... 645-663
  Historical Infinitive, 647; Oritzia Obliqua, 648;
  Moods in, 650-652; Tenses in, 653-655; Conditional
  Sentences in, 656-659; Pronouns, 660; Partial Ob-
  liquity, 662, 663.
Participial Sentences ...................... 664-670
Arrangement of Words ...................... 671-679
Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric .......... 688-700

PROSODY.

Quantity .................................... 702-715
  General Rules, 702-706; of Final Syllables, 707-
  709; of Monosyllables, 710-713; of Compounds, 715.
Figures of Prosody ......................... 719-728
Versification .............................. 729-785
  Definition, 729-733; Iambic Rhythms, 757-762;
  Dactylic Rhythms, 783-785.

Appendices ................................. 298-304
  Roman Calendar, Roman Measures, Roman Money,
  Roman Names, 293, 294; Rules of Gender, 295, 296;
  Principal Irregular Forms, 296, 297.
Index of Verbs ............................. 298-304
Principal Rules of Syntax ................. 305-312
General Index ............................. 313-328
LATIN GRAMMAR.

ETYMOLUMGY.

Alphabet.

1. The Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters:

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z

Remarks.—1. C had originally the sound of G, but gradually came to have the sound of K, and finally supplanted K except in a few words, such as Kalendas, Kæsæ, which were usually abbreviated, Kal., K. The original force of C is retained only in the abbreviations C. (for Gæius) and Cn. (for Gnaeus).

2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel u in the Latin alphabet; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.

Vowels.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, (y); and are divided:

1. According to their quality (i.e., the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

   guttural (or back), a, o, u;   palatal (or front), e, i, (y).

2. According to their quantity or prolongation (i.e., the time required for pronunciation), into

   long, (—);   short, (—).

Remark.—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called common (see 18), and are distinguished thus:

=, by preference short;   >, by preference long.

\[ \begin{align*}
    a &= \text{a} \text{ in } \text{father.} & \delta &= \text{o} \text{ in bone.} \\
    e &= \text{e} \text{ in } \text{prey.} & \theta &= \text{oo} \text{ in moon.} \\
    i &= i \text{ in } \text{caprice.} & y &= u \text{ in sûr (French), German fi.}
\end{align*} \]

**Remark.**—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

**Diphthongs.**

4. *Diphthongs, or double sounds,* are to be pronounced so that both sounds can be heard in a slur.

\[ \begin{align*}
    \text{ae} &= \text{aye (əh-eh).} & \text{ei} &= \text{ei} \text{ in feint (drawled).} \\
    \text{oe} &= \text{oy in boy.} & \text{eu} &= \text{eu} \text{ in Spanish deuda (əh-oo).} \\
    \text{au} &= \text{ou in our.} & \text{ui} &= \text{we, almost.}
\end{align*} \]

**Remark.**—\(\text{As was perhaps pronounced } \dddot{\text{s}} \text{ as early as the Augustan age.}\)

5. The sign \(\dddot{\text{.}}\) (Diæresis, i.e., separation) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: \(\dddot{\text{m}}, \text{air;} \text{ Oenomatis, aloë.}\)

**Consonants.**

6. Consonants are divided:

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

\[ \begin{align*}
    \text{Labials (lip-sounds):} & \quad b, \ p, \quad (\text{ph}), \ f, \ v, \ m. \\
    \text{Dentals (tooth-sounds):} & \quad d, \ t, \quad (\text{th}), \ l, \ n, \ r, \ s. \\
    \text{Gutturals (throat-sounds):} & \quad g, \ c, \ \text{qu}, \quad (\text{ch}), \ h, \ n \text{ (see 7).}
\end{align*} \]

**Note.**—Instead of dental and guttural, the terms *lingual* and *palatal* are often used.

2. According to their *prolongation,* into

A. *Semi-vowels:* of which

\[ \begin{align*}
    l, \ m, \ n, \ r, & \text{ are liquids (m and n being nasals).} \\
    h & \text{ is a } \text{breathing.} \\
    s & \text{ is a } \text{sibilant.}
\end{align*} \]

B. *Mutes:* to which belong

\[ \begin{align*}
    \text{P-mutes,} & \quad p, \quad (\text{ph}), \ f, \quad \text{labials.} \\
    \text{T-mutes,} & \quad t, \quad (\text{th}), \quad \text{dentals.} \\
    \text{K-mutes,} & \quad k, \ c, \ \text{qu}, \ g, \quad (\text{ch}), \ \text{gutturals.}
\end{align*} \]

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ.*
Mutes are further divided into

- **Tenués** (thin, smooth): \( p, t, k, c, qu \), hard (surd).
- **Mediae** (middle): \( b, d, g \), soft (sonant).
- **Aspirātae** (aspirate, rough): \( ph, th, ch \), aspirate.

Those on the same line are said to be of the same order.

3. **Double consonants** are: \( s = dz \) in adze; \( x = cs (kw), gs \); \( i \) and \( u \) between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

**Sounds of the Consonants.**

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

- \( C \) is hard throughout = \( k \).
- \( Ch \) in Latin words is pronounced like \( k \); in Greek words it = \( kh \) and is commonly pronounced as \( ch \) in German.
- \( G \) is hard throughout, as in get, give.
- \( H \) at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.
- \( I \) consonant (\( J \)) has the sound of a broad \( y \); nearly like \( y \) in yule.
- \( N \) has a guttural nasal sound before \( c, g, q \), as in anchor, anguish.
- \( Qu = kw \) (nearly); before \( o, qu = c \).
- \( R \) is trilled.
- \( S \) and \( X \) are always hard, as in hiss, axe.
- \( T \) is hard throughout, as in tone; never like \( t \) in nation.
- \( U \) consonant (\( V \)) is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur.

**Syllables.**

(8, 9) **10.** The syllable is the unit of pronunciation; it consists of a vowel, or of a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: \( a-mō, I \) love; \( li-xa, a \) sutler.

Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including \( mn \)) belongs to the following vowel; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel: \( a-sper, rough; fu-ustus, lucky; li-bri, books; a-mnis, river. \)
Remarks.—1. The combinations that cannot begin a word are (a) doubled consonants: sīcus, dry; (b) a liquid and a consonant: almus, fostering; am-bō, both; an-guis, snake; ar-bor, tree.

2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words: ab-īgō, I drive off; rēs-pūblica, commonwealth.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the ultimate (última, last); the next to the last the penult (paene, almost, and última); the one before the penult, the antepenult (ante, before, and paenúltima).

Remark.—A syllable is said to be open when it ends with a vowel; close, when it ends with a consonant.

Quantity.

12. Distinguish carefully between the length of a syllable and the length of a vowel:

1. A syllable is said to be long by nature, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: mōs, custom; caelum, heaven.

Remarks.—1. A vowel before nf, ns, gn, gn, is long by nature: infelix, unlucky; mēnsa, table; ēgmen, train; ēgnum, lamb.

2. Before a consonant (j) a vowel is long by nature: Pompēius, Pompey; except in compounds of fugum, yoke (blīgus, two-horse), and in a few other words.

2. A syllable is said to be long by position, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ārs, art; cōllum, neck; ābrumpō, I break off; pēr mare, through the sea; nēx, murder.

3. A syllable is said to be short when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants: lōcus, place; tābula, picture.

Remark.—A vowel is short by nature when followed by another vowel (h does not count), or by nt, nd: dēus, God; innoēntia, innocence; amāndus, to be loved.

13. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with l or r, is said to be common (anōps, doubtful): tenēbrae, darkness.

Remark.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.
14. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, cruel; *concludō*, I shut up (from *claudō*, I shut); *cōgō* (from *co-аго*), I drive together.

Accentuation.

15. 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *bόnus*, good.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandāre*, to commit; *māndāre*, to chew; *intēgrum*, entire; *circumdare*, to surround; *supérstites*, survivors.

Remarks.—1. The little appendages (enclitics), que, ve, ne, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lūmināque*, and lights; *flūmināve*, or rivers; *vōnerāne!* from a plowshare? Dissyllables and words accented on the penult follow the ordinary rule of accentuation: *égomet*, I indeed; *amāreve*, or to love.

2. Compounds (not prepositional) of *facere* and *dare* retain the accent on the verbal form: *caesfácit*, vēnumdāre.

3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in *iūs* of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in *iūm*, retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative: *Vérgilii*.

Parts of Speech.

16. The Parts of Speech are the Noun, the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles, defined as follows:

1. The Substantive (also loosely called noun) gives a name: *vir*, a man; *Cōcles*, Cōcles; *dōnum*, a gift.

2. The Adjective adds a quality to the Substantive: *bonus vir*, a good man.

3. The Pronoun points out without giving the name: *hic*, this; *ille*, that; *ego*, I.

4. The Verb expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command: *amāt*, he loves; *amēt*, may he love; *amā*, love thou!

5. The Adverb shows circumstances.

6. The Preposition shows originally local relation.

7. The Conjunction shows connection.
Remarks.—1. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: ah! ah! and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

2. The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

Inflection.

17. Inflection (inflexiō, bending) is that change in the form of a word which shows a change in the relations of that word. It occurs chiefly at the end of the word.

The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called declension, and nouns and pronouns are said to be declined.

The inflection of verbs is called conjugation, and verbs are said to be conjugated.

The Substantive.

18. A Substantive is either concrete or abstract; concrete when it gives the name of a person, place, or thing; abstract when it gives the name of a quality; as amicitia, friendship.

Concrete substantives are either proper or common:

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things: Horātius, Horace; Neāpolis, Naples; Padus, Po.

Common when they are common to a whole class: dominus, a lord; urbs, a city; amnis, a river.

Gender of Substantives.

19. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine. Masculine: Rōmulus; Iūpiter; vir, man; equus, horse. Feminine: Cornēlia; Iūnō; fēmina, woman; equa, mare.
20. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. Names of months and winds, most names of rivers, and many names of mountains are masculine: as Aprilis, April; Aquilō, the north wind; Alba, the River Elbe; Athēs, Mount Athos.

Remarks.—1. Of the rivers, Allia, Lēthē, Matrona, Sagra, Styx are feminine; Albula, Acherōn, Garumna vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

2. Of the mountains, Alpēs, the Alps, is feminine; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in ἀ (G. āe), ὅ (G. ᾤa).

II. Many names of countries, islands, cities, plants, and trees are feminine: Aegyptus, Egypt; Rhodus, Rhodes; pirus, a pear-tree; abīēs, a fir-tree.

Remarks.—1. Many names of countries (especially Greek) and islands in ἀ (G. ā) follow the termination, and are masculine, except Aegyptus, Cyprus, Peloponnēsus, Rhodus, and some others, mainly Greek.

2. Most names of trees with stems in -tro (N. -ter) are masculine: oleaster, wild olive; pīnaster, wild pine. So also most shrubs: dūnum, bramble-bush; rhūs, sumach. Neuter are acer, maple; papīver, poppy (usually); rōbur, oak; sīlēr, willow; sūber, cork-tree; tūber, mush-

III. All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are neuter: fās, right; ā longum, ā long; scire tuum, thy knowing; triste valē, a sad "farewell."

21. 1. Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: civis, citizen (male or female); comes, companion; iūdex, judge.

2. Substantiva mōbilia are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: magister, master, teacher; magistra, mistress; servus, serva, slave (masc. and fem.); victor, victrix, conqueror (masc. and fem.).

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, mās, male, and fēmina, female, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: pāvō mās (masculus), peacock; pāvō fēmina, peahen. These substantives are called epicene.
Number.

22. In Latin there are two numbers: the *Singular*, denoting *one*; the *Plural*, denoting *more than one*.

Cases.

23. In Latin there are six cases:

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).
   Answers the question: *who? what?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).
   Answers the question: *whose? whereof?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).
   Answers the question: *to whom? for whom?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).
   Answers the question: *whom? what?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).
   Answers the question: *where? whence? wherewith?*

*Note.*—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers the question: *where?*) is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3rd Declensions; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive; it is often blended with the Ablative in *form, regularly in syntax*. The Instrumental (answers the question: *wherewith?*), which is found in other members of the Indo-European family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into *Cásis Rëctí*, or Independent Cases, and *Cásis Obliqui*, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are *Cásis Rëctí*, the rest *Cásis Obliqui*.

25. The case-forms arise from the combination of the *case-endings* with the *stem*.

1. The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

*Notes.*—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case-ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm *mënzs*, the stem is not *mëns*, but *mëns₃*, the final *s* having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural *mënzs₃*. So -d, the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (₃, ₃₁, ₁, ₃). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.
2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length; the root was probably a mono-syllable. In pennä the stem is pennä-; in pennula, pennulä-; in pennätulus, pennätulo-; the root is pet (potna, pesna, pennna), and is found in pet-ere, to fall upon, to fly at; Greek, πέτωμα, πέτανον; English, feather.

2. The case-endings are as follows:

Sg.—N.V. Wanting or m. f. -s; n. -m. Pl.—N.V. -es; -l; n. -a.
G. -is; -l.
D. -s.
Ac. -m, -em.
Ab. Wanting; -e.

Declensions.

26. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (stem-characteristic).

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEM CHARACTERISTIC</th>
<th>GENITIVE SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>ã (ä).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>ì, ò, a consonant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARK.—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, I and ü being semi-consonants.

27. The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>a.</td>
<td>us; wanting; um.</td>
<td>s; wanting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>ae.</td>
<td>l.</td>
<td>is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ae.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
<td>l.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>am.</td>
<td>um.</td>
<td>em, im.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>a.</td>
<td>e; wanting; um.</td>
<td>s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
<td>ò.</td>
<td>e, l.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST DECLENSION.

IV.  V.
N. V.  us; ã.
G.  ûs.
D.  úl, ã.
Ac.  um; û.
Ab.  û.

Plural.

I. II. III.
N. V.  ûe.
G.  ûrum.
D. Ab.  ûs.
Ac.  ûs; ã.

IV. V.
N. V.  ûs; ûs.
G.  ûnum.
D. Ab.  ûbus, ûbus.
Ac.  ûs; ûs.


1. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in -us.

2. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative cases are alike in the Plural.

3. Neuter substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike; in the Plural these cases always end in ã.

4. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike in all declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in ã, which is weakened from an original ã. The Nominative is the simple stem, with no ending.

Se.—N. mönsa (f.), the table, a table.
G. mönsæ, of the table, of a table.
D. mönsæ, to, for the table, to, for a table.
Ac. mönsam, the table, a table.
V. mönsa, O table!
Ab. mönsk, from, with, by the table, from, with, by a table.
SECOND DECLENSION.

Pl. — N. mensus, the tables, tables.
G. mensusrum, of the tables, of tables.
D. mensus, to, for the tables, to, for tables.
Ac. mensus, the tables, tables.
V. mensus, O tables! tables!
Ab. mensus, from, with, by the tables, from, with, by tables.

Remarks.—1. The early ending of the Gen., ās, is retained in the classical period only in the form familiaris, of a family, in combination with pater, father, māter, mother, filius, son, filia, daughter; viz., pater-familiaris, materfamiliaris, filius familiaris, filia familiaris.

2. The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive: Rōmae, at Rome; militiae, abroad.

3. The Gen. Sing. sometimes ends in -ā in poetry; the Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -rum; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words amphora (amphora, measure of tonnage), and drachma, franc—(Greek coin). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronyms in -de, -dās, and compounds of -cola (from colō, I inhabit) and -gena (from root gen, begel).

4. The ending -ēbus is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of dea, goddess, and filia, daughter.

30. Rule of Gender.—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

Exception.—Hadria, the Adriatic, is masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

31. The stem ends in ē, which in the classical period is usually weakened to ū. In combination with the case-endings it contracts into ē or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neuters) it is weakened to ę.

The Nominative ends in s (m. and f.) and m (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, ē, is preceded by r, drop the us and e of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert ē before the r if it was preceded by a consonant.

The final -o is often retained after u or v until the first century A.D.; as servos, slave.
(32) **33. Hortus (m.), garden; puer (m.), boy; ager (m.), field; bellum (n.), war,** are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>So.</td>
<td>hortus</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>bellum,</td>
<td>hortus</td>
<td>puer,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>horti</td>
<td>pueri</td>
<td>agri</td>
<td>belli,</td>
<td>horti</td>
<td>pueri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>hortō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>bellō,</td>
<td>hortō</td>
<td>puerō,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>hortum,</td>
<td>puerum,</td>
<td>agrum,</td>
<td>bellum,</td>
<td>hortum,</td>
<td>puerum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>hortē</td>
<td>puerē</td>
<td>ager,</td>
<td>bellum,</td>
<td>hortē</td>
<td>puerē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hortis,</td>
<td>pueris,</td>
<td>agris,</td>
<td>bellis,</td>
<td>hortis,</td>
<td>pueris,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks.**

1. Stems in -io have Gen. Sing. for the most part in i until the first century A.D.; without change of accent: ingeni (N. ingenium), of genius, Vergil; of Vergil. See 15, b. 3.

2. Proper names in -ius (stems in -io) have Voc. in i, without change of accent: Antōni, Tuuli, Gāli, Vergilī. Filius, son, and genius, genus, form their Voc. in like manner: fili, geni. In solemn discourse -us of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. So regularly deus, God!

3. The Loc. Sing. ends in i (apparent Genitive), as Rhodī, at Rhodes, Tarentī, at Tarentum.

4. In the Gen. Pl. -um instead of ārum is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, numnum, of moneys = sestertium, of sesterces; denārium; talentum, of talents; modium, of measures; itigerum; medium; stadion. Likewise in some names of persons: deum (also -ārum); liberum; virum (poetical, except in technical expressions, as triumvirum); socium. Most of these have also the regular endings.

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Duāli: Delphīs, at Delphi.

6. Deus, God, is irregular, and declined as follows: Sg. N. V. deus; G. dei; D. dei; Ac. deum; Ab. dei. Pl. N. V. dei, dī, dī; G. deum, deiōrum; D. Ab. deiō, reliō, dīā; Ac. deiōs.

**34. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in -us are masculine; in -um neuter.

**Exceptions.**—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, Corinthus, Samus. 2d. Most trees, as, fagus, beech; pirus, pear-tree. 3d. Alvus, belly; colus, distaff; humus, ground; vannus, wheat-fan. 4th. Many Greek nouns, as, atomus, atom.

Neuters are: pelagus, sea; virus, venom; vulgus, the rabble.
THIRD DECLENSION.

35. 1. The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels i and u.

2. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

I.—Consonant Stems.  II.—Vowel Stems.
A. Liquid stems, ending in l, m, n, r.  1. Ending in l.
B. Sibilant stems, ending in s.  2. Ending in u.
   (1. Ending in a P-mute, b, p. (Compare the Fourth
C. Mute stems, 2. Ending in a K-mute, g, c. Declension.)
   (3. Ending in a T-mute, d, t.

36. 1. The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in a, which, however, is dropped after l, n, r, s, and combines with a K-mute to form x. The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

2. Neuters always form:

The nominative without the case-ending a.

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in â.

I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

A.—Liquid Stems.

1. Liquid Stems in l.

(37, 38) 39. Form the Nominative without a. These comprise:

A. Those in which the stem-characteristic is preceded by a vowel:
B. Two neuter substantives with stems in -ll, one of which is lost in the Nominative: mel, mellia, honey; fel, fellis, gall.

Sg.—N. cōnsul, consul (m.).  Pl.—N. cōnsulēs, the consuls.
G. cōnslus,  G. cōnsulum,
D. cōnsul,  D. cōnsulibus,
Ac. cōnsulem,  Ac. cōnsulae,
V. cōnsul,  V. cōnsulēs,
Ab. cōnsule,  Ab. cōnsulibus,
CONSONANT STEMS.

Rules of Gender.—1. Stems in -l are masculine.

Exceptions: su, ochre, is neuter, and occasionally su, salt.

2. Stems in -ll are neuter.

2. Liquid Stems in m.

40. Nominative with a. One example only: hiem(p)s, winter (f.); Gen., hiem-is, Dat., hiem-i, etc.

3. Liquid Stems in n.

41. Most masculine and feminine stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o.

Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem-characteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding i to e.

42. **Masculine.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.—N.</th>
<th>leō, lion (m.)</th>
<th>imagō, likeness (f.)</th>
<th>nōmen, name (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>leōnis,</td>
<td>imaginis,</td>
<td>nōminis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>leōnī,</td>
<td>imaginis,</td>
<td>nōminis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>leōnem,</td>
<td>imaginem,</td>
<td>nōmen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>leō,</td>
<td>imagō,</td>
<td>nōmen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>leōne,</td>
<td>imagīne,</td>
<td>nōmine,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pl.—N.</th>
<th>leōnēs,</th>
<th>imagīnēs,</th>
<th>nōmina,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>leōnum,</td>
<td>imagīnum,</td>
<td>nōminum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>leōnibus,</td>
<td>imagīnibus,</td>
<td>nōminibus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>leōnēs,</td>
<td>imagīnēs,</td>
<td>nōmina,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>leōnēs,</td>
<td>imagīnēs,</td>
<td>nōmina,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>leōnibus,</td>
<td>imagīnibus,</td>
<td>nōminibus,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular formations: carō, G. carneis, flesh; Anid, G. Aniēnis, the Anio river; Nāriō, G. Nāriēnis, a proper name. Sangula, blood, and pollis, flour, drop the stem-characteristic and add s to form nominative; G. sanguinis, pollinis.

43. Rules of Gender.—

1. Masculine are nouns in -ō, ( ).

Save those in -dō, -gō, and -iō, 

With carō, flesh, but cardō, ordō, 

Are masculine with ligō, margō; 

So harpagō, and in -iō 

All concrete nouns like pūgiō.*

* cardō, hinge; harpagō, grappling-hook; ligō, matlock; margō, border; ordō, rank; pūgiō, dagger.
2. Substantives in -en (-men) are neuter.

Exceptions.—Masculine are liën, splèn, spleen; rènès (pl.), kidneys; pecten, comb, and a few others, mostly names of males.

4. Liquid Stems in r.

44. Form Nominative without s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. labor, toil (m.)</td>
<td>labórēs</td>
<td>pater, father (m.)</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. labōris</td>
<td>labōrum</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>patrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. labōrī</td>
<td>labōribus</td>
<td>patri</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. labōrem</td>
<td>labōrēs</td>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>patres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. labor</td>
<td>labōrēs</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>patres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. labōre</td>
<td>labōribus</td>
<td>patre</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular formations: Four neuters, olur, ivory; femur, thigh; iecur, liver; rōbur, oak, show Gen. in -oris; two of these, femur, iecur, have also the irregular forms feminis and iecineris, iecineris, iecineris. Iter, way, has G. itineris; and supelēx, furniture, has G. supellēctillus.

Remark.—Imber, shower, linter, skiff, āter, bag, venter, belly, have Gen. Pl. in -ium. Imber has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in f.

46. Rules of Gender.—1. Substantives in -er and -or are masculine. 2. Substantives in -ar and -ur are neuter.

Exceptions.—Masculine are salar, trout; furfur, bran, and names of animals in -ur.

Feminine are linter, arbor.
Neuters are: Aër, æther, marmor,
Aequor, iter, aecr, piper,
Verber, āter, vār, cadāver,
Ador, tāber, and pāpāver.*

B.—Sibilant Stems.

47. The Nominative has no additional s, and changes in masculines e to i, and in neuters e or o to u before s.

In the oblique cases, the s of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into r.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. A. V. genus, kind (n.)</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>corpus, body (n.)</td>
<td>corpora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. generis</td>
<td>generum</td>
<td>corporis</td>
<td>corporum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. generi</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>corpori</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. generē</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>corpore</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* arbor, tree; aecr, maple; ador, spelt; aequor, sea; cadāver, dead body; fār, spelt; iter, way; marmor, marble; nectar, nectar; pāpāver, poppy; piper, pepper; tāber, tumor; tāber, teat; vār, spring; [verber], thong; linter, skiff.
THIRD DECLENSION.

 Remark.—Ås, a copper, and òs, bone, form the Gen. Pl. in -um, after the usage of vowel stems. So also múś, mouse. (16)

 49. Rules of Gender.—1. Masculine are substantives in -is (-ēris), and -ōs (-ōris).
 2. Neuter are substantives in -us (-ēris, -ōris), and in -ūs (-ūris).

 Exceptions.—Ås, mouth (G. āris), is neuter; tellūs, earth (G. tellūris), is feminine; and lepūs, hare (G. -ōris), múś, mouse (G. múris), are masculine.

 C.—Mute Stems.

 50. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have s in the Nominative. Before s a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form x, a T-mute is dropped.

 Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel i into e in the Nominative.

 The stems show variations as follows:

 51. Stems in a P-mute.

 Se.—N. prīncēps, chief (m.),
 G. prīncipis,
 D. prīncipīt,
 Ac. prīncipem,
 V. prīnceps,
 Ab. prīncipēs,

 Pl.—prīncīpēs,
 principum,
 principibus,
 principēs,
 principēs,
 principēs.

 52. Stems in a K-mute.

 Se.—N. rēx, king (m.),
 G. rēgis,
 D. rēgīt,
 Ac. rēgem,
 V. rēx,
 Ab. rēge,

 Pl.—rēgēs,
 rēgum,
 rēgibus,
 rēgēs,
 rēgēs,
 rēgibus.

 Irregular formations : nīx (G. nīvis), snow; bōs (G. bovis; see 71), ox.

 53. Stems in a T-mute.

 Se.—N. actēs, age (f.), Pl.—actētēs, Se.—pēs, foot (m.), Pl.—pedēs,
 G. actētis,
 D. actētīt,
 Ac. actētem,
 V. actēs,
 Ab. actēte,

 actētum, pedis, pedum,
 actētibus, pedi, pedibus,
 actētēs, pedem, pedēs,
 actētēs, pēs, pedēs,
 actētibus, pede, pedibus.

 Irregular formations : cor (G. cordis), heart; nōx (G. nox), night; caput (G. capitis), head; lac (G. lactis), milk.
54. Many substantives of this class have the termination -iun in the Gen. Pl. and -i in the Abl. Singular.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in -iun: urbium, of cities; arcium, of citadels; montium, of mountains; noctium, of the nights.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: do-ium, of douries; lit-iun, fauo-ium, fraud-ium (-iun), laud-ium (-iun). But vocum, of voices.

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short vowel have -ium: opum, of resources; but sac-ium, nuc-ium (-iun), niv-ium (-iun).

The polysyllabic stems in -nt and -rt have more frequently -iun, as clientium (-iun), of clients; cohorium (-iun), of companies.

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in -nt have frequently both -iun and -iun, as actium and actium, civitium and civitium, etc.; the rest have usually -iun. Pals, march, has usually paldium.

55. **Rule of Gender.**—Mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.

1. **Exceptions in a k-mute.**

   Masculine -unk, -ik, and -ex,

   Saving forfax, forpex, nex,

   Lex, vibex, faex, and forms of [prex].

   Calx, heel, and calx, chalk, vary.

2. **Exceptions in a t-mute.**

   Masculine are lapis, stone, and substantives in -es, -itis, except merges (f.), sheaf; paries, wall; also pes, foot.

   Masculines in -ns are: dens, tooth; fans, spring; mons, mountain; pens, bridge; rudens, rope; torrens, torrent.

   Neuters are only: cor, heart, lac, milk, and caput, head.

II.—**VOWEL STEMS.**

1. **Vowel Stems in i.**

56. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in s. Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e. This e is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after l and r.

* faex, dregs; forfax, shears; forpex, longs; læx, law; nex, slaughter; [prex], prayer; vibex, weal.
Stems in i have Genitive Plural in -ium.
Neuter stems in i have the Ablative Singular in i, and Nominative Plural in -ia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td>collis, hill</td>
<td>turris, tower, vulpes, fox</td>
<td>mare, sea</td>
<td>animal, living being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>collis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>vulpis</td>
<td>maris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>collis</td>
<td>turrī</td>
<td>vulpl</td>
<td>marī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>collem</td>
<td>turrīm(em)</td>
<td>vulpem</td>
<td>mare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>collis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>vulpes</td>
<td>mare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>colle</td>
<td>turrī(e)</td>
<td>vulpe</td>
<td>marī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Pl.—N. | collēs | turrēs | vulpes | maria | animālia |
| G. | collium | turrī-um | vulpium | marum | animālium |
| D. | collibus | turrī-bus | vulpibus | maribus | animālibus |
| Ac. | collēs(ēs) | turrīs(ēs) | vulpīs(ēs) | maria | animālia |
| V. | collēs | turrēs | vulpes | maria | animālia |
| Ab. | collibus | turrī-bus | vulpibus | maribus | animālibus |

57. Remarks.—1. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. -im is retained always in sitis, tussis, vis; and in names of towns and rivers in -is, as Neāpolis, Tiberis; usually in febris, puppis, restis, secūris, turris; (occasionally in clāvis, crātis, cutis, messis, nāvis.)

2. The Abl. in -i is found in substantives that regularly have -im in Acc. (except perhaps restis): also not unfrequently in amnis, avis, canālis, civīs, clāsis, finis, fūstis, ignis, orbis, unguis; occasionally in anguis, bilis, clāvis, collis, corbis, messis) regularly in neuters in e, al, and ar, except in rēte, and in the towns Caere, Praenestē.

3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending -ium, -um is found always in canis, dog, iuvenis, young man, pānis, bread, senex, old, struēs, heap, volucris, bird; usually in apis, bee, sēdēs, seat, vātēs, bard; (frequently in mēnis, month. On imber, etc., see 45, r. ;

4. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., -is, is found frequently in the classical period along with the later termination -ēs.

58. Rule of Gender.—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -ēs are feminine; those with Nominative in -is are partly masculine, partly feminine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

3. The rest are feminine:

Remarks.—1. Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine: tigris, tiger (fem. in poetry); canis, dog (also fem.); piscis, fish; others feminine: apis, bee; avis, bird; ovis, sheep; felis, cat (usually fēlis).
2. Masculini generis
Are these words that end in -is:

amnis, axis, būris, collis.
canis, crēnis, fascis, follis.
fūnis, fūtis, ignis, torris;

orbis, pānis, postis, ēnsis;
vectis, vermis, unguis, mēnsis,

—antēs, cassēs, mānes, (plural)—
Add to these the mullet, mūgil,
Which is sometimes mūgillus.*

2. Vowel Stems in u.

59. Of stems in u, the monosyllabic stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

Se.—N. grūs, crane (f.),
G. grūs,
D. grūl,
Ac. gruēm,
V. grūs,
Ab. grūe,

Pl.—gruēs,
gruum,
gruēbus,
gruēs,
gruēs,
gruēbus.

Stūs, swine (commonly f.), usually subus, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

(60) 61. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nomina
tive, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in
the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of
the ending, and becomes long.

In the Dative and Ablative Plural u becomes i before the
ending -bus.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has
the ending -m, without a connecting vowel (compare the
Accusative in -i-m of the stems in i), hence -u-m.

**MASCULINE.**

Se.—N. frūctus, fruit,
G. frūctus,
D. frūctul (frūctul),
Ac. frūctum,
V. frūctus,
Ab. frūctūl,

Pl.—frūctūs,
frūctum,
frūctibus,
frūctūs,
frūctibus,
frūctūs.

**NEUTER.**

Se.—N. cornūs, horn,
G. cornūs,
D. cornūs,
Ac. cornūs,
V. cornūs,
Ab. cornūs,

Pl.—cornua,
cornum,
cornibus,
cornua,
cornua,
cornibus.

* Amnis, river ; antēs (pl.), rows ; axis, axle ; būris, plow-tail ; cassēs (pl.),
tōls ; canis, ealak ; collis, hill ; crēnis, hair ; ēnsis, glaive ; fascis, fagot ; follis,
bellows ; fūnis, rope ; fūtis, cudgel ; ignis, fire ; mānes (pl.), Manes ; mēnsis,
month ; mūgillus, mullet ; orbīs, circle ; pānis, bread ; postis, door-post ; torris,
fire-brand ; unguis, nail ; vectis, lever ; vermis, worm.
FIFTH DECLENSION—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Remarks.—Plural: 1. Dat., Abl. The original form -ubus is retained always in acus, needle; arcus, bow; quercus, oak; tribus, tribe; sometimes in a few other words.


62. Rule of Gender.—Substantives in -us are masculine; those in -u are neuter.

Exceptions.—Feminines are acus, needle, domus, house, idus (pl.), the Ides, manus, hand, penus, victuals, porticus; piazza, tribus, tribe.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

63. The stem ends in -ē; Nominative in a.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular -ē is shortened after a consonant; after a vowel it remains long.

In the Accusative Singular we find always ē.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, -ĕ; the other endings are those of the Third.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th></th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—N. dīēs, day, Pl.—dīēs,</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sg.—rēs, thing, Pl.—rēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. dīēs,</td>
<td>dīērum,</td>
<td>rē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. dīēs,</td>
<td>dīēbus,</td>
<td>rē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. dīēm,</td>
<td>dīēs,</td>
<td>rēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. dīēs,</td>
<td>dīēbus,</td>
<td>rē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. dīēs,</td>
<td>dīēs,</td>
<td>rēbus,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as mollītēs, softness, and mollītia. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Singular.

64. Rule of Gender.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except dīēs (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and meridīēs (m.), midday.

Declension of Greek Substantives.

65. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either
retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

First Declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>Pénélopē</td>
<td>Leōnidēs</td>
<td>Anchisēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Pénélopēs</td>
<td>Leōnidae</td>
<td>Anchisae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Pénélopae</td>
<td>Leōnidae</td>
<td>Anchisae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Pénélopēn</td>
<td>Leōnidam, an</td>
<td>Anchisēn, am</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Pénélopē</td>
<td>Leōnidē</td>
<td>Anchisē, s, ë</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Pénélopē</td>
<td>Leōnidē</td>
<td>Anchisē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second Declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>Dēlos, us</td>
<td>Ilion, um</td>
<td>Panthēs</td>
<td>Androgēs, us</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Dēlē</td>
<td>Ilē</td>
<td>Panthē</td>
<td>Androgē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Dēlēs</td>
<td>Ilēs</td>
<td>Panthēs</td>
<td>Androgēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Dēlon, um</td>
<td>Ilion, um</td>
<td>Panthēn</td>
<td>Androgēs, an, ëna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Dēle</td>
<td>Ilēn</td>
<td>Panthē</td>
<td>Androgēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Dēlē</td>
<td>Ilēs</td>
<td>Panthē</td>
<td>Androgēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Third Declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>Solōn, Solō</td>
<td>Sēr, air</td>
<td>Xenophōn</td>
<td>Atlēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Solōnēs</td>
<td>Sēris</td>
<td>Xenophōntis</td>
<td>Atlantis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Solōnē</td>
<td>Sērē</td>
<td>Xenophōnti</td>
<td>Atlantē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Solōna, em</td>
<td>Sēra, em</td>
<td>Xenophōnta, em</td>
<td>Atlantē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Solōn</td>
<td>Sēr</td>
<td>Xenophōn</td>
<td>Atlē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Solōne</td>
<td>Sēre</td>
<td>Xenophōnte</td>
<td>Atlantē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mixed Declensions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Orphēs</td>
<td>Athēs</td>
<td>Oedipēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Orphē, ë</td>
<td>Athē, ënēs</td>
<td>Oedip-odēs, -i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Orphēs</td>
<td>Athē</td>
<td>Oedipōdē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Orpheum, ea</td>
<td>Athē, ën, ënem</td>
<td>Oedip-um, -oda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Orphēn</td>
<td>Athēs</td>
<td>Oedipe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Orphēs</td>
<td>Athēne</td>
<td>Oedip-ode, -ë</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Achilēs, eus</td>
<td>Socrētēs</td>
<td>Didōs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Achilēs, e, ës</td>
<td>Socrētis, ës</td>
<td>Didōs, ënēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Achilē</td>
<td>Socrēti</td>
<td>Didō, ën</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Achilēm, e, ën</td>
<td>Socrētēn, em</td>
<td>Didōs, ënem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Achilēs, ë, ën, e</td>
<td>Socrētēs, e</td>
<td>Didō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Achille, ë, ë</td>
<td>Socrētēs</td>
<td>Didō, ënem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

Remarks.—1. In the Gen. Pl. -òn and -oûn are found in the titles of books; as, Geogricon, Metamorphoseôn.
2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural; as, Thitydidês, Hyperidês, and many names in -cratês; as Socratês; Pl., Socratæ (also Socratês).
3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem:

So κρατήρ, Acc. κρατήρα, (punch) bowl.

κράτης, κράτης (masc.), and κράτερα (crêterra), κράτερα (fem.).
Σαλαμίς, Acc. Σαλαμίνα, Salamis.
Salamis, Salaminis, and Salamina, &c.

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

(66) 67. A. Heterogeneous Substantives, or those whose gender varies:

1. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both.

aevum, -us, age, iugulum, -us, collar-bone,
baculum, -us, staff, -nâmus, -um, nose,
balteus, -um, girdle, palatum, -us, palate,
cæsum, -um, cheese, pilæus, -um, cap,
cavum, -us, cavity, sagum, -us, cloak,
cingulum, -us, belt, tergum, -us, back,
clipeus, -um, shield, thésaurus, -um, treasure,
collum, -us, neck, vâllus, -um, palisade,
forum, -us, market, and many others.
gladius, -um, sword.

2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural.

a. The Plural has -a sometimes, while the Singular ends in -us (or -er): olivus, hill, locus, jœst, locus (loca, localities; loci, usually passages in books, topics), and many others, especially names of places.

b. The Plural has -i, while the Singular ends in -um: filum, thread, frēnum, bit, râstrum, hoe, and many others.

68. B. Heteroclitès, or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative; Metaplâsts, or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem. Many of these belong also under 67.

1. 1st, 2d. esseda, -um, chariot, margarita, -um, pearl,
oстра, -um, oyster,
2. 1st, 5th. dâruitia, -ês, hardness, matéria, -ês, matter,
and many others. See 68, n. 2.
3. 2d, 1st. mendum, -a, fault, sertum, -a, wreath.
The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only: balneum, bath, delicium, pleasure, epulum, banquet, fulmentum, prop.

4. 2d, 4th. Colus, disstaff, domus, house, and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension have one or two cases of the Second; so arcos has G. arc; condatus (-um), fassus (-um), have Nom. Plural in s; senatus, senate, has Gen. Sing. senati.

Some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth: fasti (Ac. Pl. fastus), fretum (N. fretus, Ab. fretum), lectus (G. lectus), and others.

5. 3d, 2d. Vas, vessel, and vassum; palumbes, pigeon, and palumbus; [luger], acre, and lugerum; all Greek nouns in -a (G. -atis), as poema, poem (G. poema), but Pl. Gen. poematurum, Dat. Abi. poematum.

6. 3d, 5th. Fames, hunger, tabes, corruption, have Abi. fama, taba; requies, quiet (G. -atis) has Acc. requiem, Abi. requies; plēbs (G. plēbēs), commons, and plēbes (G. plēbes).

7. 2d, 3d, 1st. Vesper, evening, has Acc. vespem; Dat. Abi. vesperum; Pl. Nom. vespera of the Second Declension; Acc. vesperam; Abi. vespera of the First; Gen. vesperis; Abi. vespere; Loc. vespere, vesperi of the Third.

8. Variations in the Same Declension: femur (G. feminis, feminis, etc.); iecur (G. iecoris, iecoris, etc.); pecus, early, also peca (G. pecoris, pecudis, etc.).

II. Defective Substantives.

I. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

69. A. Substantives used in Singular only: Singulāria tantum. Most abstract substantives, and names of materials; such as

justitia, justice. aurum, gold.

B. Substantives used in Plural only: Plurālia tantum.

angustiae, straits. insidia, ambuscade.
arma, brum, arms. liberi, children.
armamenta, brum, tackle. mānēs, shades of the dead.
bīgae, quadrīgæ, two-horse, four-horse manubiae, chariot.
minae, moenia, ium, spoils.
cervicis, neck. moenia, ium, town-wall.
cōdicillī, a short note. nuptiae, wedding.
cōmedes, fittera. penētēs, the Penates.
divītiae, riches. phaleræ, trappings.
epulae (epulum), banquet. praecordia, brum, prayer.
exubiae, watching. precēs, reliqua, prayer.
exsequiae, funeral procession. reliquiae, remains.
exi, brum, the internal organs. rēnēs, kidneys.
exuviae, equipments. scālae, stairway.
fasti (fastus), calendar. spolia, brum, spoils (sing. late, and poet.).
fācēs, guile. tenebrae, darkness.
fēriae, holidays. valvae, folding-doors.
forēs, door. verbera, um, scourging (sing. poet. and late).
hīberna, winter quarters. verbera, um, scourging (sing. poet. and late).
īdūs, kalenda, I, used. verbera, um, scourging (sing. poet. and late).
indōtiae, truec.
C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense: Heterologa.

aedēs, is, temple (better aedis), aedēs, house, palace.
aqua, water, aquae, mineral springs.
auxilium, help, auxilia, auxiliaries, reinforcements.
carcer, prison, carcere, barriers.
castrum, fort, castra, camp.
comitium, place of assembly, comitia, assembly for voting.
cōpia, abundance, cōpiae, forces, troops.
facultās, capability, facultātēs, goods.
finis, end, limit, finēs, territory, borders.
fortūna, fortune, fortūnae, possessions.
habēna, strap, habēnae, reins.
impedimentum, hindrance, impedimenta, baggage.
littera, letter (of the alphabet), litterae, epistles, literature.
pars, part, partēs, also role.
rōstrum, beak, rōstra, the tribunal at Rome.
sors, lot, sortēs, also oracle.
tabula, board, tablet, tabulae, also accounts.
vigilia, a night-watch, vigiliae, pickets.

2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

70. A. Many verbs of the Fourth Declension occur only in the Ab. ë, as admonētī, coēctū, invitātū, ītusū, iniōsū, mandātū, missū, nātū, permīssū, rogātū.

B. Some substantives have only two cases, as ës, nefēs, Sing. N. Ac.; instar, Sing. N. Ac. Some verbs in -us have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as impetūs, monitūs. Greek neuters in -os have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.

C. Substantives with three cases: faex, dreges; Sing. N. D., Plur. Ab.; virus, slime; Sing. N., G., Ab.

D. Nōmē, nobody, substitutes for Gen. and Abl. nullīs hominis, and nūllō homine. In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal; nōmini, nōminem.

71. III. Peculiarities.

ās, assis (m.), a copper.
anceps, ancupis, fowl.
būs (for boys), bovis (c.), ox, cow.
Pl. G., boum.

D. Ab., būbus, bōbus.
caput, capitis (n.), head.
anceps, ancipitis, two-headed.
praeceans, -cipitis, headlong.
carō, carnis (f.), flesh.
Pl. G. carnium.
Ceres, Ceresia, Ceres.
ēx, farris (n.), spell.
fel, follis (n.), gall.
femur, femoris (n.), thigh.
feminis.
ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES.

72. The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

73. Stems in -o for masculine and neuter, -a for feminine; nominative in -us, -a, -um; (er), -a, -um. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in -ius form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, n. 1 and 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td>bonus,</td>
<td>bona,</td>
<td>bonum,</td>
<td>Pl.—boni,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>boni,</td>
<td>bonorum,</td>
<td>bonorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>bonum,</td>
<td>bonam,</td>
<td>bonum,</td>
<td>bonæs,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>bona,</td>
<td>bonum,</td>
<td>boni,</td>
<td>bonæs,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>bonæ,</td>
<td>bonæ,</td>
<td>bonæ,</td>
<td>bonæs,</td>
<td>bonaæ,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td>miser,</td>
<td>misera,</td>
<td>miserum,</td>
<td>Pl.—miseri,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miserærum,</td>
<td>miserærum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>miserærum,</td>
<td>miseræum,</td>
<td>miserærum,</td>
<td>miseræs,</td>
<td>miseræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>miser,</td>
<td>misera,</td>
<td>miserum,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseraæ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseræ,</td>
<td>miseraæ,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Piger, pigra, pigment, slow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td>piger,</td>
<td>pigra,</td>
<td>pigment,</td>
<td>Pl.—pigrī,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræorum,</td>
<td>pigræorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>pigræum,</td>
<td>pigræum,</td>
<td>pigræum,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>pigræ,</td>
<td>pigræ,</td>
<td>pigræ,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræae,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
<td>pigræs,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

74. Stems in -ro follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that -us is retained:

1. In ferus, wild, properus, quick, praeproperus, prae-
   posterus, absurd, inferus, lower, superus, upper.
2. Also when -ro is preceded by a long vowel; as, austērus, harsh, mātūrus, early, prōcērus, tall, pūrus, pure, sevērus, serious, sincērus, sincere, sērus, late, vérus, true.

Remarks.—1. Dextera, dextera, etc., right, are found side by side with dextra, dextrum, etc., throughout the language. Caesar uses only the shorter form.

2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing. wholly or in part; so there is no cēterus or postea in the best period.

75. 1. In poetry, but at all periods, we find -um alongside of -orum and -ārum in the Gen. Plural.

2. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. -īs from adjectives in -īus is often contracted to īs; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

76. The so-called pronominal adjectives show certain peculiarities in the declension of the singular, in the Genitive and Dative. They are: alter, one of the two; alterutér (a combination of alter and ute), either of the two; aliōs, other; neuter, neither; nūllus, none; sōlus, sole; tōtus, whole; üllus, any; īnus, one; ute, which of the two.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>alter,</td>
<td>altera,</td>
<td>alterum,</td>
<td>alius,</td>
<td>alia,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>alterfus,</td>
<td>alterfus,</td>
<td>alterfus,</td>
<td>alius,</td>
<td>alia,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>alterī,</td>
<td>alterī,</td>
<td>alterī,</td>
<td>alīf,</td>
<td>alīf,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>alterum,</td>
<td>alteram,</td>
<td>alterum,</td>
<td>alium,</td>
<td>aliam,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>alterē,</td>
<td>alterē,</td>
<td>alterē,</td>
<td>aliō,</td>
<td>aliō,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>üllus,</td>
<td>ülla,</td>
<td>üllum,</td>
<td>uter,</td>
<td>utra,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>üllus,</td>
<td>üllus,</td>
<td>üllus,</td>
<td>utrus,</td>
<td>utra,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>üllī,</td>
<td>üllī,</td>
<td>üllī,</td>
<td>utrī,</td>
<td>utrī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>üllum,</td>
<td>üllum,</td>
<td>üllum,</td>
<td>utrum,</td>
<td>utram,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>üllō,</td>
<td>üllā,</td>
<td>üllō,</td>
<td>utrō,</td>
<td>utrā,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like ute is declined neuter; like üllus are declined nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, īnus. The Plural is regular.

Remarks.—1. The Gen. alius is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by aliōs, īnus.

2. The ī of the ending -īus (except in alius) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the case with alter, and regularly in the compounds of ute; as, utrus, utrusque.
ADJECTIVES.

3. In the compound alterater we find usually both parts declined; sometimes the second only.


Adjectives of the Third Declension.

77. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.
   Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in -i, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.
   The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

Adjectives of Two Endings.

78. 1. These have (except stems in -ri) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.
   Most stems in -i form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in s; but the Nominative neuter weakens
   the characteristic i into e. (Compare mare, sea.)
   2. Several stems in -i, preceded by r (cr, tr, br), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing s, but by dropping
   the i and inserting short e before the r, as, stem, æcri, sharp, Nom., æcer (m.), æcris (f.), æcre (n.).

   These adjectives are æcer, alacer, campester, celeber, celer, equester, paluster, pedester, puter, saluber, silvester, terrester, volucer, and the last
   four months; and are sometimes called adjectives of three endings.

   The e belongs to the stem in celer, celeris, celere, swift, and therefore
   appears in all cases.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td>facilis, easy.</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>æcer, sharp,</td>
<td>æcris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>æcris,</td>
<td>æcris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>æcri,</td>
<td>æcri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>facilem,</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>æcrem,</td>
<td>æcrem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>æcer,</td>
<td>æcris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td>facilit,</td>
<td>æcri,</td>
<td>æcri,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr.—N.</td>
<td>faciles,</td>
<td>facilia,</td>
<td>æcræs,</td>
<td>æcræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>facilium,</td>
<td>facilium,</td>
<td>æcrium,</td>
<td>æcrium,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>facilibus,</td>
<td>facilibus,</td>
<td>æcribus,</td>
<td>æcribus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>faciles(is),</td>
<td>facilia,</td>
<td>æcræs(is),</td>
<td>æcræs(is),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>faciles,</td>
<td>facilia,</td>
<td>æcræs,</td>
<td>æcræs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>facilibus,</td>
<td>facilibus,</td>
<td>æcribus,</td>
<td>æcribus,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES.

Remark.—Stems in -ēlī and -āri differ from the substantival declension in not dropping final -ē in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally capital. See 56.

79. Remarks.—1. Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in -ēri) have also -ē in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, -ē is the rule.
2. The Gen. Pl. in -um is found frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only Titīēnum and famīlīrum.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

80. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with l, r, s, a p-mute, a k-mute, or a t-mute. Examples are:

vigil, alert, memor, mindful, pauper, poor, circum, tame, pūbēs, adult, vetus, old, vigilis, memoris, pauperis, circum, tēmes, tēmes, pūbēs, adult, vetus, old.

participle, sharing, caelebs, unmarried, inopēs, poor, participle.

caelibis.
inopis.

audās, bold, felix, lucky, duplex, double, ferōx, fierce, trux, savage, audacis.
felicitas.
duplicitas.
ferōcitas.
trucis.
divēs, rich, dēses, slothful, composit, possessed of, prūdēns, wise, concors, harmonious, dividīs, dēsidis, compotis, prūdentis, concordis.

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

(81) 82. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems; thus,

1. In the Ablative Singular they have i and e—when used as adjectives commonly i; when used as substantives commonly e.

The participles, as such, have e; but used as substantives or adjectives, either e or i, with tendency to i.

2. In the neuter Plural they have iα; except vetus, old, which has vetera. Many have no neuter.

3. In the Genitive Plural they have: ium, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant;
um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have ium.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fālicis, fālicis</td>
<td>prūdentis, prūdentis</td>
<td>vetexis, veterexis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fālicī, fālicī</td>
<td>prūdentī, prūdentī</td>
<td>veteri, veteri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. fālicem, fālix</td>
<td>prūdentem, prūdens</td>
<td>vetere, vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fālix, fālix</td>
<td>prūdens, prūdens</td>
<td>vetus, vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fālicēs, fālicēs</td>
<td>prūdentēs, prūdentēs</td>
<td>vetere, vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pl.—N. fālicēs, fālicēs, prūdentēs, prūdentia, vetere, vetes, vetas

| G. fālicium, fālicium | prūdentium, prūdentium | veterum, veterum |    |    |    |
| D. fālicibus, fālicibus | prūdentibus, prūdentibus | veteribus, veteribus |    |    |    |
| Ac. fālicēs, fālicēs | prūdentēs, prūdentia | veteres, vetera |    |    |    |
| V. fālicēs, fālicēs | prūdentēs, prūdentia | veteres, vetera |    |    |    |
| Ab. fālicēs, fālicēs | prūdentēs, prūdentia | veteres, vetera |    |    |    |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. amāns, amāns</td>
<td>amantia, amantia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. amanti, amanti</td>
<td>amantibus, amantibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. amantem, amāns</td>
<td>amantēs (i), amantia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. amāns, amāns</td>
<td>amantia, amantia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. amante (i), amante (i)</td>
<td>amantibus, amantibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

83. Remarks.—1. In the poets, -e is often found for -i in the Abl. Singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly pauperes, vetere, and frequently divite, sapientes.

With participles, -i is usual when they are used as adjectives.

2. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. -is for -es belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in Cicero. In the case of participles -is is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace. In the neuter, -a for -is is found only in ubera, vetera.

3. In the Gen. Pl., oculum, tame, vetus, old, dives, rich, have -um instead of -um; so also many compound adjectives.

4. In the poets and in later writers, -um is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses -um.

Irregular Adjectives.

84. A. Abundantia.

Some adjectives which end in -us, -a, -um, in the classical times, show occasionally, especially in the poets, forms in -is, -e, e.g., imbescillus and imbecillis; infrēnus and infrēnis; bluguus and blugius; violentus and violēns; indecorus and indecoris; so also perpetuus and perpeus.

85. B. Defective.

Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part: as, cētara (f.), cēterum, nāperum (n.), primōris (G.), and a few others.
C. INDECLINABLES.

Nēquam, worthless; frūgl, frugal; nescēs, necessary, and a few others.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of Comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -is-simus, -a, -um (earlier -is-sumus).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus, a, um, high</td>
<td>altior, higher, altius, altissimus, a, um, highest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, e, brave</td>
<td>fortior, fortius, fortissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilis, e, useful</td>
<td>utilis, utilis, utilis, utilis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audax, bold</td>
<td>audacior, audacius, audacissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prūdēns, wise</td>
<td>prūdentior, prūdentius, prūdentissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peculiarities.

87. i. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative ending -imus (earlier -rumus) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miser, a, um, wretched</td>
<td>miserior, miserius, miserrimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celor, is, e, swift</td>
<td>celerior, celerius, celerissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acer, oris, acer, sharp</td>
<td>acerior, acerius, acerissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks.—1. Dexter, right, and sinister, left, have always dexterior and sinisterior in the Comparative. Dēterior, worse, dēterrimus, lacks a Positive.

2. Vetus, old, has Comp. veterior (archaic) or vetustior; Sup., veterrimus.

2. Some Comparatives in -or-iōr, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in -rēmus; or in -imus or -umus; or in both.

citerior, on this side, citimus; interior, inner, intimus;
dexterior, on the right, dextimus; posterior, hinder, postrēmus, postumus;
exterior, outer, extrēmus, extimus; superior, upper, suprēmus, summus;
inferior, lower, infimus, imus;
3. Six adjectives in -ilis add -imus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative: facilis, easy; difficilis, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender, and humilis, low.

facilis, Comp. facilior, Sup. facillimus.

4. Adjectives in -icus, -icus, -ulus, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in -icio, -icio, and -vulo.

benevolus, benevolent, Comp. benevolentior, Sup. benevolentissimus.
maledicus, scurrilous, malediccior, maledicentissimus.
magnificus, distinguished, magnificior, magnificentissimus.

5. In like manner, egens and prōvidus form their Comparative and Superlative.

egens, needy, egentior, egentissimus.
prōvidus, far-sighted, prōvidentior, prōvidentissimus.

6. Adjectives in -us, preceded by a vowel (except those in -quus), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of magis and maximē, more and most.

idōneus, fit, Comp. magis idōneus, Sup. maximē idōneus.
But antiquus, old, Comp. antiquior, Sup. antiquissimus.

REMARK.—But plus, pious, which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, plissimus.

7. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So those mentioned in 87, 1, n. 1, and 87, 2: dēterior, worse; citor, on this side (from citrā and prep. citrā, on this side); exterior, outer (from externus, on the outside, and prep. extrā, without); inferior, lower (from inferior, below, and prep. infrā, below); posterior, hinder (from postumus, coming after, and prep. post, after); superior, upper (from suprus, on the top, and prep. suprā, above).

Also Bolo, swift, bolissimus; potior, better, potissimus.

8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb; as, ante, before; anterior, that is before; prope, near; propior, proximus; ultior, further, ultimus, from infrā, beyond; interior, inner, intimus, from infrā, within; prior, former, primus, first, from prō, before.

9. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison; especially those denoting material, relationship, time, etc.

Novus, new, falseus, untrue, meritus, deserved, have no Comparative.
Longinus, afar, propinquus, near, salutarius, healthful, invens, young (Comparative inferior), and senex, old (Comparative senior), have no Superlative.

"Youngest" and "oldest" are expressed by minimus, maximus (nātā).

10. Dives, rich, shows in Cic. only divitior and divitissimus; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being dittior, dittissimus.
ADVERBS.

88. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as, amans, loving, amantior, amantissimus; apertus, open, apertior, apertissimus.

89. The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Se.—N.</th>
<th>altior,</th>
<th>altius,</th>
<th>Pl.—altiorēs,</th>
<th>altiora,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>altioris,</td>
<td>altioris,</td>
<td>altiorībus,</td>
<td>altiorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>altiori,</td>
<td>altiori,</td>
<td>altiorībus,</td>
<td>altiorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>altiorēm,</td>
<td>altius,</td>
<td>altiorēs,</td>
<td>altiora,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>altior,</td>
<td>altius,</td>
<td>altiorēs,</td>
<td>altiora,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. altiorē and I,</td>
<td>altiorē and I,</td>
<td>altiorībus,</td>
<td>altiorībus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks.—1. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in -ē. In the poets and in early and late prose, often in -I.

2. In the Acc. Pl. the ending -Iēs for -Īs is confined mainly to pluris, minēris, mātris, melōris.

3. The Gen. Pl. in -īnum is found in plārium and complārium only.

90. Irregular Comparison.

| bonus, | good, | melior, | melius, | optimus. |
| malus, | bad, | pēlor, | pēius, | pessimus. |
| māgnus, | great, | mālor, | māius, | maximus. |
| parvus, | small, | minor, | minus, | minimus. |
| multus, | much, | S. —— | plūs (no Dat. nor Abl.), | plārium. |
| nēquam, | worthless, | nēquior, | plāra. |
| frēgī (indecl.), | frugal, | frēgalior, | complāres, | complāria and -īa. |
| frēgūs (nom.) | | | nēquis, | nēquissimus. |

ADVERBS.

91. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

Substantives.

1. Many substantives form adverbs with the Accusative ending -tim: as acervus, heap, acervātim, in heaps; pars, part, partim, partly.

2. The Ablative of many substantives is used as an adverb; as domo at home; initio, at the outset; modo, only; vulgō, commonly.
ADVERBS.

Adjectives and Pronouns.

1. Many adjectives in -us, -a, -um use the Abl. case as an adverb; as, tātus, safe, tātō; primus, first, prīmō, at first.
   So also some pronouns: hōc, here; istō, there, etc.

2. Adjectives in -us and -er may form adverbs in -ē: altus, lofty, altē; pulcher, beautiful, pulchērē.
   Also fērē and fērmē, almost.

3. In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine:
   alīn, otherwise; alīquā, somehow; dextērē and dextrē, to the right; sinistrē and laevē, to the left hand; quē, on which side; rectē, straightway, and some others.

4. A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning:
   oūntūtē and oūntūtō, purposely; cērtē, at least, and cērtō, certainly; rērē, thinly, and rērō, seldom; vērē, in truth, and vērō, true but; rēctē, correctly, and rēctē, straightway; dextērē or dextrē, to the right, and dextērē, skillfully.

5. Many adjectival and pronominal stems use the Accusative Singular neuter as an adverb. This is true of all Comparatives.

Multum, much; paulum, a little; nimium, too much; cēsterum, for the rest; prīmum, first; postrēmum, finally; potissimum, chiefly; facile, easily; dulce, sweetly; triste, sadly; impūne, scot-free; aliantium, somewhat, and others.

To the Comparatives belong magis, more; nimis, too; satis, enough.

92. 1. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter (-īter) to the stem; stems in nt dropping the t, and stems in a k-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension:

fortis, brave, fortītēr; ferōx, wild, ferōcītēr; prūdēns, foreseeing, prūdītēr.

Exceptions: audāx, bold, audācī-ter; difficilis, hard to do, diffīcultēr, difficīllītēr (but generally, nōn facile, vīx, aegrī), and others.

2. Some adjectives of the Second Declension in -us and -er form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding -īter or -er. In a few cases the normal form in -ē is also found: hūmānītēr and hūmānē, humanely; largītēr and largē, lavishly; turbulēntēr and turbulēntē, riotously.
COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

93. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superlative ends in -is-simē, -er-rimē, etc., according to the Superlative of the adjective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altē,</td>
<td>altius,</td>
<td>altissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchrē,</td>
<td>pulchrius,</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē,</td>
<td>miserius,</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter,</td>
<td>fortius,</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audēctēr,</td>
<td>audēcius,</td>
<td>audēcissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūtō,</td>
<td>tūtius,</td>
<td>tūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene,</td>
<td>melius,</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male,</td>
<td>pēius,</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[parvus],</td>
<td>minus, less,</td>
<td>minimē, least.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[māgnus],</td>
<td>magis, more.</td>
<td>maximē, most.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum,</td>
<td>plus, more,</td>
<td>plūrimum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cito,</td>
<td>citius,</td>
<td>citissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dif,</td>
<td>diūtius,</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāpe,</td>
<td>saepius,</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper,</td>
<td>saepius,</td>
<td>nūperrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis,</td>
<td>satis,</td>
<td>better.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NUMERALS.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

94. The Cardinal numerals answer the question quot, how many? and are the numbers used in counting. The Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the question quotus, which one in the series? They are as follows:

1. Cardinal Numbers.
2. Ordinal Numbers.

| 1  | I  | unus, una, unum | primus, -a, -um (prior) |
| 2  | II | duo, duae, duo | secundus (alter) |
| 3  | III | tres, tria | tertius |
| 4  | IV (III) | quattuor | quartus |
| 5  | V | quinque | quintus |
| 6  | VI | sex | sextus |
| 7  | VII | septem | septimus |
| 8  | VIII | octō | octāvus |
| 9  | IX | novem | nonus |
| 10 | X | decem | decimus |
| 11 | XI | undecim | undecimus |
### Numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Form</th>
<th>Latin Senary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>XII</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>sexdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>XXI</td>
<td>viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>XXII</td>
<td>viginti duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>XXIII</td>
<td>viginti tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>XXIV</td>
<td>viginti quattuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>XXV</td>
<td>viginti quinque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>XXVI</td>
<td>viginti sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>XXVII</td>
<td>viginti septem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>XXVIII</td>
<td>duodetriginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>XXIX</td>
<td>undetriginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>triginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>XL</td>
<td>quadraviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>quinquaginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>sexaginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>septuaginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>octoginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>XC</td>
<td>nonaginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>CI</td>
<td>centum et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>CXV</td>
<td>centum et quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>CXX</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>CXXI</td>
<td>centum viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>ducenti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>trecenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>CCCC</td>
<td>quadringenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>DC (IO)</td>
<td>quingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>DC</td>
<td>sexcenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>septingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>octingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>noningenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>M (CIO)</td>
<td>mille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>mille et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>MCI</td>
<td>mille centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>MCXX</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1131</td>
<td>MCXXI</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Cardinal Numbers.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>MCC</td>
<td>mille ducenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>MM</td>
<td>duo milia (milia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td></td>
<td>bina milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>ICCC</td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>quinque milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>decem milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>duodecim milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>decies centena (centum) decies centies milliesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Ordinal Numbers.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>MCC</td>
<td>mille ducenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>MM</td>
<td>duo milia (milia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td></td>
<td>bina milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>ICCC</td>
<td>duo milia ducenti viginti duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>quinque milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>decem milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>duodecim milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>decies centena (centum) decies centies milliesimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

95. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ünus,* one, *duo,* two, *tres,* three, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti,* two hundred, and the plural *milia,* thousands, which forms *milium* and *milibus.*

N. *duo,* two,  
   *duae,* duo,  
   *tres,* three,  
   *trias,*  

G. *duorum,*  
   *duorum,*  
   *trium,*  
   *trium,*  

D. *duobus,*  
   *duobus,*  
   *tribus,*  
   *tribus,*  

A. *duobus,*  
   *duobus,*  
   *tres,*  
   *trias,*  

Ab. *duobus,*  
   *duobus,*  
   *tribus,*  
   *tribus,*

Like *duobus* is declined *ambob,-æ,-ō.*

**Remarks.**—1. For the declension of *ünus,* see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with *plurālia tantum,* as *ünas litterae,* *one epistle,* or with another numeral in the sense *only;* in the latter sense also with substantives.

2. The Gen. of the hundreds, *ducenti,* etc., ends in *-um* and not *-rum.*

3. The Pl. *milia,* *milium,* *milibus,* are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

96. 1. **Compound Numerals.**

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: *decem et trés.*

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction; occasionally as in English, but never in Cicero.

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English: *twenty-one, viginti ünus*; or, *one and twenty, ünus et (atque) viginti;* as, *twenty-one years old:* *annē ünus et viginti (viginti*
ñum), ñum et viginti annos natus. But compounds like septuaginta et
trés are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.

4. From 100 on, et may be inserted after the first numeral, if there
be but two numbers; as, centum quattuor, or centum et quattuor. If
the smaller number precedes, the et should be inserted; likewise in all
cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as
ducenti anni et viginti. If there be three numerals, the et is regularly
omitted; exceptions are very rare.

5. In compound ordinals alter is preferred to secundus.

6. Centena milia is often omitted after the numeral adverb decies =
1,000,000; especially in stating sums of money.

7. Fractions are expressed by pars (omitted or expressed) in combi-
nation with dimidia (½), tertia (⅓), quartae (¼), etc. A Plural numer-
ator is expressed by a Cardinal; as, duae quintae (⅖). The fraction is
often broken up; as, pars dimidia et tertia (⅖ = ⅓ + ⅓). The even
denominators could be divided; as, dimidia tertia (⅓ × ⅓ = ⅓). Instead
of dimidia without pars, dimidium is used.

97. 2. Distributive Numerals.

These answer the question quotēni, how many each?

| 1 singuli, -ae, -a, one each, | 30 trecēni |
| 2 bini, [-ae, -a, two each. | 40 quadrägeni |
| 3 terni (trini) | 50 quinquagēni |
| 4 quaterni | 60 sexagēni |
| 5 quinque | 70 septuagēni |
| 6 sēni | 80 octogēni |
| 7 septēni | 90 nonagēni |
| 8 octōni | 100 centēni |
| 9 novēni | 103 centēni bini |
| 10 dēni | 125 centēni vicēni quini |
| 11 undēni | 200 duocēni |
| 12 duodēni | 300 trecēni |
| 13 terni dēni | 400 quadringēni |
| 14 quaterni dēni | 500 quingēni |
| 15 quinque dēni | 600 sexōni (sēscēni) |
| 16 sēni dēni | 700 septingēni |
| 17 septēni dēni | 800 octingēni |
| 18 octōni dēni, duodēvīcin | 900 nongēni |
| 19 novēni dēni, undēvīcin | 1000 singula milia |
| 20 vicēni | 2000 binna milia |
| 21 vicēni singuli | 3000 trina milia |
| 22 viciōni bini, bini et viciōni | 10,000 dēna milia |
| 28 duodētrēcēni | 100,000 centēna milia |
| 29 undētricēni |
3. Multiplicative Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many fold?*

Only the following forms occur:

1 simplex,  
2 duplex,  
3 triplex,  
4 quadruplex,

1 single,  
2 double,  
3 triple,  
4 quadruple.

5 quinqueplex  
7 septemplex  
10 decemplex  
100 centuplex

4. Proportional Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many times as great?*

Only the following forms occur:

1 simplus, -a, -um,  
2 duplus,  
3 triplus

4 quadruplus  
7 septuplus  
8 octuplus

98. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

These answer the question *quotiens: how often?*

1 semel, once,  
2 bis, twice,  
3 ter  
4 quater  
5 quinqueans  
6 sexans  
7 septians  
8 octians  
9 novians  
10 decians  
11 undecians  
12 duodecians

13 ter decians, tredecians  
14 quater decians, quattuordecians  
15 quinqueans decians, quindecians  
16 sexans decians, sedecians  
17 septians decians  
18 duodecians, octians decians  
19 undecians, novians decians  
20 vicians  
21 semel et vicians, vicians et semel,  
   vicians semel  
   vicians et vicians  
22 bis et vicians, vicians et bis, vicians

* Not semel vicians, bis vicians, *etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times; this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.
PRONOUNS.

99. Pronouns point out a person, place, or thing, but do not give its name.

I

A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

00. I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—N. ego, I</td>
<td>meus, -a, -um, mine or my.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. mei, of me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi, to, for me</td>
<td>(Voc. masc. mi).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. me, me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. me, from, with, by me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—N. nōs, we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrī, of us, nostrum (Part. Gen. 304, 3), noster, nostra, nostrum, our or ours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nōbis, to, for us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nōs, us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nōbis, from, with, by us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

101. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—N. V. tū, thou.</td>
<td>tuus, -a, -um, thy or thine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. tui, of thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. tibi, to, for thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. tē, thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. tē, from, with, by thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—N. vōs, ye or you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. vestīrī, of you, vestrum (Part. Gen. 304, 3), vester, vestra, vestrum, your or yours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vōbis, to, for you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vōs, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vōbis, from, with, by you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

102. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative is (103).

**DETERMINATIVE.**

**Substantive.**

| Sg.—N. | [is, ea, id], he, she, it, |
|        | ëius, of him, |
|        | etc. |
|        | supplied by the Genitive. |
| G.     | ëius, his, hers, its. |

| Pl.—N. | [ei, i, i; eae, ea], they, |
|        | ëorum, ëarum, ëorum, of them, ëorum, ëarum, ëorum, their or |
|        | etc. |

**REFLEXIVE.**

**Substantive.**

| Sg.—N. | — |
|        | |
| G.     | sui, of him, her, it(self), |
| D.     | sibì, to, for, him(self), her(self), |
| Ac.    | se, sése, him(self), her(self), |
| Ab.    | se, sése, from, with, by him(self), |

| Pl.—N. | — |
|        | |
| G.     | sui, of them(selves), |
| D.     | sibì, to, for them(selves), |
| Ac.    | se, sése, them(selves), |
| Ab.    | se, sése, from, with, by them(selves). |

**Possessive.**

| Sg.—N. | — |
|        | suus, -a, -um, his, h. |
|        | (own). |
|        | suus, -a, -um, their (or) |
|        | theirs. |

**Remarks.—**1. The enclitic -met is sometimes added to certain forms of the Personal Pronouns; as, ego met, I myself.

2. The enclitic -pte is sometimes added to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives; as, suópte ingenió, by his own genius.

103. **B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.**

**Singular.**

| N.    | is, |
| G.    | ëius, |
| D.    | ei, |
| Ac.   | em, |
| Ab.   | eë, |

| Plural. | ea, |
| Sg.—N.  | ea, |
| G.      | ëius, |
| D.      | ei, |
| Ac.     | em, |
| Ab.     | eë, |
2. *Idem* (is + dem), *the same.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem, eadem, idem</td>
<td>idem, idem, idem, eadem, eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eadem, eiusdem, eiusdem</td>
<td>eadem, eorum, eorum, eorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. idem, eiusdem, eiusdem</td>
<td>idem, idem, idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eiusdem, eadem, idem</td>
<td>eiusdem, eadem, eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eodem, eadem, eodem</td>
<td>idem, idem, idem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. *ipse* (perhaps is + pse), *he, self.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse, ipsa, ipsum</td>
<td>ipsa, ipsae, ipsa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsus, ipsus, ipsum</td>
<td>ipsorum, ipsarum, ipsorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsi, ipsa, ipsi</td>
<td>ipsa, ipsa, ipsa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum, ipsum, ipsum</td>
<td>ipsa, ipsa, ipsa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsa, ipsa, ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa, ipsa, ipsa,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

104. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

hīo, *this.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg. — N. hīo, haece, hōc</th>
<th>Pl.— hī, hae, haec, these.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hīo</td>
<td>hōc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REM. The full forms *-ce* are rare in classical Latin, except in a phrase *hūi ce modi, of this kind.*

II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

iste, *that.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n forms of the</th>
<th>Pl.— isti, istae, ista, istae, ista, istae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>— N. iste, ista, istud</td>
<td>isti, istae, ista,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istius, istius, istius</td>
<td>istorum, istarium, istorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. isti, isti, isti</td>
<td>istis, istis, istis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. istum, istum, istud</td>
<td>istus, istis, ista,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. istū, istū, istū</td>
<td>istis, istis, istis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REM. *Iste* combines with *-ce,* but in classical Latin the only mon forms are *istae* (for *istud*) and *istae* (for *ista*).

III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pl.— illī, illae, illa</th>
<th>illī, illae, illa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>— N. ille, illa, illud</td>
<td>illī, illae, illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illius, illius, illus</td>
<td>illorum, illarum, illorum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illī, illī, illī</td>
<td>illis, illis, illis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. illum, illum, illud</td>
<td>illūs, illis, illis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. illū, illū, illū</td>
<td>illis, illis, illis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
105. **D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.**

*qui* (Substantive and Adjective), *who.*

Se.—N.  
qui, quae, quod, Pl.—qui, quae, quae,

G. cūius, cūius, cūius, qūrum, qūrum, qūrum,

D. cū, cū, cū, qūbus, qūbus, qūbus,

Ac. quem, quam, quod, quōs, quēs, quae,

Ab. quō, quē, quō, qūbus, qūbus, qūbus.

General Relatives are:

**Substantive.** quisquis, whoever, quidquid, quiequid, whatever.

**Adjective.** (quīquī, quaequae, quodquod), whosoever.

quīquīne, quaequaequae, quodquodquod, whichever.

**Remarks.**—1. D. Ab. Pl. *quīs* is common in the poets at all periods; and occurs sometimes also in prose writers.

2. The Abl. Sing. *quī* for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in combination with *cum* is preferred to *quōs, quēs,* by Cicero.

106. **E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.**

**Substantive.** quis t who? quid t what?

**Adjective.** qui t quae t quod t which?

**Subst. and Adj.** uter t utra t utrum t who, which of two?

Se.—N.  
quis t quid t who t what?

G. cūius t cūius t whose?

D. cū t cū t to, for whom?

Ac. quem t quid t whom? what?

Ab. quō t quē t from, with, by whom or what?

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative *qui, quae, quod, who, which.*

**Strengthened Interrogatives.**

**Substantive.** quisnam t who, pray?

ecquis t is there any one who?

**Adjective.** quisnam t quenasnam t

ecquī t (ecqua t) ecquod t (ecquaet)

**Remark.**—In the poets *quīs* is sometimes found as a substantive for *quis* in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates.

107. **F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.**

1. **Substantive.**

aliquis, aliqua (rare), aliquid, somebody, some one

quis, qua, quid, or other.

**Adjective.**

aliquī, aliqua,

qui, quae, qua, quod, some, any.
CORRELATIVES.

REMARKS.—1. The common rule is that quis and qui occur properly only after si, nisi, ne, num, or after a relative; otherwise aliquis, aliqui.

2. Aliquis and quis are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of aliqui, qui.

3. The Pl. N. Ac. Neut. of quis is both quae and qua; of aliquis only aliqua.

2. quidam, quaedam, { quiddam (subst.), } a certain, certain one.
   { quoddam (adj.), }

3. quispam, quaeispam, quipiam (and quodpam), some one, some.
   quisquam, ————, quioquam, any one (at all).

REMARK.—Quisquam has no plural; but forms of tullus are used instead.

4. quivis, quaevis, { quidvis (subst.), } any one you please,
   { quodvis (adj.), } you like.
   quilibet, quaelibet, { quidlibet (subst.), }
   { quodlibet (adj.), }

5. quisque, quaeque { quidque (subst.), } each one.
   { quodque (adj.), }
   finusquisque, finaqueque { finumquidque (subst.), } each one seve-
   { finumquodque (adj.), } rely.

108. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are:

nullus, -a, -um, any; nullus, -a, -um, no one, not one. The correspond-
ing substantives are namē (70) and nihil, the latter of which forms only
nihil (Gen.) and nihilis (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.
nescītūnus, -a, -um, some, many a, declined like nōllus.
altus, -a, -ud, another; the Possessive of alius is aliēnus.
alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two).
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.
alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. ambī, -ae, -ā, both.
utervis, utravis, utrumvis, } whichever you please of the two.
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,

CORRELATIVES.

109. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interrogatives</th>
<th>Demonstratives</th>
<th>Relatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis ?</td>
<td>who ?</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quālis ?</td>
<td>of what</td>
<td>tālis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantum ?</td>
<td>how much</td>
<td>tantus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quot ?</td>
<td>how many</td>
<td>tot,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of place.

ub bí where, ibí, there, ubí where.
quí where, híc, híc, here, this way, quá, where, which
which way?

istic, istíc, there, that way.
ilíc, illíc, there, yonder way.
unde whence, inde, thence, unde whence.
hinc, hence.
instinc, thence.
ilinc, thence, from yonder.
quó whither, é, thither, quó, whither.
húc, (húc), thither.
istic, (istic), thither.
ilíc, (illíc), thither, yonder.

2. Pronominal adverbs of time.

quando when, tum, then, quando, when.
tunc, at that time, quom, cum.
nunc, now.

quotiens how often, totiens, so often, quotiens, as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of manner.

quo modo how, ita, sic, so, thus, ut, uti, as.
quam how much, tam, so much, quam, as.

111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali-

aliquantus, somewhat great; aliquot, several, some; aliquud, somewhere; allique, from somewhere; aliquando, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become universal by doubling themselves, or by suffixing -cunque (-cumque), sometimes -que:

quantuscunque, however great; quantissimunque, of whatever kind; quantisquot, however many; ubisce, wheresoever; quandoconque, whensoever; quodunque, wheresoever; quantissimunque, however often; utut, in whatever way; utcunque, wheresoever; quamquam, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with

-vis or -libet:

quantuslibet, quantusvis, as great as you please; ubivis, where you will; quamvis, as you please, though.
THE VERB.

112. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:

1. Person: First.
   Second.
   Third.

2. Voice: Active.
   Passive.

   The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: amō, I love.
   The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb: amor, I am loved.

   Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

   The Tenses are divided into—

   a. Principal*: Present, amō, I love.
      Future, amābō, I shall love.
      Pure Perfect, amāvi, I have loved.
      Future Perf., amāverō, I shall have loved.

   b. Historical*: Imperfect, amābam, I was loving.
      Historical Perfect, amāvi, I loved.
      Pluperfect, amāveram, I had loved.

   Remark.—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

   Subjunctive.
   Imperative.

   The Indicative Mood is the mood of the fact: amō, I love.
   The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the wish, command, or qualified statement: amēm, may I love, I may love; amēt, may he love, let him love; he may love; si amēt, if he should love.

   The Imperative Mood is the mood of command: amā, love thou!

   For further distinctions see Syntax.

* For Principal some Grammars use Primary; for Historical, Secondary.
5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

113. A large number of Verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning: hortor, I exhort. These are called deponent (from déponere, to lay aside).

114. The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.

1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are:

   **Active.**
   
   Sg.—1. -m (or a vowel, coalescing with the characteristic ending); Pf. 1,  
   2. -s; Pf. -s-s; Impv. -tō or want- 
   3. -t; Impv. -tō,

   **Passive.**
   
   Pl.—1. -mus, 
   2. -tis; Pf. -s-tis; Impv. -te or -tēte, -mini, 
   3. -nt; Pf. ārent or āre; Impv. -ntō, -ntur; Impv. -ntor.

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed.

3. The stem itself is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:

(a) The **Present** stem; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the **Present System**.

(b) The **Perfect** stem; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the **Perfect System**.

(c) The **Supine** stem, which is used for convenience’ sake to form the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and the Supine. These forms are called the **Supine System**.

115. 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb sum, I am.
2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed by the combination of the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive of esse, I go.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the stems:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr. -re,</td>
<td>-ri, -ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf. -isse,</td>
<td>-tum (-tam, -tum), esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. -tārum (-am, -um) [esse],</td>
<td>-tum fri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICIPIES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr. -ns (G. -ntis),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf. ---</td>
<td>-tus (-ta, -tum).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. -tūrus (-a, -um).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GERUND.</strong></td>
<td><strong>GERUNDIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ndi (-dō, -dum, -dō).</td>
<td>-ndus (-a, -um).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUPINE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tum; -tū.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

116. **THE VERB sum, I am.**

(Pres. stem es-, Perf. stem fu-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INDICATIVE.</strong></th>
<th><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—1. su-m,</td>
<td>I am,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>thou art,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. es-t,</td>
<td>he, she, it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—1. su-mus,</td>
<td>we are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es-tis,</td>
<td>you are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. su-ni,</td>
<td>they are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>si-ni,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thou be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he, she, it be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—1. era-m,</td>
<td>I was,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. era-s,</td>
<td>thou wast,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. era-t,</td>
<td>he was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—1. era-mus,</td>
<td>we were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. era-tis,</td>
<td>you were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. era-ni,</td>
<td>they were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse-ni,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I were (forem),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thou wert (forēs),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he were (foret).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were (forent).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **FUTURE.**     |                  |
| Sg.—1. er-ō,    | I shall be,      |
| 2. eri-s,       | thou will be,    |
| 3. eri-t,       | he will be.      |
| Pl.—1. eri-mus, | we shall be,     |
| 2. eri-tis,     | you will be,     |
| 3. eri-ni,      | they will be.    |
THE VERB.

Perfect.

Sg.—1. fu-i, I have been, I fu-eri-m, I have, may have, been,
was,
2. fu-i-sti, thou hast been, fu-eri-s, thou have, mayest have, been,
thou wast,
3. fu-i-t, he has been, he fu-eri-t, he have, may have, been.
was.

Pl.—1. fu-i-mus, we have been, we fu-eri-mus, we have, may have, been,
were,
2. fu-i-stis, you have been, fu-eri-tis, you have, may have, been,
you were,
3. fu-i-sti, fu-i-are, they have fu-eri-sti, they have, may have, been,
been, they were.

Pluperfect.

Sg.—1. fu-era-m, I had been, fu-isse-m, I had, might have, been,
2. fu-era-s, thou hadst fu-isse-s, thou hadst, mightest have, been,
been,
3. fu-era-t, he had been. fu-isse-t, he had, might have, been.

Pl.—1. fu-era-mus, we had been, fu-isse-mus, we had, might have, been,
2. fu-era-tis, you had been, fu-isse-tis, you had, might have, been,
3. fu-era-nt, they had been, fu-isse-nt, they had, might have, been.

Future Perfect.

Sg.—1. fu-er-i, I shall have been,
2. fu-eri-s, thou wilt have been,
3. fu-eri-t, he will have been.

Pl.—1. fu-eri-mus, we shall have been,
2. fu-eri-tis, you will have been,
3. fu-eri-nt, they will have been.

Imperative.

Present. Future.

Sg.—1. ——, ——, ——,
2. es, be thou, este, thou shalt be,
3. ——, este, he shall be.

Pl.—1. ——,
2. este, be ye, este-te, you shall be,
3. ——, suntë, they shall be.

Infinitive.

Pres. es-se, to be,
Perf. fu-isse, to have been,
Fut. fu-tur-um (-am, -um) esse (fore), to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. only in the compounds ab-sens, prae-sens.

Fut. fu-tur-us, -a, -um, about to be.
117. **Compounds of sum, I am.**

ab-sum, I am away, absent. Pf. (aful)eful, Pr. Part. ab-sēns, absent.

ad-sum, I am present. Pf. asful.

dē-sum, I am wanting.

in-sum, I am in.

inter-sum, I am between.

ob-sum, I am against, I hurt. Pf. obtul or offul.

These are all inflected like sum, but prōsum and possum require special treatment by reason of their composition.

**Prōsum, I profit.**

118. In the forms of prōsum, prōd- is used before vowels.

**INDICATIVE.**

Present. prō-sum, prōd-eś, prōd-est,

imperfect. prōd-erām,

future. prōd-erā,

perfect. prō-ful,

pluperfect. prō-ferām,

fut. perf. prō-ferārō.

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

Present. prō-sim,

imperfect. prō-essēm,

future. prō-esserim,

pluperfect. prō-esserēm.

INFinitive. Pres. prōd-esse; Fut. prō-futūrum esse (-fore); Perf. prō-fuisse.

**Possum, I am able, I can.**

119. Possum is compounded of pot (potis, pote) and sum; t becomes s before s; in the perfect forms, f (pot-ful) is lost.

**INDICATIVE.**

Sing. — I. pos-sum, I am able, can,

2. pot-ēś,

3. pot-est.

Pl. — I pos-sumus,

2. pot-estis,

3. pot-unt.

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

Sing. — I. pos-sim, I be able.

2. pos-sis,

3. pos-sit.

Pl. — I. pos-simus,

2. pos-sitis,

3. pos-sint.

**IMPERFECT.**

Sing. — I. pot-eram, I was able, could,

2. pot-eras,

3. pot-erat.

Pl. — I. pot-erāmus,

2. pot-erātis,

3. pot-erant.
REGULAR VERBS.

FUTURE.

Sg. — I. pot-erō, I shall be able.
   2. pot-eris,
   3. pot-erit.

Pl. — I. pot-erimus,
   2. pot-eritis,
   3. pot-erunt.

PERFECT.

Sg. — I. pot-u-ī, I have been able, pot-u-erim, I have, may have, been
   2. pot-u-isti,
   3. pot-u-it.

Pl. — I. pot-u-imus,
   2. pot-u-istis,
   3. pot-u-unt.

PLUPERFECT.

Sg. — I. pot-u-eram, I had been able, pot-u-issem, I had, might have, been
   2. pot-u-erās,
   3. pot-u-erat.

Pl. — I. pot-u-erāmus,
   2. pot-u-erātis,
   3. pot-u-erunt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg. — I. pot-u-erō, I shall have been
   2. pot-u-eris,
   3. pot-u-erit.

Pl. — I. pot-u-erimus,
   2. pot-u-eritis,
   3. pot-u-erint.

INFINITIVE. PRES., pot-er-ī, to be able. PERF., pot-u-isse, to have been able.

REGULAR VERBS.

SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

120. I. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, ā, ē, ē, Ĩ, which may be found by dropping -re from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.
2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive Active; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative Active; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts*; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. am-6,</td>
<td>amē-re,</td>
<td>amē-vi,</td>
<td>amē-tum, to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. dēle-6,</td>
<td>dēle-re,</td>
<td>dēle-vi,</td>
<td>dēle-tum, to blot out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monē-re,</td>
<td>monē-vi,</td>
<td>mon-i-tum, to remind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. em-6,</td>
<td>ereme-re,</td>
<td>ēm-i,</td>
<td>ēm(p)-tum, to buy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statu-6,</td>
<td>statu-re,</td>
<td>statu-i,</td>
<td>statu-tum, to settle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrib-6,</td>
<td>scrib-re,</td>
<td>scrip-si,</td>
<td>scrip-tum, to write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-6,</td>
<td>capi-re,</td>
<td>cap-si,</td>
<td>cap-tum, to take.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. audi-6,</td>
<td>audi-re,</td>
<td>audi-vi,</td>
<td>audi-tum, to hear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Formation of the Tenses.*

121. The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly, or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that

1. The *Second Person Impv. Active* is the same as the stem of the Pres. Infinitive.

2. The *Impf. Subjv.* may be formed from the Pres. Inf. Active by adding -m for Active and -r for Passive.

3. The *Second Person Impv. Passive* and *Second Person Sing. Pres. Passive* in -re are the same as the Pres. Inf. Active. Hence -ris is preferred in the Pres. Indic. Pass. in order to avoid confusion.

4. The *Pres. Subjv. Active* and *Fut. Indic. Active* in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the First Person Singular.


*Remark.*—*Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic in the Perfect and Supine.* Characteristic b before s and t becomes p; g and qu before t become c; c, g, qu, with s, become x; t and d before s are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped.

scrib-6, scrip-si, scriptum; legō, legō-tum; coqu-6, coqu-tum; diō-6, dixi (dixi-si); iungō, iunx-si (ijung-si); coqu-6, coxi (coqu-si); ed-6, e-sum (ed-sum); ess-6, ess-si (ess-si); mitt-6, mit-si (mit-si), mis-sum (mit-sum).
**122. First Conjugation.**

**CONJUGATION OF amāre, to love.**

**PRIN. PARTS:** am-ō, amā-re, amā-vi, amā-tum.

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am loving, do love, love.</td>
<td>Be loving, may love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—r. am-ō,</td>
<td>ame-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-s,</td>
<td>amē-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-t,</td>
<td>ame-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—r. amā-mus,</td>
<td>amē-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-tis,</td>
<td>amē-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-nt,</td>
<td>ame-nt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was loving, loved.</td>
<td>Were loving, might love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—r. amā-ba-m,</td>
<td>amā-re-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-bē-s,</td>
<td>amā-re-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-ba-t,</td>
<td>amā-re-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—r. amā-bē-mus,</td>
<td>amā-re-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-bē-tis,</td>
<td>amā-re-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-ba-nt,</td>
<td>amā-re-nt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shall be loving, shall love.</td>
<td>Have, may have, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—r. amā-bō,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-bi-s,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-bi-t,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—r. amā-bi-mus,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-bi-tis,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-bi-nt.</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have loved, did love.</td>
<td>Have, may have, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—r. amā-v-ū,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-v-isti,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-v-it,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—r. amā-v-imus,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-v-istis,</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-v-erunt (-ere),</td>
<td>amā-v-eri-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PuPERFECT.

Had loved.

Had, might have, loved.

Plg.—1. amā-v-era-m,
2. amā-v-era-s,
3. amā-v-era-t,

Plg.—1. amā-v-issē-mus,
2. amā-v-issē-tis,
3. amā-v-issē-nt,

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have loved.

Plg.—1. amā-v-ver-ē,
2. amā-v-ver-ē-s,
3. amā-v-ver-ē-t,

Plg.—1. amā-v-ver-ē-mus,
2. amā-v-ver-ē-tis,
3. amā-v-ver-ē-nt,

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

Plg.—1. ——,
2. amā, love thou, amā-tō, thou shalt love.
3. ——,

Plg.—1. ——,
2. amā-te, love ye, amā-tōte, ye shall love.
3. ——,

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amā-re, to love.

Perf. amā-v-isse, to have loved.

Fut. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], to be about to love.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], loving.

G. ama-nd-ē, of loving.

D. ama-nd-ē, to loving.

Ac. [amā-re],

(ad) ama-nd-um, loving, to love.

Ab. ama-nd-ē, by loving.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-n-ē (G. ama-nt-is), loving.

FUTURE. amā-tūr-um, -a, -um, being about to love.
### First Conjugation.

#### INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am <strong>loved.</strong></td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se. — 1. amo-r,</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-ris (-re),</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-tur,</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. — 1. amā-mur,</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-mini,</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-ntur,</td>
<td>Be, may be, loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was <strong>loved.</strong></td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se. — 1. amā-be-r,</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-be-ris (-re),</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-be-tur,</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. — 1. amā-be-mur,</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-be-mini,</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-be-ntur,</td>
<td>Were, might be, loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall <strong>be loved.</strong></td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se. — 1. amā-be-r,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-be-ris (-re),</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-be-tur.</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. — 1. amā-be-mur,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā-be-mini,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā-be-ntur.</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have been <strong>loved, was loved.</strong></td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se. — 1. amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. est,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. — 1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. estis,</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sunt.</td>
<td>Have, may have, been loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.           SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

Had been loved.       Had, might have, been loved.

Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um eram,       amā-t-us, -a, -um essem,
                erās,                       esseās,
                erat,                      esset,

2.                        

3.                        

Pl.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a erāmus,      amā-t-i, -ae, -a essēmus,
       erātis,                   essētis,
       erant.                   essent.

Future Perfect.

Shall have been loved.

Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um erō,        amā-t-us, -a, -um essēmus,
       erōs,                     essētis,
       erōt,                     essent.

2.                        

3.                        

Pl.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a erimus,      amā-t-i, -ae, -a essēmus,
       erītis,                   essētis,
       erunt.                   essent.

Imperative.

Present.               Future.

Sg.—1. ——,                      ——,                      ——,
2. amā-rique,  be thou loved.   amā-tor,   thou shall be loved.
       ——,                     ——,                     amā-tor,   he shall be loved.
3. ——,                      ——,                     ——,                      ——,

Pl.—1. ——,                      ——,                     ——,                     ——,
2. amā-mint,  be ye loved.      ——,                     amā-ntor, they shall be loved.
3. ——,                      ——,                     ——,                      ——,

Infinitive.

Pres.      amā-ri,              to be loved.
Perf.      amā-t-um, -am, -um esse, to have been loved.
Fut.       amā-tum iri,            to be about to be loved.
Fut. Perf. amā-t-um, -am, -um fore.

Participle.           Gerundive.

Perf. amā-t-us, -a, -um, loved.    aman-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) to be loved.
## 123. Second Conjugation.

### Conjugation of délère, to destroy (blot out).

**Prin. Parts:** déle-ó, déle-re, déle-vi, déle-tum.

### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —déle-ó</td>
<td>déle-a-m, déle-o-r, déle-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle-s</td>
<td>déle-a-s, déle-ris (-re), déle-a-ris (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle-t</td>
<td>déle-a-t, déle-tur, déle-a-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —déle-mus</td>
<td>déle-a-mus, déle-mur, déle-a-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle-tis</td>
<td>déle-a-tis, déle-mini, déle-a-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle-nt</td>
<td>déle-a-nt, déle-ntur, déle-a-ntur,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| IMPERFECT. |        |
| Sg. —déle-ba-m | déle-re-m, déle-ba-r, déle-re-r, |
| déle-ba-s | déle-re-s, déle-ba-ris (-re), déle-re-ris (-re), |
| déle-ba-t | déle-re-t, déle-ba-tur, déle-re-tur, |
| Pl. —déle-ba-mus | déle-re-mus, déle-ba-mur, déle-re-mur, |
| déle-ba-tis | déle-re-tis, déle-ba-mini, déle-re-mini, |
| déle-ba-nt | déle-re-nt, déle-ba-ntur, déle-re-ntur, |

| FUTURE. |        |
| Sg. —déle-bó | déle-bo-r, |
| déle-bi-s | déle-bo-ris (-re), |
| déle-bi-t | déle-bo-tur, |
| Pl. —déle-bi-mus | déle-bi-mur, |
| déle-bi-tis | déle-bi-mini, |
| déle-bi-nt | déle-bi-ntur, |

| PERFECT. |        |
| Sg. —déle-ví | déle-vari-m, déle-t-us sum, déle-t-us sum, |
| déle-vistí | déle-vari-s, es, déle-t-us sim, sfs, |
| déle-vít | déle-vari-t, est, sit, |
| Pl. —déle-vimus | déle-vari-mus, déle-t-i sumus, déle-t-i simus |
| déle-vistis | déle-vari-tis, estis, sftis, |
| déle-vírant (-íre), déle-vari-nt, sunt, sint. |
# Second Conjugation

## ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.V.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.V.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —déle-verbam</td>
<td>déle-v-isse-m</td>
<td>déle-t-us éram</td>
<td>déle-t-us esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-v-irse</td>
<td>déle-t-us esset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-v-irtam</td>
<td>déle-t-us esset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —déle-veram</td>
<td>déle-v-isse-mus, déle-t-i</td>
<td>eramus, déle-t-i essamus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-v-irse</td>
<td>déle-t-i esset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>déle-v-irtam</td>
<td>déle-t-i esset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.V.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —déle-verb</td>
<td>déle-t-us erò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —déle-veram</td>
<td>déle-t-i erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. — —</td>
<td>déle-t,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle,</td>
<td>déle-t,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— —</td>
<td>déle-t,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. — —</td>
<td>déle-t,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déle-te,</td>
<td>déle-tote,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-ntor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— —</td>
<td>déle-nt,</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>déle-ntor,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES.</th>
<th>déle-re.</th>
<th>PRES.</th>
<th>déle-r.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>déle-visse.</td>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>déle-t-um, -am, -um esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>déle-turm, -am, -um esse.</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>déle-tum fr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>déle-t-um, -am, -um fore.</td>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>déle-t-um, -am, -um fore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. [déle-re].</th>
<th>SUPINE.</th>
<th>PARTICIPLES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D. déle-nó.</td>
<td>(ad) déle-níum.</td>
<td>Fut. déle-turum, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ad) déle-ní-um.</td>
<td></td>
<td>GERUNDIVE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. déle-nó.</td>
<td></td>
<td>déle-ní-us, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
124. Like délère, to destroy, are conjugated only, nère, to spin, fière, to weep, and the compounds of -plère, fill, and -olère, grow (the latter with Supine in -itum); also cière, to stir up.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic e in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing vi to ui, and weaken it to i in the Supine System.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second Conjugation.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Conjugation of monère, to remind.**

**Prin. Parts:** moné-ö, moné-re, mon-öu, moni-tum.

**Active.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>PASSIVE.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—moné-ö,</td>
<td>mone-ö-m,</td>
<td>mone-ö-r,</td>
<td>mone-ö-r,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-s,</td>
<td>mone-ö-s,</td>
<td>moné-ris (-re),</td>
<td>mone-ö-ris (-re),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-t,</td>
<td>mone-a-t,</td>
<td>moné-tur,</td>
<td>mone-ö-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—moné-mus,</td>
<td>mone-ö-mus,</td>
<td>moné-mur,</td>
<td>mone-ö-mur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-tis,</td>
<td>mone-ö-tis,</td>
<td>moné-mini,</td>
<td>mone-ö-mini,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mone-nt,</td>
<td>mone-a-nt,</td>
<td>mone-ö-tur,</td>
<td>mone-ö-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—moné-ba-ö,</td>
<td>moné-re-m,</td>
<td>moné-ba-r,</td>
<td>moné-ö-re,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-s,</td>
<td>moné-rés,</td>
<td>moné-bé-ris (-re),</td>
<td>moné-ö-ris (-re),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-ba-t,</td>
<td>moné-re-t,</td>
<td>moné-bé-tur,</td>
<td>moné-ö-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—moné-bé-mus,</td>
<td>moné-ré-mus,</td>
<td>moné-bé-mur,</td>
<td>moné-ö-mur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-tis,</td>
<td>moné-ré-tis,</td>
<td>moné-bé-mini,</td>
<td>moné-ö-mini,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-nt,</td>
<td>moné-re-nt,</td>
<td>moné-bé-tur,</td>
<td>moné-ö-tur,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—moné-b-ö,</td>
<td>moné-be-r,</td>
<td>moné-ö-re,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-s,</td>
<td>moné-bé-ris (-re),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-t,</td>
<td>moné-bé-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—moné-bé-mus,</td>
<td>moné-bé-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-tis,</td>
<td>moné-bé-mini,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moné-bé-nt,</td>
<td>moné-bé-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—mon-öu,</td>
<td>mon-öu-eri-m,</td>
<td>moni-tu-s sum,</td>
<td>moni-tus sim.:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-öu-isti,</td>
<td>mon-öu-eri-s,</td>
<td>es,</td>
<td>sis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-öu-iti,</td>
<td>mon-öu-eri-t,</td>
<td>est,</td>
<td>sit,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—mon-öu-imus,</td>
<td>mon-öu-eri-mus,</td>
<td>moni-ti sumus,</td>
<td>moni-ti simus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-öu-istis,</td>
<td>mon-öu-eri-tis,</td>
<td>estis,</td>
<td>sitis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Second Conjugation.

#### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—mon-u-eras-m</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-m</td>
<td>moni-t-us eram</td>
<td>moni-t-us essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-erás-e</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-s</td>
<td>erás</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-eras-t</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-t</td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>esset,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—mon-u-érám-mus</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-mus</td>
<td>moni-t-1 erámus</td>
<td>moni-t-1 essémus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-érist-is</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-tis</td>
<td>éristis</td>
<td>essétis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-eras-nt</td>
<td>mon-u-isse-nt</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subjv.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—mon-u-er-5</td>
<td>moni-t-us er5,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-ér-és</td>
<td>eris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-ér-ít</td>
<td>erít,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—mon-u-ér-í-mus</td>
<td>moni-t-1 erímus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-ér-ít-is</td>
<td>erísis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-u-ér-í-nt</td>
<td>erínt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td>moné,</td>
<td>moné-tó,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moné-tí,</td>
<td>moné-re,</td>
<td>moné-tór,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td>moné-te,</td>
<td>moné-tóte,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moné-ntó,</td>
<td>moné-míní,</td>
<td>moné-ntó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moné-re</td>
<td>moni-tum</td>
<td>moni-túr-um, -am, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon-iisse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moni-túr-um</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Nominative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. moné-re</td>
<td>N. moné-nus; G. moné-nós</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. moné-nd-5</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>moni-túr-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. moné-re</td>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>moni-túr-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Genitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ac. moni-tum</td>
<td>N. moné-nus; G. moné-nós</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ad) moné-nd-um</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>moni-túr-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ab. moné-nd-5 | | |

#### Participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. moné-re</td>
<td>N. moné-nus; G. moné-nós</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. moné-nós</td>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>moni-túr-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. moné-nd-5</td>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>moni-túr-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ac. moni-tum. | | |

#### Ab. moné-tá. | | |

#### Mone-nd-us, -a, -um. | | |
### Third Conjugation.

**Conjugation of emere, to buy.**

**Prin. Parts:** em-ē, eme-re, em-ē, em(p)-tum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjv.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. — em-ē,</td>
<td>ema-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emi-s,</td>
<td>ema-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emi-t,</td>
<td>ema-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong> — emi-mus,</td>
<td>ema-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emi-tis,</td>
<td>ema-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emu-nt,</td>
<td>ema-nt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong> — emē-ba-m,</td>
<td>eme-re-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-bē-s,</td>
<td>eme-re-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-ba-t,</td>
<td>eme-re-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong> — emē-bē-mus,</td>
<td>eme-re-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-bē-tis,</td>
<td>eme-re-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-ba-nt,</td>
<td>eme-re-nt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong> — ema-m,</td>
<td>ema-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-s,</td>
<td>emē-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eme-t,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong> — emē-mus,</td>
<td>eme-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emē-tis,</td>
<td>emē-nt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong> — em-ē,</td>
<td>em-ēri-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em-isti,</td>
<td>em-ēri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em-it,</td>
<td>em-ēri-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong> — em-imus,</td>
<td>em-ēri-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em-isti,</td>
<td>em-ēri-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ëm-ērun (-ēre). em-ēri-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Conjugation.

#### ACTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.V.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.V.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —</td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-m,</td>
<td>ëmp-t-us eram,</td>
<td>ëmp-t-us essem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-s,</td>
<td>eris,</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-t,</td>
<td>erat,</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —</td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-mus,</td>
<td>ëmp-t-i erimus,</td>
<td>ëmp-t-i essemus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-tis,</td>
<td>eritis,</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ëm-ësæ-nt.</td>
<td>erant.</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect.

| Sg. — | ëmp-t-us err, | ëmp-t-us er, |
|        | ëmp-t-us err, | ëmp-t-us err, |
| Pl. — | ëmp-t-i erimus, | ëmp-t-i erimus, |
|        | ëmp-t-i eritis, | ëmp-t-i eritis, |
|        | ëmp-t-i erunt, | ëmp-t-i erunt, |

#### Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>emi-të,</td>
<td>eme-re,</td>
<td>emi-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>emi-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>emi-të,</td>
<td>emi-mañ,</td>
<td>emi-mañ,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>emi-ntor,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. eme-re.</th>
<th>Pres. ëmp-t-um, -am, -um esse.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf. ëm-ësæ.</td>
<td>Perf. ëmp-t-um, -am, -um esse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. ëmp-t-ur-um, -am, -um esse.</td>
<td>Fut. ëmp-t-um ūr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. ëmp-t-um, -am, -um fore.</td>
<td>Fut. ëmp-t-um, -am, -um fore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUPINE.</th>
<th>PARTICIPLES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. [eme-re].</td>
<td>Pres. N. ëm-e-n-s; G. ëm-e-n-t-is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ad) em-e-ndum.</td>
<td>GERUNDIVE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. em-e-nd-o.</td>
<td>Ab. ëmp-tu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>em-e-nd-us, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
126. Many verbs of the third conjugation with Pres. Indic. in iē, change i to e before r and drop it when it would come before ō or i in all tenses of the Present System except the Future, Participle, and Gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of amae-re.

These verbs are capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō, iaciō, pariō, quatiō, rapiō, sapiō, and their compounds; also compounds of -liciō, -spiciō, and the deponents gradiōr and its compounds, moriōr and its compounds, patiōr and its compounds.

**Synopsis of Present System of cape-re, to take.**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDIC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJ.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—capi-ō,</td>
<td>capi-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-ē,</td>
<td>capi-a-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-t,</td>
<td>capi-a-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—capi-mus,</td>
<td>capi-a-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-tis,</td>
<td>capi-a-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-u-nīt.</td>
<td>capi-a-nt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—capi-ē-ba-m,</td>
<td>cape-re-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—capi-a-m,</td>
<td>capi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-ē-s,</td>
<td>capi-ē-ris (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—cape,</td>
<td>capi-tā,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-ētā,</td>
<td>capi-ter,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-te,</td>
<td>capi-ētē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-u-ntē,</td>
<td>capi-ēntē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-u-ntō.</td>
<td>capi-ēntō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFINITIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. cape-re.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>GERUND</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fourth Conjugation.

**Conjugation of audire, to hear.**

**Prin. Parts:** audi-ē, audi-er, audi-er-tur, audi-er-tum.

#### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—audi-ē;</td>
<td>audi-ē-m,</td>
<td>audi-ē-r,</td>
<td>audi-ē-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-s,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ris (-re),</td>
<td>audi-ē-ris (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-t,</td>
<td>audi-ē-tur,</td>
<td>audi-ē-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-ē-mus,</td>
<td>audi-ē-mus,</td>
<td>audi-ē-mur,</td>
<td>audi-ē-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-tis,</td>
<td>audi-ē-min,</td>
<td>audi-ē-min,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-nt.</td>
<td>audi-ē-ntur.</td>
<td>audi-ē-ntur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—audi-ē-ba-m,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-m,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-r,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-s,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-ris (-re),</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-ris (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-t,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-tur,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-ē-ba-mus,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-mus,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-mur,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-tis,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-min,</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-min,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-nt.</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>audi-ē-ba-ntur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—audi-ē-m,</td>
<td>audi-ē-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ris (-re),</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-ē-mus,</td>
<td>audi-ē-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-min,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-ē-ntur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—audi-v-i,</td>
<td>audi-v-eri-m,</td>
<td>audi-t-us sum,</td>
<td>audi-t-us sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-eri-s,</td>
<td>es,</td>
<td>sis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-eri-t,</td>
<td>est,</td>
<td>sit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-v-mus,</td>
<td>audi-v-eri-mus,</td>
<td>audi-t-l sumus,</td>
<td>audi-t-l simus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-eri-tis,</td>
<td>estis,</td>
<td>sistis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-eri-nt.</td>
<td>sunt,</td>
<td>sint,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-enti-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audi-v-enti-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fourth Conjugation.

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect.</th>
<th></th>
<th>Passive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjv.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se.—audi-v-er-a-m</td>
<td>audi-v-isse-m</td>
<td>audi-t-us eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-s</td>
<td>audi-v-isse-s</td>
<td>eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-t</td>
<td>audi-v-isse-t</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-v-er-a-mus, audi-v-isse-mus</td>
<td>audi-t-i eramus</td>
<td>audi-t-i essamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-tis</td>
<td>audi-v-isse-tis</td>
<td>eratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-nt</td>
<td>audi-v-isse-nt</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indic.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjv.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.—audi-v-er-a</td>
<td>audi-t-us ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-s</td>
<td>eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-t</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—audi-v-er-a-mus</td>
<td>audi-t-i erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-tis</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-v-er-a-nt</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Se.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi</td>
<td>audi-ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-ta</td>
<td>audi-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-ta</td>
<td>audi-tor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>audi-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-te</td>
<td>audi-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audi-te</td>
<td>audi-te</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

| **Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Fut.** |
| Pres. audi-re | Pres. audi-tum | audi-tur-um | audi-tur-um |
| Perf. audi-visse | Perf. audi-t-um | audi-tur-us | audi-tur-us |
| Fut. audi-tur-um, -am, -um | Fut. audi-tur-um | audi-tur-um, -a, -am | audi-tur-um, -a, -am |
| Fut. Pr. audi-tur-um, -am, -um | Fut. Pr. audi-tur-um, -am, -um | audi-tur-um, -a, -am | audi-tur-um, -a, -um |

#### Gerund

| **Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Ac.** | **Ab.** |
| audi-e-nd-um | audi-e-nd-um |
| audi-tum | audi-tum |

#### Supine

| **Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Ac.** | **Ab.** |
| N. audi-e-nd-i | audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |
| audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |

### Participles

| **Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Ac.** | **Ab.** |
| N. audi-e-nd-i | audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |
| audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |

### Gerundive

| **Pres.** | **Perf.** | **Fut.** | **Ac.** | **Ab.** |
| N. audi-e-nd-i | audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |
| audi-e-nd-um, -a, -um |
DEPONENT VERBS.

128. Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Particples, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

1. First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF hortāri, to exhort.

PRIN. PARTS: hort-or, hortā-ri, hortā-tus sum.

INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exhort.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td>Present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be exhorting, may exhort.</td>
<td>Be exhorting, may exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hort-or,</td>
<td>hort-ex-,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-ri (-re),</td>
<td>hortā-ri (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-tur,</td>
<td>hortā-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—hortā-mur,</td>
<td>hortā-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-mini,</td>
<td>hortā-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-ntur.</td>
<td>hortā-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Imperfect. | | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| Were exhorting, might exhort. | Were exhorting, might exhort. |
| hortā-re-r, | hortā-re-r, |
| hortā-re-ri (-re), | hortā-re-ri (-re), |
| hortā-re-tur, | hortā-re-tur, |
| Pl.—hortā-re-mur, | hortā-re-mur, |
| hortā-re-mini, | hortā-re-mini, |
| hortā-re-ntur. | hortā-re-ntur. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hort-or,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-ri (-re),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—hortā-bi-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-bi-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortā-bi-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Perfect.

**Have exorted, exorted.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>es,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>est,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a sumus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>estis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

**Had exorted.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erās,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a erāmus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erātis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

**Shall have exorted.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>hortā-t-us, -a, -um erē,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a erimus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eritis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative.

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>hortā-re, exhort thou.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>hortā-mini, exhort ye.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive.

**Pres.** hortā-rī, to exhort.

**Fut.** hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], to be about to exhort.

**Perf.** hortā-t-um, -am, -um esse, to have exorted.

**F. P.** hortā-t-um, -am, -um fore.

### Supine.

**Ac.** hortā-tum, to exhort, for exhorting.

**Ab.** hortā-ta, to exhort, in the exhorting.

### Gerund.

**G.** hortā-nd-l, of exhorting.
DEONENT VERBS.

2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

SYNOPSIS OF verēri, to fear; loqui, to speak; mentiri, to lie.

**Prin. Parts:** vere-or, verē-ri, veri-tus sum; loqu-or, loqu-I, locū-tus sum; menti-or, menti-ri, menti-tus sum.

**Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>vere-o-r,</td>
<td>loqu-o-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verē-ris (-re), etc.,</td>
<td>loque-ris (-re), etc.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>vere-ba-r,</td>
<td>loquē-ba-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>vere-bo-r,</td>
<td>loqua-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>veri-tus sum,</td>
<td>locū-tus sum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluff.</td>
<td>veri-tus eram,</td>
<td>locū-tus eram,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>veri-tus erō,</td>
<td>locū-tus erō,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>vere-a-r,</td>
<td>loqua-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verē-āris(-re), etc.,</td>
<td>loquē-āris(-re), etc.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>vere-re-r,</td>
<td>loque-re-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>veri-tus sim,</td>
<td>locū-tus sim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluff.</td>
<td>veri-tus essēm,</td>
<td>locū-tus essēm,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>verē-re,</td>
<td>loque-re,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>verē-tor.</td>
<td>loqui-tor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>vere-rī,</td>
<td>locū-l,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>veri-tūr-um [esse],</td>
<td>locū-tūr-um [esse],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>veri-tum esse,</td>
<td>locū-tum esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>veri-tum fore,</td>
<td>locū-tum fore,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>vere-n-s,</td>
<td>loquē-n-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>veri-tūr-us,</td>
<td>locū-tūr-us,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>veri-t-us,</td>
<td>locū-t-us,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund.</td>
<td>vere-n-d-I, etc.,</td>
<td>loque-n-d-I,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerundive.</td>
<td>vere-n-d-us,</td>
<td>loque-n-d-us,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine.</td>
<td>veri-tum,</td>
<td>locū-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>veri-tā,</td>
<td>locū-tā,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Periphrastic Conjugation.

129. The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle Active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb sum.

### ACTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amā-tūr-us (-a, -um) sum</td>
<td>About to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>amā-tūr-us eram</td>
<td>Was about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT.</td>
<td>amā-tūr-us erū</td>
<td>Shall be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF.</td>
<td>amā-tūr-us fuī</td>
<td>Have been, was, about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUFP.</td>
<td>amā-tūr-us fueram</td>
<td>Had been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ama-nd-us (-a, -um) sum</td>
<td>To be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>ama-nd-us eram</td>
<td>To be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT.</td>
<td>ama-nd-us erū</td>
<td>Shall have to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF.</td>
<td>ama-nd-us fuī</td>
<td>Have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUFP.</td>
<td>ama-nd-us fueram</td>
<td>Had had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. amā-tūr-um (-am, -um) esse</td>
<td>To be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. ama-nd-um fuisset</td>
<td>To have been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ama-nd-um (-am, -um) esse</td>
<td>To be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. ama-nd-um fuisset</td>
<td>To have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
130. 1. IMPERATIVE.—Four verbs, dicere, dicere, facere, ferre (171), form the Pr. Impv. active dic, dico, fac, fer. But in early Latin dicere, dico, facere, except the non-prepositional (178, n.) compounds of facere, to know, lacks the Pr. Impv. sol.

2. The older ending of the GERUND and GERUNDIVE in the third and fourth conjugations was -undus; and -endus was found only after u. In classical times -undus is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations. Later, -endus is the regular form.

131. 1. Syncopated FORMS.—The Perfects in -avi, -avi, -avi, often drop the v before s or r, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -avi, which admit the contraction only before s.

These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

Perfect.

Sing. 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. amavisti, amasti.</th>
<th>delavisti, delasti.</th>
<th>audivisti, audisti.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur. 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. amavistis, amastis.</th>
<th>delavistis, delastiis.</th>
<th>audivistis, audistis.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. amaverunt, amarunt.</td>
<td>delaverunt, delarunt.</td>
<td>audiverunt, audarunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjv. amaverim, amarim, etc.
delaverim, delarim, audiverim, audarim, etc.

Pluperfect.

Indic. amaveram, amaram, delaveram, delaram, audiveram, auderam, etc.

Subjv. amavisset, amassisset, delavisset, delassisset, audivisset, audisset, etc.

Future Perfect.

amavero, amaro, delavero, delaro, audivero, audiero, etc.

Infinitive Perfect.

amasse, amasse, delasse, audisse, audisse.
THE STEM.

132. Most of the forms of the verbs sum, I am, edō, I eat, eō, I go, forō, I bear, volō, I wish (perhaps dō, I give), and their compounds come directly from the root.

The other verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the thematic vowel, and these verbs are called Thematic verbs (120, 1).

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

I. THE PRESENT STEM.

133. I. The Stem or Thematic class: This comprises
(a) Verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations: stems in ē, ē, and ē.
(b) Most verbs of the third conjugation: stems in ē, either unlengthened or lengthened; legē- (root leg-), legē-re, to read; ducē- (duc-), ducē-re, to lead.

II. The Reduplicated class: The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with ē in the reduplicated syllable:

gēn-, gē-gnē (for gē-gen-ē), gē-gnē-re, to beget; stēn-, stē-stēn, stē-ste-re, to set, stand. Compare stāre, to stand.

III. The T class: The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by t: flectē (flec-), flectē-re, to bend.

IV. The Nasal class: In this class the root is strengthened by n, the nasal being inserted

A: In vowel-stems: sinē (si-), sine-re, to let; linē (li-), line-re, to be-smear.

B. After the characteristic liquid: cernē (cer-), cernē-re, to sift, separate; temnē (tem-), temnē-re, to scorn; pellē (for pel-nē, by assimilation), pelle-re, to drive.

C. Before the characteristic mute: vincē (vīc-), vincē-re, to conquer; frangē (frāg-), frangē-re, to break; fundē (fud-), fundē-re, to pour.

Before a p-mute n becomes m: rumpē (rup-), rupē-re, to rend; tumē (tum-), tumē-re, to lie down.

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by -nu; as sternēnē (ster-), sternē-re, to sneeze.
V. The Inchoative class: The Present stem has the suffix -sc; as, 
fin-scór, I am in a rage; crás-so̱, I grow; pro-fici-scór, I set out; 
nós-so̱, I become acquainted; pós-so̱ (= poro-so̱), I demand; di-so̱ 
(= di-do-so̱), I learn.

VI. The 1 class: The root is strengthened by i (e) in some forms of 
the Present System: capi-5 (cap-), capere, to take.

VII. The Mixed class: Some verbs that originally belong to the 
1-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the Stem 
class: as venître (ven-), veni-re, to come; videō (vid-), visi-re, to see; sonō 
(son-), soni-re, to sound.

II. THE PERFECT STEM.

134. I. Perfect in -vi (or -ui): These are formed by the addition 
(a) Of -vi to the Present stem. To this class belong the Perfects of 
the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second con-
jugation mentioned in 124; amā-re, amā-vi; audi-re, audi-vi; dēlā-re, 
dēlā-vi.

(b) Of -ui to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is 
dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second con-
jugation; moni-re, mona-ui.

II. Perfect in -si: These are formed by the addition of -si to the 
root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or position. This class 
c omprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which 
the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute: rēspō, I creep, rēsp-si; 
scribō, I write, scrip-si; dīcō, I say, dixi (= dixi-si); carpō, I pluck, 
carp-si; rādiō, I scrape, rāst (= rāst-si).

In three verbs the stem-characteristic is -m: prēme-re, to press; 
sūme-re, to take; con-temp(n)e-re, to scorn; and in a few others it is -s, as 
ār-si, I burn, ās-si; hāere-si, I stick, hāes-si (= hāes-si).

III. Reduplicated Perfects: These are formed by prefixing to the 
unstrengthened root its first consonant (or group of consonants), 
together with the following vowel (but e instead of a or ae), and adding 
the termination -i: currō, I run, cuurr-i; disceō, I learn, di-dici; spondeō, 
I pledge, spo(s)pondi; tangō, I touch, to-ti-gi; tundō, I strike, tu-tud-i.

In composition the reduplication is in many cases dropped; so 
ablever in compounds of cadere, to fall; cæsare, to fall; cane-re, to 
sing; falle-re, to deceive; parte-re, to spare; partae-re, to bear; pendere, 
to weigh; tange-re, to touch; tendere, to stretch; tunde-re, to strike, etc.

Discere, to learn, always retains the reduplication in compounds, 
and so pāscere, to demand, and admoderēre, to bite.

Of compounds of curre-re, to run, suoccurre always drops the redu-
plication, præcurre erroneous always retains it; the others vary.
Of compounds of dare, asecondere usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the a, and all quadsyllabic compounds, retain it. Compounds of sistere, to set, and stäre, to stand, retain it.

Remark.—A few verbs beginning with vowels form the Perfect by prefixing e, which then contracts with the initial vowel: age, I act, agI (= e-ag-I); emō, I buy, emI (= e-em-I).

IV. Perfect in 1. Verbs of the third conjugation, with a short stem-syllable, take i in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing ā into ē: legō, I read, lég-I; videō, I see, vid-I; fodiō, I stab, fōd-I; fugiō, I flee, fig-I; frangō, I break, frāg-I.

V. Denominative verbs in -ūṃ, like scūṃ, I sharpen; metuā, I fear; also sternaūṃ, I sneeze, form the Perfect in -u-I after the analogy of primary verbs.

III. THE SUPINE STEM.

135. I. Supine in -tum, Perfect Passive Participle in -tus: The stems are formed by the addition of -tu or -to

(a) To the Present stem. Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124: amatūm, délē-tum, audi-tum.

Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in -ui, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel e to i, and adding -tu, -to, except cōnsē-re, to deem, docē-re, to teach, miscē-re, to mix, tenē-re, to hold, torrē-re, to scorch, which omit the thematic vowel, and form cōnsum, doctum, mixtum, (tentum), tūstum.

(b) To the unstrengthened stem. Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations: cap-tum (capō, I take), rep-tum (reprō, I creep), dic-tum (dicō, I say), fac-tum (facō, I do).

In combinations of -t- with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually ss after a short vowel and s after a long vowel: scissum (scindō, I cleave), caessum (caedō, I fell). On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in -u, we find -s- also in some other stems: ssīg-I, I fix, fix-um; parcē, I spare, par-sum, etc.

II. Future Active Participle in -tūrus.—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.

1. In some stems ending in -u a thematic vowel i is inserted; as arguitūrus (arguere, to prove); absuitūrus (abnuerē, to deny); ruuitūrus (ruere, to rush); fruitūrus (frui, to enjoy).

2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect, as: calitūrus (calēre, to be warm); dolitūrus (dolēre, to grieve).
3. Irregular are: āgnōtūrus, āgnītūrus (āgnōscere, to know well);
discītūrus (discere, to learn); haustūrus, haustūrus (haustīre, to drain);
nūtūrus (nūtī, to lean); morītūrus (morī, to die); nōscītūrus (nōscere, to
know); orītūrus (orīrī, to arise); parītūrus (parēre, to bear).

Change of Conjugation.

136. A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which
show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not
in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.

1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to
the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one
of the other three:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{ange-ō,} & \text{augē-re,} & \text{aux-L,} & \text{auc-tum,} \\
\text{senti-ō,} & \text{senti-re,} & \text{sēn-al,} & \text{sēn-sum,} \\
\text{saepī-ō,} & \text{saepī-re,} & \text{saep-al,} & \text{saep-tum,} \\
\text{venī-ō,} & \text{venī-re,} & \text{vēn-al,} & \text{vēn-tum,} \\
\text{vide-ō,} & \text{vidē-re,} & \text{vid-L,} & \text{vī-sum,} \\
\text{vincī-ō,} & \text{vincī-re,} & \text{vinx-L,} & \text{vinc-tum,}
\end{array}
\]

- to increase.
- to feel.
- to hedge about.
- to come.
- to see.
- to bind.

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first,
second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed ac-
according to the third, in consequence of strengthening:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{ster-n-ō,} & \text{ster-ne-re,} & \text{strē-vī,} & \text{strē-tum,} \\
\text{crē-ss-e-ō,} & \text{crē-soce-re,} & \text{crē-vī,} & \text{crē-tum,} \\
\text{li-n-ō,} & \text{li-ne-re,} & \text{lē-vī (LI-vī),} & \text{li-tum,}
\end{array}
\]

- to strew.
- to grow.
- to smear.

3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third
conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a)
the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{accumb-ō,} & \text{accumbe-re,} & \text{accub-ul,} & \text{accubi-tum,} \\
\text{gīgn-ō,} & \text{gīgne-re,} & \text{gen-ul,} & \text{geni-tum,} \\
\text{acess-ō,} & \text{acesso-re,} & \text{acessal-vī,} & \text{acessī-tum,} \\
\text{cupī-ō,} & \text{cupte-re,} & \text{cupī-vī,} & \text{cupī-tum,}
\end{array}
\]

- to recline.
- to beget.
- to summon.
- to desire.

4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{crep-ū, I.} & \text{crepā-re, III.} & \text{crep-ul, II.} & \text{crepī-tum, II.} \\
\text{aperī-ū, IV.} & \text{aperī-re,} & \text{aper-ul, II.} & \text{aperī-tum,} \\
\text{cie-ū, II.} & \text{cie-re,} & \text{cie-vī, IV.} & \text{cie-tum,}
\end{array}
\]

- to crackle.
- to uncover.
- to stir up.

5. dare, to give, and stāre, to stand, pass over to the third con-
jugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{d-ō,} & \text{da-re,} & \text{ded-l,} & \text{da-tum,} \\
\text{st-ō,} & \text{stā-re,} & \text{stet-l,} & \text{(stā-tūr-us),}
\end{array}
\]

- to give.
- to stand.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

First Conjugation.

Type: am-5, amā-re, amā-vi, amā-tum.

137. Perfect: -ul; Supine: -(l)um.

crep-5, crepā-re, crep-ul, crep-tum, to rattle.
cub-5, cubā-re, cub-ul, cubi-tum, to lie.
dom-5, domā-re, dom-ul, domi-tum, to tame.
frič-5, fričā-re, frič-ul, frič-tum (-č-tum), to rub.
mic-5, micā-re, mic-ul, ——, to quiver, flash.

But di-micāre, to sight (out), is usually regular.

neč-5, nečā-re, neč-vi (neč-ul rare), neči-tum, to kill.
-plied-5, -pliedā-re, -(plied-vi), -pliedi-tum, to fold.
sec-5, secā-re, sec-ul, seci-tum, to cut.
son-5, sonā-re, son-ul, soni-tum, to sound.

But regularly sonātūrus.

ton-5, tonā-re, ton-ul, ——, to thunder.
vet-5, vetā-re, vet-ul, veti-tum, to forbid.


1. d-5, da-re, ded-i, da-tum, to give, put, do.

Everywhere 5, except in dās, thou givest, and dē, give thou.

1. Like dā, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as: circum-dā, I surround; satis-dā, I give bail; pessum-dā, I ruin; vēnum-dā, I sell; thus:

circum-d-5, circum-da-re, circum-de-di, circum-da-tum, to surround.

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

ab-d-5, ab-de-re, ab-did-i, ab-di-tum, to put away.
ad-d-5, ad-de-re, ad-did-i, ad-di-tum, to put to.
con-d-5, con-de-re, con-did-i, con-di-tum, to put up (found).
abs-con-dā, con-de-re, con-did-i, con-di-tum, to put far away.
crē-d-5, crē-de-re, crē-did-i, crē-di-tum, to put faith.
dē-d-5, dē-de-re, dē-did-i, dē-di-tum, to give up.
ē-d-5, ē-de-re, ē-did-i, ē-di-tum, to put out.
in-d-5, in-de-re, in-did-i, in-di-tum, to put in.
per-d-5, per-de-re, per-did-i, per-di-tum, to fordo (ruin).
prō-d-5, prō-de-re, prō-did-i, prō-di-tum, to betray.
red-d-5, red-de-re, red-did-i, red-di-tum, to give back.
trā-d-5, trā-de-re, trā-did-i, trā-di-tum, to give over.
vēn-d-5, vēn-de-re, vēn-did-i, vēn-di-tum, to put up to sale.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

2. st-ō, stā-re, stēt-ī, (stā-tū-rus), to stand.

So the compounds:

ad-stō, ad-stā-re, ad-stēt-ī, — to stand by.
ōstō, oō-stā-re, oō-stēt-ī, — to stand fast.
īn-stō, in-stā-re, in-stēt-ī, — to stand upon.
ob-stō, ob-stā-re, ob-stēt-ī, — to stand out against.
per-stō, per-stā-re, per-stēt-ī, — to stand firm.
praē-stō, praē-stā-re, praē-stēt-ī, — to stand ahead.
re-stō, re-stā-re, re-stēt-ī, — to stand over.
dī-stō, dī-stā-re, — — to stand apart.
ex-stō, ex-stā-re, — — to stand out.

All compounds of stāre with dissyllabic prepositions, have, however, -stēt in the Perfect, as: ante-stō, I am superior; inter-stō, I am between; super-stō, I stand upon; thus:

circum-stō, circum-stā-re, circum-stēt-ī, — to stand round.

139. Perfect: -ī; Supine: -tūm, -sum.

iuv-ō, iūvā-re, iāv-ī, iāv-tūm (iūvātūrus), to help.
ad-iuv-ō, -iuvā-re, -iāv-ī, -iāv-tūm (-iāvātūrus), to stand by as aid.
(lav-ō), (lavā-re), lāv-ī, lāu-tūm (lātūm), to wash.
lav-ō, lavā-re, (lavā-vī), lavā-tūm, to wash.

Second Conjugation.

Types: dāle-ō, dālē-re, dālē-vī, dālē-tūm, see 124.

mono-ō, monē-re, monē-vī, monē-tūm.

140. Irregular and defective:

cīe-ō (ce-ō), cīē-re (cēre), cī-vī, cī-tūm (cī-tūm), to stir up.

In the compounds we find the Participles concitōs or concitūs, percitūs, excitūs or excitus, but accitus.

sorbē-ō, sorbē-re, sorbē-vī, — to sup up.

141. Perfect: -ī; Supine: -tūm, -sum.

iuve-ō, iuvē-re, iūs-ī, iūs-sum, to order.
krē-ō, krē-re, krē-ī, krē-sum, to be on fire.
rīde-ō, rīdē-re, rī-ī, rī-sum, to laugh (at).
haere-ō, haerē-re, haecē-ī, (haecē-sum), to stick (to).
mane-ō, manē-re, mānē-ī, mānē-sum, to remain.
susē-ō, susē-re, susē-ī, susē-sum, to counsel.

With dental dropped before ending of Pf. and Supine.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

ange-τ, ange-re, auxi, aux-tum, to cause to wax.
frige-τ, frige-re, (frīxī), —, to be chilled.
lāce-τ, lāce-re, lāxi, —, to give light.
lūge-τ, lūge-re, lūxi, —, to be in mourning.
alge-τ, alg-re, al-si, —, to freeze.
fulge-τ, fulge-re, ful-si, —, to glow.
indulge-τ, indulge-re, indul-si, (indul-tum), to give way.
mule-τ, mule-re, mul-si, mul-sum, to stroke.
mulge-τ, mulge-re, mul-si, mul-sum(stum), to milk.
terge-τ, terge-re, ter-si, ter-sum, to wipe.
torque-τ, torqu-τ, tor-si, tor-sum, to twist.
turge-τ, turge-re, tur-si, —, to swell.
urge-τ, urge-re, ur-si, —, to press.

142. Perfect: -ι with reduplication; Supine: -sum.
morde-τ, mord-re, mo-mord-ι, mor-sum, to bite.
pende-τ, pend-re, pe-pend-ι, —, to hang (intr.).
sponde-τ, spond-re, spo-pend-ι, spōn-sum, to pledge oneself.
Compounds omit the reduplication.
tonde-τ, tonde-re, to-tond-ι, tōn-sum, to shear.

143. Perfect: -ι; Supine: -tum, -sum.
cave-τ, cav-re, cav-ι, cau-tum, to take heed.
fave-τ, fav-re, fav-ι, fau-tum, to be well-disposed.
ferve-τ(ferv-τ), ferv-re (ere), ferv-ι (ferv-ul), —, to see the.
fove-τ, fove-re, fōv-ι, fō-tum, to keep warm.
move-τ, mov-re, mov-ι, mō-tum, to move.
pave-τ, pave-re, pāv-ι, —, to quake (with fear).
prande-τ, prande-re, prand-ι, prān-sum, to breakfast.
sede-τ, sed-re, sēd-ι, ses-sum, to sit.
strīde-τ (-dī), strīde-re (-re), strīd-ι, —, to whistle, screech.
vove-τ, vove-re, vōv-ι, vō-tum, to vow.

The Present forms of the third conjugation also occur in the Angustan poets.
vide-τ, vid-re, vid-ι, vi-sum, to see.

Third Conjugation.

First Type: Perfect: -αί; Supine: -tum, -sum.

144. The Stem class:
carp-τ, carpe-re, carp-αί, carp-tum, to pluck.
dē- corp-τ, -corp-re, -corp-αί, -corp-tum, to pluck off.
nūbe-τ, nūbe-re, nūp-αί, nūp-tum, to put on a veil (as a bride).
rēp-τ, rēpe-re, rēp-αί, rēp-tum, to creep.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scalp-5</td>
<td>scalp-re</td>
<td>scalp-sf</td>
<td>scalp-tum</td>
<td>to scrape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrib-5</td>
<td>scribe-re</td>
<td>scrip-sf</td>
<td>scrip-tum</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scalp-5</td>
<td>scalpe-re</td>
<td>scalp-sf</td>
<td>scalp-tum</td>
<td>to chisel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serp-5</td>
<td>serpe-re</td>
<td>serp-sf</td>
<td>serp-tum</td>
<td>to creep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prem-5</td>
<td>preme-re</td>
<td>pres-sf</td>
<td>pres-sum</td>
<td>to press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōm-5</td>
<td>cōme-re</td>
<td>cōm-sf</td>
<td>cōm-tum</td>
<td>to adorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēm-5</td>
<td>dēme-re</td>
<td>dēm-sf</td>
<td>dēm-tum</td>
<td>to take away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōm-5</td>
<td>prōme-re</td>
<td>prōm-sf</td>
<td>prōm-tum</td>
<td>to take out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūm-5</td>
<td>sūme-re</td>
<td>sūm-sf</td>
<td>sūm-tum</td>
<td>to take</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some compounds of emo, *I take, buy*, have Pf. in -sf, Sup. in -tum, before which a euphonic p develops:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dīo-5</td>
<td>dīce-re</td>
<td>dīxi</td>
<td>dīc-tum</td>
<td>to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dīxi</td>
<td>duc-tum</td>
<td>to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fig-re</td>
<td>fixum</td>
<td>to fasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fig-re</td>
<td>flīx</td>
<td>to strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>merg-re</td>
<td>mer-sf</td>
<td>to plunge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sparg-re</td>
<td>sparg-sf</td>
<td>to strew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>coqu-re</td>
<td>coq-sf</td>
<td>to besprinkle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>coqu-re</td>
<td>cox-sf</td>
<td>to cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[lig-5 (leg-)]</td>
<td>lēxi</td>
<td>to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dīlig-5</td>
<td>dīlēxi</td>
<td>to understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>neg-leg-5 (ligō)</td>
<td>neg-lēxi</td>
<td>to neglect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other compounds have lēgī in the Perfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>rego-re</td>
<td>rēxi</td>
<td>rēg-tum</td>
<td>to keep right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīregō</td>
<td>dīrego-re</td>
<td>dīrēxi</td>
<td>dīreg-tum</td>
<td>to guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-gō</td>
<td>per-go-re</td>
<td>per-rēxi</td>
<td>per-reg-tum</td>
<td>to go on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su-rō-gō</td>
<td>su-rō-go-re</td>
<td>su-rēxi</td>
<td>sur-rō-tum</td>
<td>to rise up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teg-ō</td>
<td>teg-re</td>
<td>tēxi</td>
<td>tēg-tum</td>
<td>to cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claud-ō</td>
<td>clade-re</td>
<td>clau-sf</td>
<td>claud-tum</td>
<td>to shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-, ex-clāud-ō</td>
<td>clāde-sf</td>
<td>clau-sf</td>
<td>clau-som</td>
<td>to shut up, out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>læd-ō</td>
<td>laede-re</td>
<td>lae-sf</td>
<td>læ-dom</td>
<td>to harm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>col-ūd-ō</td>
<td>colo-re</td>
<td>li-sf</td>
<td>colom</td>
<td>to strike together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lād-ō</td>
<td>lāde-re</td>
<td>lā-sf</td>
<td>lā-sum</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plaud-ō</td>
<td>plau-de-re</td>
<td>plau-sf</td>
<td>plau-sum</td>
<td>to clap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-plōd-ō</td>
<td>plō-de-re</td>
<td>plō-sf</td>
<td>plō-sum</td>
<td>to hoot off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rād-ō</td>
<td>rāde-re</td>
<td>rā-sf</td>
<td>rā-sum</td>
<td>to scratch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trād-ō</td>
<td>trāde-re</td>
<td>trā-sf</td>
<td>trā-sum</td>
<td>to push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vād-ō (in-, 5-)</td>
<td>vāde-re</td>
<td>vā-sf</td>
<td>vā-sum</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōd-ō</td>
<td>cōde-re</td>
<td>cō-sf</td>
<td>cō-sum</td>
<td>to give way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatt-ō</td>
<td>quate-re</td>
<td>(quas-sf)</td>
<td>quas-sum</td>
<td>to shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-outīō (per-, ex-)</td>
<td>con-outī-re</td>
<td>con-cus-sf</td>
<td>con-cus-sum</td>
<td>to shatter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

mitt-ö,  
mitte-re,  
mi-si,  
mi-sum,  
to send.

di-vid-ö,  
di-vide-re,  
di-vi-si,  
di-vi-sum,  
to part.

für-ö,  
fire-re,  
üs-si,  
üs-tum,  
to burn.

com-bür-ö,  
com-büre-re,  
com-büs-si,  
com-büs-tum,  
to burn up.

ger-ö,  
gere-re,  
ges-si,  
ges-tum,  
to carry.

flu-ö (flug-ö),  
flue-re,  
fluxe,  
(flux-us),  
to flow.

stru-ö (stragv-),  
strue-re,  
sträche,  
strä-tum,  
to build.

trah-ö (tragh-),  
trahre-re,  
trachz,  
trac-tum,  
to drag.

veh-ö (vegh),  
vehe-re,  
vexi,  
vec-tum,  
to carry.

viv-ö (vivg),  
vive-re,  
vixi,  
vic-tum,  
to live.

145. The T-class:

flect-ö,  
flecte-re,  
flexi,  
flexum,  
to bend.

nect-ö,  
necte-re,  
nexi (-nexu),  nexum,  
to knot.

pect-ö,  
pecte-re,  
pexi,  
pecum,  
to comb.

plect-ö,  
plecte-re,  
(plexi),  plexum,  
to plait.

146. The Nasal class:

(a) Supine without N:

fing-ö,  
finge-re,  
finxi,  
flc-tum,  
to form.

ping-ö,  
pinge-re,  
pinxi,  
plc-tum,  
to paint.

string-ö,  
stringe-re,  
strinxi,  
stric-tum,  
to draw tight.

(b) Supine with N:

ang-ö,  
ange-re,  
anxi,  
—  
to throttle, vex.

cing-ö,  
cinge-re,  
cinxi,  
cinc-tum,  
to gird.

iung-ö,  
iunge-re,  
iunxi,  
iunc-tum,  
to yoke, join.

 pang-ö,  
pange-re,  
pangzi,  
panc-tum,  
to drive in.

Perfect also pügI, and Supine püctum. Compare 150 and pücsocor, 165.

plang-ö,  
plange-re,  
planxi,  
planc-tum,  
to smile.

-stingu-ö,  
-stingu-re,  
-stinxi,  
-stinc-tum,  
to put out.

So the compounds ex-, dis-, re-.

ting-ö (tingu-ö),  
tingue-re,  
tinxi,  
tinc-tum,  
to wet, dye.

ung-ö (ungu-ö),  
ungue-re,  
unxi,  
unc-tum,  
to anoint.

(c) tem-n-ö (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic p:

con-tem-n-ö,  
-temne-re,  
-tem-p-si,  
-tem-p-tum,  
to despise.

147. The I-class:

[-lici-ö (Lac),  
-lici-re,  
-lexi,  
-lec-tum],  
to lure.

pel-lici-ö,  
pel-lici-re,  
pel-lexi,  
pel-lec-tum,  
to allure.

So allicere, illicere. But -licere has -uf regularly in classical times.

[-spici-ö (spec),  
-spicio-re,  
-spexi,  
-spec-tum],  
to peer.

per-spici-ö,  
per-spicio-re,  
per-spexi,  
per-spec-tum,  
to see through.

So the compounds with ad-, con-, des-, in-.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

SECOND TYPE—Perfect: I with reduplication; Supine: -sum, -tum.

148. Stem class:

Reduplication lost in the compounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Reduplication</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cad-5</td>
<td>cade-re</td>
<td>to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oc-cid-5</td>
<td>oc-cide-re</td>
<td>to perish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-cidere</td>
<td>reociddi</td>
<td>in the Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caed-5</td>
<td>caede-re</td>
<td>to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oc-cid-5</td>
<td>oc-cide-re</td>
<td>to kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can-5</td>
<td>cane-re</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounds form the Pf. in -n. For (cantum), cantatum was used.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curr-5</td>
<td>curre-re</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication; see 134, iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parc-5</td>
<td>parce-re</td>
<td>to spare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com-parco (-perco), com-parce-re, com-par of, com-par-sum</td>
<td>to save.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

149. Reduplicated class:

1. sistō (= si-st-5), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, I (cause to) stand, but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, I stand. Compare stō, I stand, and its compounds (138):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sist-5</td>
<td>sist-e-re, (stit-1), sta-tum, to (cause to) stand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So the compounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oōn-sist-5</td>
<td>oōn-siste-re, oōn-stit-1, oōn-sti-tum, to come to a stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dā-sist-5 (ab-), dā-siste-re, dā-stit-1, dā-sti-tum, to stand off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-sist-5</td>
<td>ex-siste-re, ex-stit-1, ex-sti-tum, to stand up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-sist-5</td>
<td>ob-siste-re, ob-stit-1, ob-sti-tum, to take a stand against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-sist-5</td>
<td>re-siste-re, re-stit-1, re-sti-tum, to withstand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad-sist-5</td>
<td>ad-siste-re, ad-stit-1, to stand near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-sist-5</td>
<td>in-siste-re, in-stit-1, to stand upon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum-sist-5</td>
<td>circum-siste-re, circum-stit-1, to take a stand round</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. bi-bō, bi-be-re, bi-bi, (bi-bi-tus), to drink.

No Supine. The Pf. Part. is late.

150. Nasal class:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall-5</td>
<td>falle-re, fo-fell-1, fal-sum, to cheat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The compound refellō has the Perfect refellit, and lacks Supine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pell-5</td>
<td>pelle-re, pe-pul-1, pul-sum, to push, drive back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repellō loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. repullō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toll-5</td>
<td>tolle-re, —, to lift up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf. and Sup. are formed sus-tulī and sub-lātum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

(pang-ō), (pange-re), pe-pig-1, pēc-tum, to drive a bargain.
The Pr. forms are supplied by paseor, 165. The Pr. pēg-, rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds com-, im-, op-. See 146, b.

tang-ō (tag), tange-re, te-tīg-ī, tīō-tum, to touch.
at-tīng-ō, -tīg-ēre, -tīg-ī, -tīō-tum, to border upon.
So with other compounds.

pend-ō, pende-re, pe-pend-ī, pēn-sum, to hang (trans.).
tend-ō, tende-re, te-tend-ī, tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch.
ex-tend-ō, -tende-re -tend-ī, -tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch out.
co-tend-ō, -tende-re, -tend-ī, -tēn-sum (-tus), to stretch at, show.

The compounds prefer the Sup. in -tum; so always attentus, contentus, usually distentus and intentus.

pung-ō, punge-re, pu-pug-ī, punctum, to prick.
inter-pungō, -punge-re, -pungi, punctum, to place points between.

tund-ō, tunde-re, tu-tund-ī, tūn-sum, tūn-tum, to thump.
Simple form has usually tānsum in the Participle; in the compounds more often tānsum. The reduplicating vowel is lost in re-tumī.

151. Inchoative class:

discō (= di-d(e)c-so5), discē-re, di-die-ī, — to learn.
A late form is Fut. Part. discētūrus. Compounds retain reduplication. See 134, iii.

pōso-ō (= poro-so5), pōso-re, po-pōso-ī, — to claim.
Compounds retain the reduplication. See 134, iii.

152. The I-class:

pari-ō, pare-re, pe-per-ī, par-tum (paritūrus), to bring forth.
The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in -īre. But re-perīre, to find, forms its Prf., re-perīrī, with omission of the vowel of reduplication.

THIRD TYPE—Perfect: -I; Supine: -tum, -sum.

153. The Stem class:

With long vowel in the Perfect.

ag-ō, age-re, āg-ī, āō-tum, to do, drive.
cōg-ō, cōge-re, co-āg-ī, co-āō-tum, to compel.
dāg-ō, dāge-re, red-ēg-ī, red-āō-tum, to pass (time).
red-īg-ō, red-ig-ēre, red-āēg-ī, red-āō-tum, to bring back.
em-ō, eme-re, ēm-ī, ēmp-tum, to take, to buy.
inter-im-ō, -ime-re, -ēm-ī, ēmp-tum, to make away with.
co-em-ō, I buy up, is conjugated like em-ō. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, read-, take-im-ō. So, too, dir-im-ō, I sever.

ed-ō, ede-re, ēd-ī, ēd-sum, to eat.
cōd-ō, cōde-re, cōd-ī, (cōd-sum), to hammer.
leg-ō, lege-re, lēg-ī, lēō-tum, to pick up, read.
cōl-lig-ō, -lige-re, lēg-ī, lēō-tum, to gather.
So the other compounds, except dī-lig-ō, intel-leg-ō, neg-leg-ō, see 144.

īō-ō (defective), ioe-re, iō-ī, iō-tum, to strike.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

sid-3,  side-re,  sid-1,  ——  to sit down.

The Pf. was originally reduplicacted as the Present; see 138, 11. In composition the Pf. is -sēd1, -se-sum, from sede-5, thus:

cōn-sid-5,  cōn-side-re,  cōn-sēd-1,  cōn-se-sum,  to settle down.

scab-5,  scabe-re,  scab-1,  ——  to scratch.

solv-5,  solve-re,  solv-1,  solv-tum,  to loose, pay.

vert-5,  verte-re,  vert-1,  ver-sum,  to turn.

re-vert-or,  re-vert-i,  re-ver-tum,  to turn back.

verr-5,  verre-re,  verr-i (active),  verr-sum,  to sweep.

vis-5,  vise-re,  vis-i,  ——  to visit.

volv-5,  volve-re,  volv-1,  voł-tum,  to roll.

On percellē, perculli, see 158, c. On tollē, sustulli, see 150.

154. The Nasal class:

psall-5,  psalle-re,  psall-1,  ——  to play on the cithern.

vell-5,  velle-re,  vell-i (vul-sīl),  vul-sum,  to pluck.

lamb-5,  lambe-re,  lamb-1,  ——  to lick.

rump-5,  rumpe-re,  rūp-1,  rup-tum,  to break.

ac-cend-5,  ac-cende-re,  ac-cend-1,  ac-cēn-sum,  to kindle.

dē-fend-5,  dē-fende-re,  dē-fend-1,  dē-fēn-sum,  to strike away, defend.

fund-5 (fūd),  funde-re,  fūd-i,  fū-sum,  to pour.

mand-5,  mande-re,  mand-1,  mān-sum,  to chew.

pand-5,  pande-re,  pand-1,  pas-sum,  to spread out.

prehend-5,  prehende-re,  prehend-1,  prehēn-sum,  to seize.

Often shortened to prēndē, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum.

scand-5,  scand-re,  scand-1,  scēn-sum,  to climb.

ś(d)-, dē-scend-5,  -scende-re,  -scend-1,  -scēn-sum,  to climb up, down.

frang-5,  frange-re,  frāg-1,  frāc-tum,  to break.

per-fring-5,  per-fringe-re,  per-frāg-1,  per-frāc-tum,  to shiver.

linqu-5,  linque-re,  liqu-1,  ——  to leave.

re-linqu-5,  -linque-re,  -liqu-1,  -lic-tum,  to leave behind.

(pang-5),  (pange-re),  (pāg-1),  (pāc-tum),  to drive in.

com-ping-5,  -pinge-re,  -pāg-1,  -pāc-tum,  to drive tight.

See 145, 6, 150.

vīc-5 (vīc),  vīce-re,  vīc-i,  vīc-tum,  to conquer.

155. The I-class.

(a) With long vowel in the Perfect.

capli-5 (capli),  cape-re,  cēp-1,  cap-tum,  to take.

ac-clipi-5,  ac-clipe-re,  ac-cēp-1,  ac-cēp-tum,  to receive.

faci-5,  face-re,  fēc-1,  fac-tum,  to make.

calci-faci-5 (calci),  calci-face-re,  calci-fēc-1,  calci-fac-tum,  to make warm.

per-faci-5,  per-face-re,  per-fēc-1,  per-fac-tum,  to achieve.

On Impv. fac, see 130, 1.
fodi-5,  fode-re,  föd-I,  foss-sum,  to dig.
frog-i-5,  fuge-re,  füg-I,  (fug-i-türus),  to flee.
isci-5,  isce-re,  isë-I,  isco-tum,  to cast.
con-isci-5,  -isce-re,  isë-I,  -isco-tum,  to gather.

(b) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication:

find-5,  finde-re,  fid-I,  fis-sum,  to cleave.
scond-5,  scinde-re,  scíd-I,  scis-sum,  to split.

156. A number of verbs of the third conjugation have a characteristic -u-; these form the perfect in -I.

ab-lu-5,  ab-lue-re,  ab-lu-I,  ab-lu-tum,  to wash off.
ab-nu-5,  ab-nue-re,  ab-nu-I,  (ab-nu-itür-us),  to dissent.
acu-5,  acue-re,  acu-I,  acă-tum,  to sharpen.
ad-nu-5(an-nu-5),  ad-nue-re,  ad-nu-I,  —
argu-5,  argue-re,  argu-I,  argă-tum,  to accuse.
baut-5,  bautue-re,  batu-I,  —
con-gru-5,  con-grue-re,  con-gru-I,  —
sd-libu-5,  sd-libue-re,  sd-libu-I,  sd-libă-tum,  to agree.
ex-Ü-5,  ex-ue-re,  ex-ue-I,  ex-ă-tum,  to put off, doff.
lu-5,  lue-re,  lu-I,  lu-itür-us,  to alone for.
metu-5,  metue-re,  metu-I,  —
minu-5,  minue-re,  minu-I,  mină-tum,  to lessen.
plu-5,  plue-re,  plu-it, plăv-it,  —
rü-5,  rue-re,  ru-I,  ru-tum (ruitürus), to rush down.
spu-5,  spue-re,  spu-I,  spu-tum,  to spew.
statu-5,  statue-re,  statu-I,  stată-tum,  to settle.
sternu-5,  sternue-re,  sternu-I,  —
sv-5,  sue-re,  su-I,  sv-tum,  to sew.
tribu-5,  tribue-re,  tribu-I,  tribă-tum,  to allot.

Mixed Conjugation.

Perfect: -vi; Supine: -tum.

157. (a) Stem class:

arcess-5,  arcesse-re,  arcessi-vi,  arcessi-tum,  to send for.
in-cess-5,  in-cesse-re,  in-cessi-vi (cessi),  —
So faces-5, I cause, make off.
pet-5,  pete-re,  peti-vi,  peti-tum,  to seek (fly at).
quaer-5,  quae-re-re,  quassi-vi,  quassi-tum,  to seek.
con-quir-5,  -quire-re,  -quisi-vi,  -quisi-tum,  to hunt up.
So other compounds of -quirō (quaerō).
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

rud-5,      rude-re,      rudi-vi,      rudi-tum, to roar.
ter-5,      tere-re,      tri-vi,      tri-tum, to rub.

(b) Reduplicated class:
ser-5,      sere-re,      se-vi,      se-tum, to sow.
So oćnerō, but with Sup. oći-nītum.

(c) Nasal class:
li-n-5,      li-ne-re,      li-vi,      li-tum, to besmear.
si-n-5,      si-ne-re,      si-vi,      si-tum, to let.
pō-n-5 (=posinō), pō-ne-re, po-su, po-su-tum, to put.
cer-n-5,      cer-ne-re,      cer-vi, (cer-tum), to separate.
sper-n-5,      sper-ne-re,      spre-vi,      spre-tum, to despise.
stern-5,      stern-ne-re,      strē-vi,      strē-tum, to strew.

(d) Inchoative class:
inveterē-5-5, inveterē-soe-re, inveterē-vi, inveterē-tum, to grow old.
pā-so-5,      pā-soe-re,      pā-vi,      pā-tum, to graze (trans.).
vesperē-5-5, vesperē-soe-re, vesperē-vi, — to become evening.
crē-so-5,      crē-soe-re,      crē-vi,      crē-tum, to grow.
con-cupī-so-5, con-cupī-soe-re, — cupī-vi, — cupī-tum, to long for.
ob-dormī-5-5, ob-dormī-soe-re, — dormī-vi, — dormī-tum, to fall asleep.
So condormīscō, ędormīscō.
ex-olō-5-5, -olō-soe-re, -olō-vi, -olō-tum, to get one’s growth.
So ob-olōscō, I grow old. But ab-olōscō, I disappear, has abolītum; co-olōscō, I grow together, co-altītum; ad-olōscō, I grow up, ad-ultūm in the Sup.; and inolōscō lacks the Supine.
quiē-so-5,      quiē-soe-re,      quiē-vi,      quiē-tum, to rest.
scl-so-5,      scl-soe-re,      scl-vi,      scl-tum, to decrease.
su-so-5,      su-soe-re,      suš-vi,      suš-tum, to accustom one’s self.
So compounds as-, con-, dē-, man-.

(g)nō-5-5,      nō-soe-re,      nō-vi,      (nō-tum), to know.
So ignōscō, I pardon; but ob-gnōscō, I recognize, and other compounds of nōscō, have Sup. in -ītum.
re-sip-isō-5, — sipi-soe-re, — sipi-vi, — to come to one’s sense.

(e) I-class:
cupī-5,      cupī-re,      cupī-vi,      cupī-tum, to desire.
sapi-5,      sapi-re,      sapi-vi (-ui), — to have a flavor.

Perfect: -ui; Supine: -(i)tum.

158. (a) Stem class:

frem-5,      frem-re,      frem-ui, — to roar, rage.
gem-5,      gem-re,      gem-ui, — to groan.
vom-5,      vom-re,      vom-ui,      vomītum, to vomit.
al-5,      ale-re,      al-ui,      al-tum (all-tum), to nourish.
LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

col-5, col-re, col-ul, col-tum, to cultivate.
con-cin-5, -cine-re, -cin-ul, — to sing together.
So oonere, praeclinere.
cön-sul-5, cön-sule-re, cön-sul-ul, cön-sul-tum, to consult.
mol-5, mole-re, mol-ul, moli-tum, to grind.
ocul-5, occule-re, occul-ul, occul-tum, to conceal.
plins-5, plins-re, plins-ul, plins-tum, to pound.
Sup. also plinsum, plistum.
ser-5, sere-re, — (ser-tum), to string (out).
Common in compounds: as, darse, desserere, dresserul, dresserum, to desert.
ster-5, sterte-re, start-ul, — to more.
strep-5, strepe-re, strep-ul, (strep-tum), to make a din.
tex-5, texe-re, tex-ul, tex-tum, to weave.

Irregular are:
met-5, mete-re, mess-ul, mess-sum, to move.
vol-5, vel-je, vol-ul, — to wish.
So nolü, mälü; see 174.

(b) Reduplicated class:
gít-gú-5 (gen-), gít-gne-re, gen-ul, geni-tum, to beget.

(c) The Nasal class:
frend-5, frende-re, — fré-sum, fré-sum, to gnash.
Also in the form frende-5, frendé-re.
ac-cumb-5, -cumbe-re, -cub-ul, -cubi-tum, to lie down.
So also the compounds con-, dis-, in-; but re-cumbö lacks the Supine.
ex-cell-5, -elle-re, (cell-ul), (cel-sus), to surpass.
But per-cellere, to beat down, has Pf. per-culü, Sup. per-culsum.

(d) Inchoative class:
dispeš-5, dispėše-re, dispėso-ul, — to let loose.
So compėsere, to check.

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in -ul; as,

co-alēšo-5, -alēše-re, -al-ul, -ali-tum, to grow together.
See 157, a.
ä-vänšé-5, -vänšše-re, -vän-ul, — to disappear.
con-valēš-5, -valēše-re, -val-ul, -vali-tum, to get well.
in-gemisć-5, -gemisše-re, -gem-ul, — to sigh.
nötše-5, nötše-re, nöt-ul, — to become known.
in-calēš-5, -calēše-re, -cal-ul, — to get warm.

(e) I-class:
rap-5, rape-re, rap-ul, rap-tum, to snatch.
cor-ripić, -ripe-re, -rip-ul, -rep-tum, to seize.
So other compounds.
Fourth Conjugation.

Type: audi-5, audi-re, audi-vl, audi-tum.

159. Irregular in Supine is:

sepell-5, sepell-re, sepell-vl, sepul-tum, to bury.

160. Perfect: -uf; Supine: -tum.

amici-5, amici-re, amic-uf (ami-xf), amic-tum, to clothe.
aperi-5, aperi-re, apor-uf, aper-tum, to open.
operi-5, operi-re, oper-uf, oper-tum, to cover up.
sali-5, sali-re, sal-uf, sal-tum, to loop.


saepi-5, saepi-re, saep-uf, saep-tum, to hedge in.
sanci-5, sanci-re, sanci-uf, sanc-tum, to hollow.
vinci-5, vincir-re, vincir-uf, vincir-tum, to bind.
farci-5 (-ferci-5), farci-re, far-ci, far-tum, to stuff.
fuli-5, fuli-re, fuli-uf, fuli-tum, to prop.
sarci-5, sarci-re, sar-ci, sar-tum, to patch.
senti-5, senti-re, senti-uf, senti-tum, to feel.
hauri-5, hauri-re, hauri-uf, hauri-tum, to drain.

Viae., A. iv, 383, has hausfur.us.

162. Perfect: -I; Supine: -tum.

re-peri-5, re-peri-re, re-peri-uf, re-peri-tum, to find.
See the simple verb parere, 159.
veni-5, veni-re, veni-uf, veni-tum, to come.

DEPONENTS.

163. The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the first conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. A few of the principal verbs are as follows:

In the first conjugation.

arbitr-or, arbitrati-5, arbitrati-tus sum, to think.
comit-or, comitati-5, comitati-tus sum, to accompany.
cunct-or, cunctati-5, cunctati-tus sum, to delay.
(fest), festi-5, festi-tus sum, to speak.
opin-or, opinā-ri, opinā-tus sum, to think.
tūt-or, tūtā-ri, tūtā-tus sum, to protect.
vag-or, vagā-ri, vagā-tus sum, to wander.
vener-or, venerā-ri, venerā-tus sum, to reverence.

164. In the second conjugation:

fate-or, fātā-ri, fā-sus sum, to confess.
cōn-fite-or, cōn-fitā-ri, cōn-fes-sus sum, to confess.
liče-or, ličā-ri, lici-tus sum, to bid (at a sale).
merē-or, merē-ri, meri-tus sum, to deserve.
Especially in the phrases merēri bene dé aliquō, to deserve well of any one.
miser-or, miserā-ri, miserī-tus sum, to pity.
pollicē-or, pollicē-ri, pollici-tus sum, to promise.
rese-or, rē-ri, ra-tus sum, to think.
Pr. Part. Active is wanting.
tue-or, tua-ri, tui-tus (tūtus) sum, to protect.
vere-or, verē-ri, veri-tus sum, to fear.

165. In the third conjugation:

ad-ipīsc-or, ad-ipīsc-ī, ad-ep-tus sum, to get.
am-plect-or, am-plect-ī, am-plex-us sum, to twine round, embrace.
So the compounds complector, circumplector.
com-min-Isc-or, com-min-Isc-ī, com-men-tus sum, to think up, devise.
experg-Isc-or, ex-perg-Isc-ī, ex-per-rēc-tus sum, to (right one's self exp.) awake.
fung-or, fung-I, ūnctus sum, to discharge.
fru-or (frugv-), fru-ī, fruc-tus sum, to enjoy.
gradi-or, grad-ī, gres-sus sum, to step.
ag-gredī-or, ag-gred-ī, ag-gres-sus sum, to attack.
lāb-or, lāb-ī, láp-sus sum, to glide.
loqui-or, loqu-I, locū-tus sum, to speak.
mori-or, mor-ī, mor-tus sum, to die.
nanc-Isc-or, nanc-Isc-ī, nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum, to get.
nāscor (gnā-), nāsc-ī, nās-tus sum, to be born.

Fut. Part. nāsciturus.

nit-or, nit-I, { nl-sus (nīx-us) sum, } to stay one's self on.
{ nl-sūrus,
ob-liv-Isc-or, ob-liv-Isc-ī, ob-lī-tus sum, to forget.
pac-Isc-or, pac-Isc-ī, pac-tus sum (pēpigī), to drive (a bargain).
See pangō (150).

pat-or, pat-I, pas-sus sum, to suffer.
per-pet-or, per-pet-ī, per-pes-sus sum, to endure to the end.
pro-fic-Isc-or, pro-fic-Isc-ī, pro-feo-tus sum, to (get forward) set out.
quer-or, quer-I, ques-tus sum, to complain.
sequ-or, sequ-I, secū-tus sum, to follow.
ulo-Isc-or, ulo-Isc-ī, ul-tus sum, to avenge.
SEMI-DEPONENTS.

166. In the fourth conjugation:

assenti-or, assenti-rī, assēn-sus sum, to assent.
com-peri-or, comperi-rī, — to find out.
Occasionally for comperiō, compersī. But experiō, experīrī, expertus sum, to try, is regularly deponent.

largi-or, largi-rī, largi-tus sum, to bestow.
menti-or, menti-rī, menti-tus sum, to lie.
mēti-or, mēti-rī, mēn-sus sum, to measure.
ōrdi-or, ōrdi-rī, ōr-sus sum, to begin.
ori-or, ori-rī, or-tus sum, to arise.
parti-or, parti-rī, parti-tus sum, to share.
potī-or, poti-rī, poti-tus sum, to get possession of.
pūni-or, pūni-rī, pūni-tus sum, to punish.
sorti-or, sorti-rī, sorti-tus sum, to cast lots.

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

167. 1. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents:

auđe-ō, auđe-re, au-sus sum, to dare.
fīd-ō, fīde-re, fī-sus sum, to trust.
gaude-ō, gaude-re, gāv-ius sum, to rejoice.
solē-ō, solē-re, sol-itus sum, to be wont.

2. The reverse usage is found in:

re-vert-or, re-vert-rī, re-vert-i, to turn back.
So also dēverti, but without Pf. Part. Reversus is also used actively, but reversus sum for reverti is post-classic.
See also assentior, etc., 166.

Notes.—1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as: cōnātus, one who has dined, from cōnāre, to dine; prānus, having breakfasted, from prandērō, I breakfast; pōtus, drunken, from pōtō, I drink; iūrātus, having taken the oath, sworn, from iūrō, I swear; coniūrātus, a conspirator, from coniūrō, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: cōnsiderātus, circumspect; cautus, wary, from cāvēō, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning: adeptus (adipiscor), having acquired, or being acquired; comiūtus (comitor, I accompany); effētus (effor, I speak out); expertus (experior, I try); exsecrātus (exsecor, I curse); imitātus (imitor, I copy); meritus (meror, I deserve); optimātus, necopītātus (opinor, I think); pātus (pāciscor, I contract); partītus (partior, I distribute); sortītus (sortior, I cast lots); tueor, I protect; tūtus, safe.

For others, see the list of deponents.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

(168) 169. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present stem:

1. ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus sum, to arise.

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the Impf. Subjv. always orerer; but the Fut. Part. is oriturus. The compounds follow the same usage except adoriri, to rise up at, attack, which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. i-re, to go.

The stem is i, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

PRIN. PARTS: eo, ire, i-ve, (if), itum.

INDICATIVE.

I go.

Pres. Sg.—1. e-o, Pl.—e-mus,
    2. e-s, e-tis,
    3. e-t, eu-nt.

IMPF. I-ve-m, I went.

FUT. I-b-o, I shall go.

PERF. I-v-i (i-1), I have gone.

PLUFF. I-v-era-m (i-era-m), I had gone.

FUT. PR. I-v-er-o (i-er-o), I shall have gone.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be going.

Pres. Sg.—e-a-m, Pl.—e-m-mus,
    e-s, e-tis,
    e-t, eu-nt.

IMPF. I-re-m, I were going.

FUT. I-b-o, I shall go.

PERF. I-v-er-i-m (i-eri-m).

PLUFF. I-v-is-se-m (i-isse-m, i-isse-m).

FUT. PR. I-v-er-o (i-er-o), I shall have gone.

IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—1. I, go thou.
    3. ——

Pl.—2. I-te, go ye.
    3. ——

INFECTIVE.

Pres. I-re.

FUT. I-tur-um [esse].

PERF. I-ve-isse (i-esse).

GERUND.

eun-d, etc.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. i-s-ne (G. eu-nt-is).

FUT. i-tur-us.

SUPINE.

I-tum, to go.

REMARKS.—1. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where i-i is the regular form (see 131, 2). Væn-eo, I am for sale, and per-eo, I perish, serve as passives to væn-d, I sell, and per-d, I destroy. Amb-i5, I solicit, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.
2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms itur, ibatūr, itum est, irī (in combination with the Supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly; so, prae-
ter-eū forms præter-eor, -iris, -itur, -imur, -imīnī, -suntur, iBar, etc., -itus
sum, erō, -suntor, -itor, -irī, -sundus.

3. qui-re, to be able ; nequi-re, to be unable.

170. (a) que-ū, I am able, is found in the following forms, of which
those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin
and the poets; Caesār uses no form of queū.

Pr. Indic. que-ū, (quīs), (quit), quīmus, (quītis), quēunt. Pr. Subjv. queam,
quēs, quēst, quēsum, quēstis, quēsant. Impf. (quībam), (quīrem). Fut.
quībū. Pr. quīvī, etc.; quīverim, etc. Pluff. quīveram, etc.; quīvisse,
etc. Fut. Pr. quīverū, etc. Pr. Inf. quīre. Pr. quīvīsse. Part. quīsūs.

(b) neque-ū, I am unable, has the same forms, all of which seem to
be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.

4. fer-re, to bear.

171. The endings beginning with t, s, and r are added
directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by tul-
tol-, tla-.

Phn. Parts: ferō, ferre, tullī, lātum.

INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>I bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—1.</td>
<td>fer-ū,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pl.—fer-ī-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>fer-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>fer-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fer-u-nūt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPF.: ferā-va-m, I was bearing.

Fut. ferā-m, I shall bear.

Perf. tul-ī, I have borne.

Pluff. tul-era-m, I have borne.

Fut. Pr. tul-er-ū.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—2.</td>
<td>bear thou.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.—2.</td>
<td>bear ye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IRREGULAR VERBS

**INFINTIVE**
- Past. for-r.
- Fct. for-tum [some].
- Perf. tul-tum.

**GERUND**
- for-end-um, etc.

**PARTICIPLES**
- Past. for-seum, bearing.
- Fct. for-tum.

**SUPINE**
- for-tumn, for-tum.

### PASSIVE

#### INDICATIVE
- I am borne.

**Past.**
- Sg.—1. for-re, Pl.—for-wai, Sg.—for-re, Pl.—for-wai,
  - 2. for-tum
  - 3. for-tum

**Imper.
- for-ba-re,**
**Fct.**
- for-re.
**Perf.**
- for-tum sum.
**Pl.**
- for-tum esse.
**Fct. Pr.**
- for-tum esse.

#### IMPERATIVE

**Sg.—2.** for-re,
- be thou borne. for-tum, thou shalt be borne.
  - 3.
**Pl.—2.** for-wai, be ye borne.
  - 3.

#### INFINITIVE

- Past. for-re, to be borne.
- Fct. for-tum sum.
- Perf. for-tum esse, to have been borne.

**PARTICIPLE**
- Past. for-seum, -a, -um, borne.

**GERUNDIVE**
- for-end-um.

### COMPONDS

- aft-fer-8, aft-fer-re, at-tul-1, al-lai-tum, to bear to.
- an-fer-8, an-fer-re, abs-tul-1, ab-lai-tum, to bear away.
- oft-fer-8, oft-fer-re, con-tul-1, cel-lai-tum, to collect.
- dif-fer-8, dif-fer-re, dis-tul-1, di-lai-tum, to put off.
- of-fer-8, of-fer-re, ex-tul-1, elai-tum, to carry out.
- oft-fer-8, oft-fer-re, ob-tul-1, ob-lai-tum, to offer.

**Remarks.**—1. The Pf. tull was originally reduplicated to-tull. Traces of this are seen in ret-tull.

2. Sus-fero, I undergo, has the Pf. sus-tin-ul, because sus-tul-1, sub-lai-tum have been appropriated to toll-s.
5. *ede-re*, to eat.

172. In certain forms the endings beginning with *a*, *t*, and *r* are added directly to the root (132); *d* before *s* (*r*) is dropped or assimilated (as *ss*) and before *t* becomes *s*.

**Prin. Parts:** *eda*, *edere* (*esse*), *edt*, *esse*.

**ACTIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I eat.</em></td>
<td><em>I am eating.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg.—1. ed-<em>s</em>, Pl.—ed-<em>mus</em>,</td>
<td>Sg.—eda-<em>m</em>, Pl.—eda-<em>mus</em>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ed-<em>t</em>, ed-<em>nt</em>, ed-<em>nt</em>,</td>
<td>ed-<em>t</em>, ed-<em>nt</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperf.** ed-*ba-*m*, *I ate.* ede-*re-*m, ed-*se-*m, *I were eating.*

**Futur.** eda-*m*.

**Perfect.** ed-*l*.

**Pluperfect.** ed-*era-*m*.

**Futur. Pers.** ed-*or-*s*.

**IMPERATIVE.**


| 3. —— |

**INFINITIVE.**

| ed-*re*, ed-*se*, *to eat.* ed-*re*, ed-*re*, |
| ed-*re*, ed-*re*, *to eat.* |

**PARTICIPLE.**

| Pres. *(ed-*ns)*. |
| Fut. ed-*ar-*un esse. |
| Perf. ed-*isse*.

**GERUND.** ed-*nd-*s, etc.

**SUPINE.** ed-*um*, ed-*s*.

**PASSIVE.**

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows: Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, editur and editur. Impf. Subj. Sing. Third, ederetur and ederetur. The Pf. Part. is edum and the Gerundive edendus.


173. *fle-* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by *e*; thus, *fle-*rem, *I were becoming*; *fle-*ri, *to become*. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Infinitive ends in -ri, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to faciō, I make. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from faciō.

**ACTIVE.**

**Pres.** faciō, I make.

**Imperf.** faciō-bam, I made.

**Fut.** faciō-am, I shall make.

**Perf.** faciō.

**Pluperf.** faciō-era-m.

**Fut. Pr.** faciō-erō.

etc.

**PASSIVE.**

**Indic.** faciō, I am made, I become.

**Imperf.** faciō-bam, I was made, I became.

**Fut.** faciō-am, I shall be made (become).

**Subjunctive.** faciō, faciō-a, faciō-ant, etc.

**INFINITIVE.**

**Pres.** faciō.

**Perf.** faciō-sum esse, to have become.

**Fut.** faciō-tur-um esse or fore.

**Fut. Pr.** faciō-tum fore.

**Remark.**—The compounds of faciō with Prepositions change the a of the stem into i, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: perfaciō, I achieve, Pass. perfaciōr; interfaciō, Pass. interfaciōr, I am destroyed. When compounded with words other than prepositions, faciō retains its a, and uses faciō as its Passive:

patefaciō, I lay open, Pass. patefaciō; calefaciō, I warm, Pass. calefaciō.

For the accent, see 15, 2, B. 2.

174. 7. vel-le, to be willing.

nōlle, to be unwilling; mālle, to be willing rather.

**Prin. Parts:** volō, velle, voluī; nōlō, nōlle, nōluī; mālō, mālle, māluī.

**Indicative.**

**Pres.** volō,

**Imperf.** volēbam,

**Fut.** volam,

**Vis.**

**Vult,**

**Volumus,**

**Vultis,**

**Volunt.**

**nōlō,**

**nōn vis,**

**nōn vult,**

**nōlumus,**

**nōluntis,**

**nōlunt.**

**nōlēbam,**

**nōlam,**

**nōlēs, etc.**

**mālō,**

**māvis,**

**māvult,**

**mālumus,**

**māvultis,**

**mālunt.**

**mālēbam,**

**mālam,**

**mālēs, etc.**
### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**Perf.** volui, nōlui, mālui, etc.  
**Pluff.** volueram, nōlueram, mālueram, etc.  
**Fut. Pf.** voluerō, nōluerō, māluerō, etc.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Pres.** velim, nōlim, mālim,  
veils, nōlis, mālis,  
velit, nōlit, mālit,  
velimus, nōlimus, mālimus,  
veiltis, nōlitis, mālitis,  
velint. nōlint, mālint.

**Impf.** vellem, nōlem, māllem.  
**Perf.** voluerim, nōluerim, māluerim, etc.  
**Pluff.** voluissem, nōluissem, māluissem, etc.

**Impv.** [fac velis],  
| Sg. | nōli, nōlitō.  
| Pl. | nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.  

| INF. Ps. | velle, nōlle, mālle.  
| PF. | voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse.  
| PART. | volēns, nōlēns.  

### 175. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

#### 1. Æiō, I say aye.

**Indic.** Pres. Sg.—1. Æiō, 2. ais, 3. ait, Pl.—3. Æiunt.  
**Impf.** Æisbam, etc.  
**Perf.** Æis, 3. ait.  
**Subjv.** Pres. Sg.—2. Æiēs, 3. Æiat, 3. Æiunt.  
**Part.** Æēns (as adj.), affirmative. IMPV. aē.

#### 2. inquam, I say, quoth I.

**Indic.** Pres. Sg.—1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.  
Pl.—1. inquimus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquīunt.  
**Impf.** Sg.—  
**Fut.** Sg.—  
**Perf.** Sg.—1. inquīt, 2. inquīstī, 3. inquīt.  
**Impv.** inque, inquītō.
3. fārī, to speak.

INDIC. Pres. fātur. FUT. fābor, fābitur. PPRS. fātus sum, etc. IMPV. fāre.
PART. Pres. fāns, fāntis, fānti, fātem. GER. fandi, fandō. SUP. fātū.

4. havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.

IMPV. havē, salvē, salvēbis, hail thou!
    havētō, salvētō.
    havēte, salvēte, hail ye!
INF. havēre, salvēre.

Corresponding to these are the forms of valēre, viz.: valē, valēte, valēre, farewell.

5. coepī, memini, ōdi, nōvi.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepī, I have begun, which serves as a Perfect to incipīō, and memini, I remember, ōdi, I hate, nōvi (from nōscō, see 181, 3, 157, d), I know, am aware, ēsēvū (from ēsēscō), I am wont, which have the force of Presents.

a. INDIC. coepī, I have begun. SUBJV. coeperim.
    coeperam.
    coeperē.
    coeperēs, to have begun.

Passive forms coepētus sum, etc., occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. See 423, n. 3.

b. INDIC. memini, I remember. SUBJV. meminerim.
    memineram.
    meminerē.
    meminerēs, to remember.
    IMPV. Sc.—mementō.
    PL.—mementōte.

c. INDIC. ōdi, I hate.
    ōderam.
    ōderē.
    ōderēs, to hate.
    FUT. PART. ōsērus.

Note.—For the Passive the phrase ōdiō esse is used.

d. INDIC. nōvi.
    nōveram (nāram).
    nōverē (nārē).
    SUBJV. nōverim (nārim).
    nōvisse (nāsēm).
    INF. nōvisse (nāse), to know.

6. cedo, quaesō.

Other defective forms are:

SG.—cedo, give! (old Impv.) PL.—cette.

INDIC. PREs. quaesō, please (i.e., I seek, beg), quaessumus.
FORMATION OF WORDS.

176. By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.

177. All roots of the Latin language are probably monosyllabic. They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, nn. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root; so especially in the Root Verbs (182). But it is usually different.

178. Words are either simple or compound.
A simple word is one that is formed from a single root: sōl, sun; stāre, stand, stay.
A compound word is one that is made up of two or more roots: sōl-stiti-um, sun-staying, solstice.

A.—Simple Words.

179. Simple words are partly primitive, partly derivative or secondary.

1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called verbals: scrib-a (scribō, I write), scribe.

2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem; hence called denominatives: vetus-tēs, age, from vetes- (N. vetus), old.

180. Substantives are generally formed by means of a suffix. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem scrib-(scribō, I write) comes scrip-tor, writ-er; scrip-tīō(n), writ-ing.

Suffixes are either primary or secondary. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, -tor in scrip-tor is a primary suffix; -tēs in vetus-tēs is secondary.

181. FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows:
1. Agency is indicated by
   -tor, -tric (N. tor, trīx): amē-tor, lover; viē-trīx, conqueress;
   -ōn (N. ā, G. ōnis): com-būbō (fellow-drinker), boon companion;
   -o, -a (N. -us, -a): serv-ōs, slave; scrib-a, scribe, occasionally;
   -ōna, -ōna (N. ōna-s, -ōna): col-ōna-s, settler;
   -(i)ē (N. e-s, G. itis): mil-e-s, soldier, and a few others.

2. Action, Activity, and Event are indicated by
   a. -tu (N. tu-s, su-s, G. -us): ad-ven-tus, arrival;
   -trī-na (N. trīna): doc-trīna, instruction;
   -in-a (N. ina): rap-inā, rapine;
   -men (N. men, G. min-īa): ūg-men, train;
   -mento (N. mentum): tor-mentu-m, torture;
   -ē-la (ella): loqu-ēla, speech; quer-ēla, complaint;
   -cinio (N. -u-m): latrō-cinniu-m, highway robbery;
   -mōnio, -mōnia: queri-mōnia, complaint; testi-mōniu-m, testimony.

b. Abstracts. Masculine: -ōs (N. -or, G. -or-is): ang-or, anguish.
   Feminine: -ōn (N. dō, gō, G. in-is): imā-gō, image; cup-idō, desire;
   -ia: audā-ia, boldness;
   -iōn (N. iō): leg-iō, legion;
   -tia: avāri-tia, avarice; collateral are some with Nom. in -tiēs, as
   dūri-tēs, hardness;
   -tiōn (N. tiō, siō): amb-i-tiō, ambition; cōn-śiō, confusion;
   -tūt (N. tūs): sequal-tūs, equality;
   -tūra: pic-tūra, painting;
   -tūt- (N. tūs, sus): lūven-tūs, youth;
   -tu (-su) (N. tu-s, su-s): sen-sus, perception;
   -tūdōn (N. tūdō, G. -inās): aēgrī-tūdō, sickness of heart.
   Neuter: -tio (N. tiu-m): servī-tiu-m, bondage.

3. An Artisan or Tradesman is indicated by
   -ārio (N. āriu-s): argent-āriu-s, money changer.

4. The Trade is indicated by
   -āria: argent-āria, silver mine, bank.

5. The Locality of the work (or trade) is indicated by
   -ārio (N. āriu-m): sēmin-ārium, seed-plot;
   -ōnio (N. ōniu-m): full-ōniu-m, fuller’s shop;
   -ina: offic-inā, workshop;
   -cro, -culo (N. -cro-m, -culo-m): lavā-crum, bath;
   -trino, -trīna (N. trīna, trīnu-m): sū-trīna, shoemaker’s shop;
   plī-trīnu-m, mill.

6. Instrument and Means are indicated by
   -bro, -bra (N. bra, bru-m): lī-bra, balance; art-brum, sieve;
   -cro, -culo (N. cru-m, culu-m): ba-culu-m, walking stick;
FORMATION OF WORDS.

-ło, -ła (N. -śa, -śu-m): pil-śa, pillar; tō-śu-m, weapon;
-ulo, -ula (N. ulu-s, ula, ulu-m): cap-ul-u-s, handle; rég-ula, rule;
qing-ul-u-m, girdle;
-mento (N. mentu-m): al-i-mentu-m, nourishment;
-tro, -tra (N. tra, tru-m): fenes-tra, window; arā-tru-m, plow.

7. Relationship is indicated by
-ter (N. ter, G. tr-la): pa-ter, father; mā-ter, mother.

8. Condition or Relation by
-īna: disciplīna, discipline; medicīna, medicine.

9. Function is indicated by
-tūra (stūra): cul-tūra, cultivation.

10. Office is indicated by
-ātu (N. ātu-s, G. ātus): očusul-ātu-s, consulship;
-tūra (-stūra): dictō-tūra, dictatorship.

11. Dense Grownths are indicated by
-eto (N. ētu-m): murt-ētu-m, myrtle grove;
-to (N. tu-m): virgul-tu-m, brushwood.

12. Diminutives are indicated by
-ło, -la (N. lu-s, etc.), before which a liquid is assimilated: (ager),
agel-śu-s, little field; (coru-n), corō-śa, chaplet;
-olo, -ulo : olo after e, i, v, otherwise -ulo (N. olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ula):
(alve-us), alve-olo-s, little hollow; (filu-s), filo-ola, little daughter;
-culo, -cula (N. culu-s, etc.), after e, i, u, and consonant stems:
(spē), spō-ula, slight hope; (versu-s), versal-ulu-s, versicle; (homō, homin-), homun-ulu-s, manikin; (cor, cord-), cor-ulu-m, dear heart.

182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows:

1. Action is indicated by
-bundo, -bunda : cunctē-bundu-s, lingering;
-ulo, -ula (repeated action): crēd-ulu-s, quick to believe;
-bili (passive action): amā-bili-s, lovable.

2. Capacity and Inclination are indicated by
-cundo, -cunda : ūs-cundu-s, of ready speech.
-ili (passive capacity): ag-ili-s, movable; doc-ili-s, teachable.
The Capacity and Resulting Condition by
-tili : duo-tili-s, ductile; flo-tili-s, capable of being moulded, of clay.

3. Tendency is indicated by
-ūci (N. āx): aud-āx, bold; rap-āx, greedy.

7
4. Likeness and Composition or Material are indicated by
-āceo, -ācea: arundin-āceo-s, reedy; crēt-āceo-s, chalky;
-icō, -icia: later-icō-s, made of brick;
-no, -na: acer-nu-s, of maple;
-neo, -nea: ne-neu-s, brazen.

5. Belonging to is indicated by
-io, -ia: imperātōr-iu-s, belonging to a general;
-icō, -icia: sedil-icō-s, belonging to an adīle;
-āno, -āna: hūm-ānu-s, human; urb-ānu-s, urbane, city.

6. Appurtenance and Medium are indicated by
-tico, -tica: aquā-ticu-s, aquatic;
-tīli: aquā-tīli-s, aquatic; plūmē-tīli-s (embroidered) like feathers.

7. Origin is indicated by.
-io, -ia: Cornēlia (lāx), Corinth-iu-s;
-āno, -āna, -īno, -īna: Rōm-ānu-s, Lat-īnu-s.

8. Time is indicated by
-tino, -tīna: crēs-tīnu-s, of to-morrow;
-terno, -terna: hēs-ternu-s, of yesterday;
-urno, -urna: nocturno-s, by night;
-tīno, -tīna: mātā-tīnu-s, of early morning.

9. Locality, where, whence, is indicated by
-ia: Galli-a, Gaul;
-īno: intestīnu-s, inner, intestine;
-ēnsi: circ-ēnsi-s, from the circus; Sicilī-ēnsi-s, Sicilian.

10. Fullness is indicated by
-ōso, -ōsa: anim-ōsu-s, full of spirit; verb-ōsu-s, wordy;
-lento, -lenta: sanguin-o-lentu-s, bloody.

11. Descent and Relationship are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names (Patronymics). These suffixes are
M. -idēs (G. idēs), F. -ēs (G. idēs), from Nominatives in us, or, ēs, and preceded by a consonant: (Tantalus) Tantal-idēs, son of Tantalus; Tantal-ēs, daughter of Tantalus; (Pelops) Pelopidēs.
M. -idēs (G. idēs), F. -ēs (G. idēs), from Nominatives in -us: (Thēsus) Thēs-idēs, Thēsēs.
M. -adēs (G. adēs), F. -ēs (G. adēs), from Nominatives in ēs (G. ae) and -ēs (G. ae): (Aenēs) Aene-adēs.
M. -iadēs (G. iadēs), F. -ias (G. iadēs), from Nominatives in īus, ēs, ōn, o: (Lāertēs) Lāert-iadēs.
F. -ēnē, from Nominatives in -us and -ēus: (Neptūnus) Neptūn-īnē.
F. -iōnē, from Nominatives in īus: (Acrīsius) Acrīsiōnē.
12. **Diminutive adjectives** are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12): *albus, white, albu-lus, whitish; miser, wretched, mis-ellus, poor (little); ōer, sharp, ōri-culu-s, somewhat sharp.*

183. **SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.**

*(Root Substantives.)*

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix:

1. With weak root: *duc-s (dux), leader, from root duc, lead; nec-s (nex), killing, from root nec, kill.*

2. With strong root: *lāc-s (lūx), light, from root lāc, light; rēg-s (rēx), king, from root rēg, rule.*

3. With reduplication: *car-cer, jail; mar-mor, marble; mur-mur, murmur.*

(184–9) 190. **FORMATION OF VERBS.**

1. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stem-formations are shown in 183.

2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the Inchoatives and the Meditatives) formed in the same way, but certain classes of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings:

   - **Causatives.**
   - **Frequentatives.**
   - **Desideratives.**
   - **Inchoatives.**
   - **Meditatives.**

191. **Verbālia** (derived from verb-stems):

1. **Frequentatives or Intensives**, denoting repeated or intense action. These verbs end in *-tāre (sāre), -ittāre, -titāre (sītāre),* and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).

   - *(a) cantāre, sing; compare canō (cantum): cursāre, run to and fro; compare currō (currum): dormitāre, be sleepy; compare dormīō (dormitum): pulsāre, beat; compare pellō (pulsum).*

   - *(b) agitāre (ago), nōcitāre (nōcō).*

   - *(c) cantitāre (cantāre), cursitāre (cursāre).*

2. **Inchoatives** indicate entrance upon an action. For their formation see 183, V.

3. **Desideratives** denote desire or tendency. They are formed by means of the suffix *-turiō (-suriō): āsurīre (for ēd-t), to be sharp-set for eating, hungry; ām-p-turīre, to be all agog for buying.*
4. **Causatives** signify the **effecting** of the **condition** indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

*Change*: cadere, fall, and caedere, fell; liquere, melt (intr.), and liquère, melt (trans.); necare, kill, and nocère, be death to.

*No change*: fugere, flee, and fugère, put to flight; iacere, throw, and iacère, (lie) thrown; pendere, (hang) weigh, and pendère, hang (intr.).

5. **Meditatives**: (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in -essere; proessere, to summon; capessere, to catch at; facessere, to do eagerly: id cessere, to enter; iacessere, to irritate (193, 3, b).

192. B. **Denominatives** (derived from noun-stems):

1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is i or u.

   (a) acervā-re, heap up (from acervo-s); corōnā-re, wreathe (corōna);
   levā-re, lighten (levi-s); nūminā-re, name (nūmen, nūmin-is).
   The Deponents signify condition, employment: andilla-ri, be maid (andilla);
   aquā-ri, be a drawer of water (aqua); fürā-ri, thieve (für).

   (b) albē-re, be white (albu-s); fūrē-re, be in bloom (fūs, fūris); frondē-re, be in leaf (frōns, frondi-s);
   lūcē-re, be light (lux, lūc-ia).

   (c) argū-re (be bright, sharp), prove; laede-re, hurt; metuē-re, be in fear (metu-a).

   (d) custōdī-re, guard (custōs, custōd-īs); finī-re, end (fini-s); lēnī-re, soften (lēni-a); vestī-re, clothe (vesti-s).

2. Noteworthy are the **Diminutives** formed by the suffix -illāre:
   st-illāre, drop (st-illa); scint-illāre, sparkle (scintilla). Similar in function but of different formation are pullu-lāre, sprout (pull-lus); fodiāre, punch (fodere, dig); albiōre, whiten (albu-s).

B. **Compound Words.**

193. 1. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

2. Composition is either **proper** or **improper**.

**Noun.**

194. In **Composition Improper** there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected: s-nūrmis = ex nūrmis, out of all rule; legiā-liōr, lawgiver; Senētis-cōnsultum, decree of the Senate.

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional: delirus (de-līra), crazy from fear; egregius (e-grege), distinguished (from the crowd); prōcōnsul (for prō cōnsule); trium-vir (from trium virum), etc.
195. Composition Proper.—i. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as ne-fär-in-s, nefarious; vē-sānu-s, mad, out of one’s sound senses: or a substantive.

If it is a substantive——

(a) The stems in -a, -o, -u regularly weaken these vowels into -i before the consonants of the second part, which i may vanish: causidicus, pleader, lawyer (causa); signifer, standard-bearer (signum); corniger, horn-wearer (cornu); manucēps (mannu- and cap-), one who takes in hand, contractor. The i-stems retain i or drop it: ignivomus, fire-vo ting (igni-); naufragus, shipwrecked (nāvi-s).

(b) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of ti second part: māgn-animus, great-souled; tri-animus, of one mind.

(c) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add i: homicid-e, manslayer (homin-); lapicid-e, stone-cutter (lapid-); mater-id-e, mother-murderer, matricide.

2. The second part of the composition is a substantive: triennium, space of three years (annus); misericor-d-s, tender-hearted (cor).

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as flāvi-comus, yellow-haired (coma, hair), but more often this final vowel becomes i and the adjective follows the third declension: abnormis, abnormal (nōrma, norm).

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change: bi-dēn-s, two-pronged; simplex (simplici-s), simple.

Signification of Nouns.

196. Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes: Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes: Attributional or Appositional, and Dependent.

197. i. Attributional compounds. The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive: aulās, wing-foot(ed); (2) an adjective: māgn-animus, great-hearted; lētī-fundium, large estate; (3) a numeral: biennium (i.e., spatium), space of two years.

2. Dependent compounds. In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.

(a) The first word is: (1) an adjective: mēri-dēs (from medi-dēs = mediō dīs), mid-day; (2) an adverb: beneficuṣ (well-doing), beneficent; maleficuṣ, evil-doing; (3) a numeral: tēr-geminus, triple; (4) a par-
tile: dis-sonus, harsh-sounding; per-magnus, very large; in-dignus, unworthy; (5) a verb-stem: horri-ficus, horrible (horror-stirring).

(b) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative: arni-ger = arma gerēns, armor-bearer; agri-cola = agrum colēns (land-tiller), husbandman; (2) the Genitive: sol-stitium = solis statīō (sun-staying), solstice; (3) the Locative: aliēni-gena (born elsewhere), alien; (4) the instrumental: tibī-see = tibī canēns, flute-player.

198. Possessive Compounds are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive: angui-manus, (having a) snake-hand (elephant); (2) an adjective: flavī-sonus, (having) yellow hair; (3) a numeral: bi-frōns, (having) two front(s); (4) a particle: dis-cōra, discordant; in-era, inactive.

Verb.

199. In Composition Improper the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In Composition Proper the verb is combined with a preposition.

200. 1. Composition Improper.—(a) Verb with verb: This only takes place when the second part of the compound is facēō or fūō (173, r.). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation: cale-facēō, cale-fūō, warn, am warned.

(b) Verb with substantive: anim-advēntūs = animānum advēntū, take notice; manū-mittō, set free; sub-capīō, acquire by use.

(c) Verb with adverb: bene-disēō, bless; male-disēō, curse; malō, nōlō (for magē (magās) volō, ne-volō), satis-facēō, satisfy.

2. Composition Proper.—The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 413, r. 3.

(a) With inseparable prepositions: amb-ō, go about; am-plectō, enfold; an-hēlō, draw deep breath, pant; dis-cūrō, run apart; dir-imō, 158; por-tendō, hold forth, portend; red-dō, give back; re-solvō, resolve; sō-lungō, separate.

(b) With separable prepositions: ab-ēō, go away; ad-ēō, come up; ante-cūrō, run in advance; com-pōnō, put together; dē-cūrō, run down, finish a course; ex-cūdō, overtread; in-clūdō, shut in; ob-dūcō, draw over; per-agrō, wander through; post-habēō, keep in the background; praec-dūcō, foretell; praet-ēō, pass by; prōd-ēō, go forth; praec-vidēō, foresee; sub-īdō, put under; suber-fugīō, flee from under; super-sūm, remain over; trāns-gredior, pass beyond.
SYNTAX.

201. Syntax treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (sententia) in words.

Sentences are divided into simple and compound.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are the subject and the predicate.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

Lūna fulget, the moon shines.
Lūna is the subject; fulget, the predicate.

Remarks.—1. The Interjection (16, r. 1) and the Vocative case (23, 5) do not properly belong to the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

Almae filius Māiae, H., O., r. 2, 43; son of mild Maia!
Audi tū, populus Albēnas, L., r. 24, 7; hear thou, people of Alba!

ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:

Ō firmōse puer, nimium nē crūde colōri, V., Ec. 2, 17; O shapely boy! trust not complexión all too much.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

202. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: su-m, I am; doce-s, thou teachest; scribi-t, he writes.
203. Subject.—The subject of the finite verb is in the Nominative Case.

The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

Remark.—The subj. of the Infinitive is in the Accusative (343, 2).

204. The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive:

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.
Ego rēgēs aīsil, [C.] ad Her., IV. 53, 66; I drove out kings.
Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, THE SAGE does not fear adversity.
Vīctī in servītūtem redĭguntur, THE VANQUISHED ARE REDUCED TO SLAVERY.
Contendīsse deōrum est, OV., M., IX. 6; TO HAVE STRUGGLED IS HONORABLE.

Remarks.—1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and participles, are often used as substantives: pauperēs, the poor; dīvītēs, the rich.

This is very rare in the Nom. Sing., where the substantive should be expressed: vir pauper, a poor man; mulier peregrīna, a foreign woman. So regularly, if a proper name is added: Platō, doctissimus homō, the learned Plato.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: medium, the midst; extrāmm, the end; futūrum, the future; bonum, good; bona, blessings, possessions; malum, evil; mala, misfortunes.

3. Adjectives of the Second Decension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen. after words of quantity or pronouns: aliquid bonī, something good; nihil malī, nothing bad.

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word rēs, thing, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous; so bonārum rērum, of blessings, rather than bonōrum (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English; adventūs imperātōrum, the arrival(s) of the generals (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Abstract substantives often become concrete in the plural: fortitūdīnēs, gallant actions; formidīnēs, bugbears; frāe, quarrels.

205. Predicate and Copula.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called copula (i.e. coupler) is generally employed, in order to couple the predicate with the subject. The chief copula is the verb sum, I am.

Fortūna cæca est, C., Lael. 15, 54; fortune is blind.
Usus magister est optimus, C., Rab. Post., 4, 9; practice is the best teacher.
Note.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: est Deus, there is a God; God exists; recte semper erunt res, things will always be (go on) well; sio vita hominum est, C., Rosc. Am., 30, 84; such is human life; “So runs the world away.”

206. Other copulative verbs are: vidēri, to seem; nāsci, to be born; fieri, to become; evādere, to turn out; creāri, to be created; deligi, to be chosen; putāri, to be thought; habēri, to be held; dici, to be said; appellāri, to be called; nomināri, to be named. Hence the rule:

Verbs of seeming, becoming, with the passive of verbs of making, choosing, showing, thinking, and calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate:

Namō nāscitur dīves, Sen., E.M., 20, 13; no one is born rich.
Aristidēs instus appellātur, Cf. Nep., iii. 1, 4; Aristides is called just.
Thucydidēs numquam est numerātus orātor, C., O., 9, 31; Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.

Remarks.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (423).

Beātus esse sine virtūte nāmō potest, C., N.D., 1. 18, 48; no one can be happy without virtue.
2. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

207. Subject Omitted.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts, or when the subject changes:

Amāmus parentēs, We love (our) parents.
Ego rēgēs dīcit, vēs tyrrēnnōs intrūditīs, [C.] ad Her., iv. 53, 66; I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.

208. Impersonal Verbs.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the person is not expressed. Chief of these are:

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather: tonat, it thunders, the thunder thunders, or rather, the Thunderer thunders; fulget, it lightens; pluit, it rains; nīgit, it snows, etc.
Nocte pluit tōtā, V., (Poet. Lat. Min., iv. 155, B.); all night it (he, Jupiter) rains.

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217): vivitur, people live; curritur, there is a running; pugnātur, there is a battle; mihi invidētur, I am envied. The subject is contained in the verb itself: pugnātur = pugna pugnātur, a battle is (being) fought.
AGREEMENT OF PREDICATE WITH SUBJECT.

209. COPULA OMITTED.—Est or sunt is often omitted in proverbs, in short statements and questions, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum est summa initia, C., Off., i. 10, 38; the height of right (is) the height of wrong.

Nemo malus felix, Juv., iv. 8; no bad man (is) happy.

So also esse, with participles and the like:

Caesar statuit exspectandam clássem, Caes., B.G., iii. 14, 1; Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.

CONCORD.

210. THE THREE CONCORDS.—There are three great concords in Latin:

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (385, 321).
3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

211. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and
{ in person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { gender, and
{ case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantiva móbillia (31, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject; as C., Or., i. 4, 18 (321).

Ego (307) régès fílés, vós tyrannós intrúdúsitis, [C.] ad Her., iv. 53, 66; I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.

Vósque amicitiae sempiternae sunt, C., Lael., 9, 32; true friendships are abiding.

Déus est décem talenta, Ter., And., 950; the dowry is ten talents.

Remarks.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes; either the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (construction according to the sense), or the nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence the following

Exceptions.—(a) Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: pars, part; vis (power), quantity; multitúdo, crowd; organized bodies more rarely.

Pars mólior recóuperat sese, L.,.xxxiv. 47, 6; the greater part had re-
tired.

Omnis multitúdo absunt, L., xxxiv. 3, 15; all the crowd depart.
(b) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject; so especially with *mília.*

_Capitis confiraciónis virginis caesae sunt, L., x. i, 3; the heads of the conspiracy were flogged._

_Samnitum caesae tris mília, Cf. L., x. 34, 3; of the Samnites (there) were slain three thousand._

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate: *Non omnis error stultitia doenda est, C., Div., II. 43, 90; not every false step is to be called folly._

(c) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"): *Amantium iura (204, b. 5) amōris integrātiō est, Ter., And., 555; lovers' quarrels are love's renewal._

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes: *Indus, qui est omnium flūminum maximus, C., N.D., II. 52, 130; the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers._

3. 4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject: *Triste lupus stabulis, V., Ec., 3, 80; the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds._

_Varium et mutābile semper fémina, V., A., iv. 569; "a thing of moods and fancies" is woman ever._

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate: *

_Ea nōn media sed nulla via est, L., xxxii. 21, 33; that is not a middle course, but no course at all._

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions: *Quid aut quāle est Deus? Cf. C., N.D., i. 22, 60; what or what manner of thing is God?*_

6. The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is *oppidum, civitas,* and the like: *

_Corioli oppidum captum est, L., ii. 33, 9; Coriolis-town was taken._

**Forms of the Verbal Predicate.**

**VOICES OF THE VERB.**

212. There are two voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

213. Active.—The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject. Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows:
Verbs are called Transitive when their action goes over to an object (trānseō, I go over); Intransitive when their action does not go beyond the subject: occidere, to fall = to kill (Transitive); occidere, to fall (Intransitive).

Remark.—(a) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of movement; as déclināre, inclināre, movère, mutāre, vertere, and the like.
(b) On the other hand, many intransitive verbs are often used transitively. In this case the Acc. is usually the inner object (332).

214. Passive.—The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

Virgis caedētur, C., Verr., III. 28, 69; he shall be beaten with rods.
Ignis lūmine prōditur suō, Ov., Her., 15, 8; the fire is betrayed by its own light.

The agent is put in the Ablative with ab (ā).

Ab amicis prōdimur, C., Cluent., 52, 143; we are betrayed by friends.
Virgis caesi tribūnī ab lēgātō sunt, L., XXIX. 18, 13; the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.

Remarks.—1. Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives: famē perire, C., Inv., II. 57, 172, to perish of hunger. So vēnire, to be sold; vēpulāre (chiefly vulgar), to be beaten, ab aliquō, by some one.
2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:
Vincī & Voluptāte, C., Off., I. 20, 88; to be overcome by Dame Pleasure.
Patricīs invenībus saepserant lātēra, L., III. 37, 6; they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.
A cane mōnum saepe tenētur aper, Ov., Rem. Am., 422; a boar is often held fast by a little dog.

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.
Compare equō vehī, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse), with in equō, on horseback.

215. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.
1. With the Perfect passive it is the natural inference, and common in prose.

_Carmina nulla mihi sunt scripta_, Ov., _Tr._, v. 12, 35; _poems—I have none written_ (I have written no poems).

2. With the Gerundive it is the necessary inference, and the Dative is the rule.

_Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia_, C., _Cluent._, 3, 7; _there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy._

**216. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.**

 Алексан_ Dārēsum vicit_, Alexander conquered Darius.

_Dārēsus ab Alexandrō vîctus est_, Darius was conquered by Alexander.

**217. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive.** The Dative remains unchanged, and the _verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

*Active*: Miserī invident bonis, The wretched envy the well-to-do.

*Passive*: mihi invidētur, I am envied, tibi invidētur, thou art envied, eī invidētur, he is envied, nōbīs invidētur, we are envied, vōbīs invidētur, you are envied, īs invidētur, they are envied,

_Nihil facile persuādētur invitus_, QUINT., _iv._, 3, 10; _people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will._

_Annīs nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur_, SEN., _Ben._, _iii._, 15, 3; _our seals are more trusted than our souls._

**218. Reflexive.**—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

_Omnē animal sē ipsum diligēt_, C., _Fin._, v. 9, 24; _Every living creature loves itself._

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive is employed: _lavor, I bathe, I bathe myself._

_Pārgērī nequīvērunt_, _Cf._, _Li._, _xxiv._, 18, 4; _they could not clear themselves._
219. The passive in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, I let myself be dragged; tondeor, I have myself shaved.

Sine gemitū adūruntur, C., Tusc., v. 27, 77; they let themselves be burned without a moan.

Ipse dōcet quid agam; tēs est et ab hoste doceōrum, Ov., M., iv. 428; he himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).

220. Deponent.—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification: hortor, I am exhorting (trans.); morior, I am dying (intrans.).

221. Reciprocal.—Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by inter, among, and the personal pronouns, nōs, us; vōs, you; sē, themselves.

Inter sē amant, C., Q.F. iii. 3, 1: they love one another.

TENSES.

222. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:
1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is going on, or finished. The second tells whether the action is past, present, or future.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

223. There are six tenses in Latin:
1. The Present, denoting continuance in the present.
2. The Future, denoting continuance in the future.
3. The Imperfect, denoting continuance in the past.
4. The Perfect, denoting completion in the present.
5. The Future Perfect, denoting completion in the future.
6. The Pluperfect, denoting completion in the past.
224. An action may further be regarded simply as attained, i.e. as an occurrence without reference to its continuance or completion.

This is the aoristic or indefinite stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the Indefinite or Historical Present and the Indefinite or Historical Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the Definite or Pure Present and Perfect.

225. The Tenses are divided into Principal and Historical. The Principal Tenses have to do with the Present and Future. The Historical Tenses have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are Principal Tenses.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are Historical Tenses.

226. Table of Temporal Relations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>ContINUANCE.</th>
<th>COMPLETION.</th>
<th>ATTEINMENT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRES.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribō,</em> I am writing.</td>
<td>I am writing</td>
<td>I have written</td>
<td>I write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribam,</em> I shall be writing.</td>
<td>I shall be writing</td>
<td>I shall have written</td>
<td>I shall write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribēbam,</em> I was writing.</td>
<td>I was writing</td>
<td>I had written</td>
<td>I wrote.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>CONTINUANCE.</th>
<th>COMPLETION.</th>
<th>ATTAINMENT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRES.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribūr (epistula),</em> The letter is written</td>
<td>The letter is written</td>
<td>has been written, is written</td>
<td>is written.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(writing).</em></td>
<td><em>(writing).</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribūr,</em> The letter will be written</td>
<td>The letter will be written</td>
<td>will have been, will be written.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST.</strong></td>
<td><em>scribūrēr,</em> The letter was written</td>
<td>The letter was written</td>
<td>had been written, was written.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REMARK.—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

Continuance, Some one was writing a letter.
Completion, Some one had written a letter.
Attainment, Some one wrote a letter.

Present Tense.

227. The Present Tense is used as in English of that which is going on now (Specific Present), and of statements that apply to all time (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

Auribus teneo lupum, Ter., Ph., 506; I am holding a wolf by the ears.

Universal Present:

Probitas laudatur et alget, Juv., I. 74; honesty is bepraised and freezes.

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc.:

De iuvenum amore scribit Alcaeus, C., Tusci., iv. 33, 71; Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.

REMARK.—1. The Pr. like the Impf. (233) is sometimes used of attempted or intended action (Present of Endeavor). But do not mistake the Endeavor that lies in the verb for the Endeavor that lies in the tense.

Periculum vitam, C., Rosc. Am., i. 1; they are trying to avoid danger.

2. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes Resistance to Pressure (233); this is, however, colloquial: Tacet: non taceo, Pl., Cas., 826; keep quiet! I won’t.

228. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in anticipation of the future, chiefly in compound sentences:

Si vincimus, omnia tuta erunt, S., C., 58, 9; if we conquer (= shall have conquered) everything will be safe.

229. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a lively representation of the past (Historical Present):

Cohortis incedere iubet, S., C., 60, 1; he orders the cohorts to advance.
230. The Present is used in Latin of actions that are continued into the present, especially with iam, now; iam diū, now for a long time; iam pridem, now long since. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

Mithridätæ annum iam tertium et violéstimum régnum, C., Imp., 3, 7; Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.

Liberére rœ & Philippō iam diū magis vultis quam audētis, L., XXXII. 21, 36; you have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.

"How does your honor for this many a day?" SHAK., Ham., III. 1, 91.

Imperfect Tense.

231. The Imperfect Tense denotes continuance in the past: pügnábam, I was fighting.

The Imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the process; the Historical Perfect states the result. The Imperfect counts out the items; the Historical Perfect gives the sum.

232. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

Verrēs in forum vēnit; ērēbant oculi; tōtō ex òre crūdēlitās āminēbat, C., Verr., v. 62, 161; Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.

233. The Imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (Imperfect of Endeavor).

It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cāriam relinquébat, Tac., Ann., II. 34, 1; he was for leaving the senate-house.

Lēx abrogēbatur, Cf. L., XXXIV. 1, 7; the law was to be abrogated.

Aditum nōn dabat, Nep., IV. 3, 8; he would not grant access (nōn dedit, did not).
PERFECT TENSE.

Remarks.—1. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

Gorgias centum et novem vixit annōs, Quint., III. 1, 9; Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.

2. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (Imperfect of Awakening). Greek influence is not unlikely.

Tū aderēs, Ter., Ph., 858; (so it turns out that) you were here (all the time).

234. The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation; especially with iam, iam diū, iam dūdum.

Iam dūdum tibi adversābar, Pl., Men., 420; I had long been opposing you.

Archias domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēbat, Cf. C., Arch., 4, 7; Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.

Remark.—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively narrative, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively description, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:


1. PURE PERFECT.

235. The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

236. The Pure Perfect is used:

1. Of an action that is now over and gone.

Viximus, C., Fam., xiv. 4, 5; we have lived (life for us has been).

Filium unicum habēs, immo habul, Ter., Heaut., 94; I have an only son—nay, have had an only son.

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition):

Āctumst, peristi, Ter., Eun., 54; it is all over; you're undone.

Eguum et mūlum Brundisii tibi reliquis, C., Fam., xvi. 9, 9; I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundusium—(they are still there).
REMARK.—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present: nōvi, I have become acquainted with, I know; meminī, I have recalled, I remember; ődi, I have conceived a hatred of, I hate; őmōnūvī, I have made it a rule, I am accustomed, etc.

Odērunt hilarem tristās tristemque locōs, H., Ep. i. 18, 89; the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.

237. As the Present stands for the Future (228), so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

Brūtus at eōnservātus erit, victimus, C., Fam., xii. 6, 2; Brūtus!—if he is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.

238. Habeō or teneō, I hold, I have, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

Habeō statūtum, Cf. C., Verr., iii. 41, 95; I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.

Excusātum habeās me rogō, oñce domī, Mant., ii. 79, 2; I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.

2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

239. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence.

Vēnī, vidi, vici, Suet., Iul., 37; I came, saw, overcame.

Milō domum vēnīt, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvīt, paulīsper commorātus est, C., Mil., 10, 28; Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.

Gorgiās centum et novem vīxīt annōs, Quint., iii. 1, 9; Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.

240. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

Pluperfect Tense.

241. The Pluperfect denotes Completion in the Past, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:
1. Of an action just concluded in the past.

Modo Caesarem régantem viderámus, C., Ph., ii. 42, 108; we had just seen Caesar on the throne.

2. Of an action that was over and gone.

Fuerat inimicus, C., Red. in Sen., 10, 26; he had been my enemy.

3. Of a resulting condition in the past.

Massilænses portæ Caesari clausérant, Caes., B.C., i. 34, 4; the Mar-seillese had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)

REMARK.—When the Pf. is translated by an English Pr. (236, 2, r.), the Plupf. is translated by an English Imperfect: növeram, I had become acquainted with, I knew; memineram, I remembered; òderam, I hated; cónsuèveram, I was accustomed, etc.

Future Tense.


The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: scribám, I shall write.

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is often more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

Döne eris félix, multās numerábis amícis, Ov., Tr., i. 9, 5; so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.

2. Observe especially the verbs possessum, I can, and voló, I will.

Òdero si poteró; si nón, invitus amábô, Ov., Am., III. ii. 35; I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.

Quí adipiscé vēram glóriam volet, iútitiæ fungétur officiæ, C., Off., ii. 13, 43; who so shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.

243. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

Tá nihil diceás, II., A.P., 385; you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing).

Cum volet, accédès; cum té vitábit, abibís, Ov., A.A., II. 529; when she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

Ita mé amábít Iuppiter, Pl., Trin., 447; so help me Jove!
PERIPHRASTIC TENSES. 117

Future Perfect Tense.

244. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both completion and attainment; fecerō, T. E. R., Ph., 882; I shall have done it, or I shall do it (once for all); prófecerit, C., Fin., III. 4, 14; it will prove profitable.

Remarks.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future: nóverō, I shall know; cónsúverō, I shall be accustomed; Ódero, si poterō, Ov., Am., III. 11, 35; I will hate if I can.

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, sīus victūris erit, L., xxiv. 38, 5; who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in volō, I will; nōlō, I will not; possum, I can; licet, it is left free; libet, it is agreeable; placet, it is the pleasure; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

Si potuerō, faciam vōbis satis, C., Br., 5, 21; if I can, I shall satisfy you.

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.

Ex vita qui fugerit, is omnia serē vitāverit, C., Or., 69, 231; he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.

245. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

De tē tā vidēris; ego dé mē ipse profitebor, C., Ph., ii. 46, 118; do you see to yourself; I myself will define my position.

Periphrastic Tenses.

246. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of esse, to be, with participles and verbal adjectives. See 129.

1. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

247. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of esse and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting capability and tendency. Compare amatōr and amatūrus. The translation is very various:
1. *Scripturus sum*, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.

2. *Scripturus eram*, I was about to write, etc.

3. *Scripturus fui*, I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).

4. *Scripturus fueram*, I had been about to write, etc.

5. *Scripturus erüm*, I shall be about to write, etc.

6. *Scripturus fuerim*, I shall have made up my mind to write, etc. (of course very rare).

1. *Hic illud quod futurum est*, C., Div., II. 8, 21; what is to be, will be.

2. *Rex non interfuturus nāvēl certīmini erat*, L., xxxvi. 43, 9; the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.

3. *Faecis ipsi ad me dēlātūrī fuerunt*, C., Ph., xiv. 6, 15; they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me.

4. *Māior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginiēnsium fuerat*, L., xxii. 22, 19; the Romans’ credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians would have been.

5. *Eorum apud quōs aget aut erit actūrus*, mentēs sēnsūsque dēgrastet, C., Or., i. 52, 223; he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead.

6. *Sepiēns nōn vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus*, Sen., E.M., 9, 17; The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society. (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)

Remarks.—1. The forms with sum, eram, and the corresponding Subjv. forms with sim, essem, are much more common than those with fut, etc., probably for euphonic reasons.

2. The Subjv. and Inf. *scripturus sim, essem, fuerim, fussem*, scriptūrum esse, fuiscse, are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

A.—Of Future Relations.

248. The periphrases futūrum esse (more often fore) ut, (that) it is to be that, and futūrum fuisse ut, (that) it was to be that, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive Active; necessarily so when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with iri.

Spērō fore ut contingat id nōbis, C., Tusc., i. 34, 82; I hope that we shall have that good fortune.

In fātis scriptum Vēientēs habēbant fore ut ē Gallis Rōma caperētur, C., Div., i. 44, 100; the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would be taken by the Gauls.
PERIPHRASTIC TENSES.

Remark.—Poss, to be able, and velle, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of poss, are often used instead. (656, n.)

249. In est, it is on the point, erat, was (Impersonal), fuit, the Subjunctive.

In est ut Pausaniás comprehendētur, Nep., iv. 5, 1; it was on the point that Pausanias should be (Pausanias was on the point of being) arrested.

B.—Of Past Relations.

250. The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with sum, I am, and fui, I have been, I was, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. Eram, I was, and fueram, I had been, stand for the Pluperfect; and erō, I shall be, and fuerō, I shall have been, for the Future Perfect.

Remarks.—1. Fui is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: convivium eōnmātum fuit, the banquet was furnished forth; fui is the necessary form when the Pt. denotes that the action is over and gone: amātus fui, I have been loved (but I am loved no longer).

Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humil inventa, C., Div., i. 34. 74; the arms which had been fastened to the walls, were found on the ground.

Quod tibi fuerit persuāsum, hunc erit persuāsum, C., Roes. Com., i, 3; what is (shall have proved) acceptable to you will be acceptable to him.

2. To be distinguished is that use of the Pt. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, Caes., B. G., i, 1: Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts.

C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

251. 1. The combination of the Tenses of esse, to be, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of necessity.

Praeptōmenda est divitiā glōria, C., Top., 22, 84; glory is to be preferred to riches.
2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form.

*Paroendum est victis, The vanquished must be spared.*

**TENSES IN LETTERS.**

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase *Nihil erat (habēbam) quod scriberem, I have nothing to write.* This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

**Table of Permutations.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>becomes</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scribō, I am writing</td>
<td>scribēbam</td>
<td>I write</td>
<td>scripsī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scripsī, I have written</td>
<td>scripsēram</td>
<td>I wrote</td>
<td>scripseram or is unchanged.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribam, I shall write</td>
<td>scriptūrus eram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>becomes</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heri,</td>
<td>yesterday,</td>
<td>pridēs</td>
<td>hoc dies hōs litterae dedit, dabam.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hodie,</td>
<td>to-day,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>posterō dies, postridēs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crās,</td>
<td>to-morrow,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>tum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunc,</td>
<td>now,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Formiās mē continuō recipere cogītābam, C., Att., vii. 15, 3; I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiae.*

*Litterae eram datūrus postridēs et quī mihi primus obviam vēnisset, C., Att., ii. 12, 4; I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

**MOODS.**

253. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject. There are three moods in Latin:

1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

*Nota.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.*
The Indicative Mood.

254. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate as a reality. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

Remarks.—1. The Latin language expresses possibility and power, obligation and necessity, and abstract relations generally, as facts; whereas, our translation often implies the failure to realize.

Such expressions are: debet, I ought, it is my duty; oportet, it behooves; necesse est, it is absolutely necessary; possum, I can, I have it in my power; convenit, it is fitting; par, sequum est, it is fair; infinitum, endless; difficile, hard to do; longum, tedious; and many others; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

Posseum persequil permulta oblectamenta rurum rusticarum, C., Cat. M., 16, 55 ; I might rehearse very many delights of country life.

Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of debet, possum, oportet, etc.

Ad mortem tæ ducil oportebat, C., Cat., i. 1, 2; it behooved you to be (you ought to have been) led to execution (you were not).

Volumnia debuit in tæ officiis esse, C., Fam, xiv. 16; it was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you.

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment (233) is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: debemus, I ought (but do not); poteris, you could (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See r. 3.)

Poteram morbos appellare, sed non convenit ad omnia, C., Fin., iii. 10, 35; I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases (poteram si conveniet).

3. The Impf. Indic. is sometimes used in unreal conditional Apodosis like the Periphrastic Impf. and the Plupf. like the Periphrastic Plupf.: so libebas = Iapsarum eram; viseramus = victuri fueramus. (See 597, r. 2.)

4. In general relative expressions, such as quisquis, no matter who, quotquot, no matter how many, and all forms in -cumque, -ever, the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent: quisquis est, no matter who he is, be, may be; quaecumque est, whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.

Quidquid id est, timeb Danæs et dōna ferentem, V., A., ii. 49; whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.
Subjunctive Mood.

255. The Subjunctive Mood represents the Predicate as an idea, as something merely conceived in the mind.

Remark.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs may, can, must, might, could, would, should. When these verbs have their full signification of possibility and power, obligation and necessity, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs, thus: may, can, might, could by the forms of posse, to be able, host, it is left free; will and would by velle, to will, to be willing; must, by debēō or oportet (of moral obligation), by necesse est (of absolute obligation).

256. 1. The realization of the idea may be in suspense, or it may be beyond control. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

2. The idea may be a view, or a wish. In the first case the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the imperative, for which it is often used.

Potential Subjunctive.

257. 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion based on the character of the action. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the Indicative, non.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The proof of the action is in suspense, and so future; the action itself may be present or future: with Perfect sometimes past.

Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicas, you would say; crédas, you would believe, you must believe; dixit aliquis, some one may undertake to say; dixit aliquis, some one may go so far as to say, may prove to have said.

Casī discipūlōs minīmē velim, QUINT., I. 3, 18; I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.
258. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Vellēm, I should have wished; nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred (it is too late).
Crēderēs victōs, L., ii. 43, 9; you would, might, have thought them beaten.
Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret, L., xxxiv. 9, 4; any one who saw it then must have been astonished.

259. The Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

Quīs dubitēt (= nēmō dubitet) quīn in virtūte divitiae sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48; who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue? (No one.)
Quīs tulerit Grāchoā de sēdiōne querentēs? Juv., ii. 24; who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion? (No one.)

Optative Subjunctive.

260. The Subjunctive is used as an Optative or wishing mood. The negative is nē.

The Pr. and Pf. Subjv. are used when the decision is in suspense, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Impf. and Plupf. are used when the decision is adverse. The Pf. is rare and old.
Sēt hāec urbs, C., Mil., 34, 93; may this city continue to stand!
Its dī faxint (= facerint), Pl., Poen., 911; the gods grant it!
Nē istiōne Iūpiter optimus màximus sńrit (= sńverit)! L., xxxiv. 24, 2; may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!

261. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes utinam, would that; utinam nē, utinam nōn, would that . . . not. Ó si, oh if, is poetical and very rare; ut is mainly archaic.

Valeōs boneque ut tībi sit, Pl., Poen., 912; farewell! God bless you!
Utinam reviviscat frāter! Gell., x. 6, 2; would that my brother would come to life again!

Illud utinam nē vēris sorberem, C., Fam., v. 17, 3; would that what I am writing were not true!

Utinam suscepīs nōn essem, C., Att., iii. 11, 8; would I had not been born!
OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

O mihi præteritis referat si Iuppiter annōs, V., A., viii. 560; O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!

Remark.—For the wish with adverse decision, vellem and mūllem (theoretically also nūllem) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially vellem) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

Vellēm adesse posset Panætius! C., Tusc., i. 33, 81; would that Panætius could be present!

Vellēm mē ad cōnām invitātūsē, C., Fam., xiii. 4, 1; would that you had invited me to your dinner-party.

So velim, nūlim, etc., for the simple wish (548, n. 2).

Tuam mihi dāri velim éloquentiam, C., N.D., ii. 59, 147; I could wish your eloquence given to me.

262. The Optative Subjunctive is used in asseverations:

Ita vivam ut máximōs sūmptūs faciō, C., Att., v. 15, 2; as I live (literally, so may I live as), I am making very great outlay.

Moriar, si magis gauðerēm si id mihi accidisset, C., Att., viii. 6, 3; may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to me.

263. The Subjunctive is used as an Imperative:

1. In the First Person Plural Present, which has no Imperative form:

Amēmus patriam, C., Sest., 68, 143; let us love our country.

Nē difficilia optēmus, C., Verr., iv. 7, 15; let us not desire what is hard to do.

2. In the Second Person.

(a) In the Present chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary "you":

Lōtō bonō utēre, dum asēt, cum asēt, nē requīrēs, C., Cat. M., io, 33; you must enjoy that blessing so long as 'tis here, when it is gone you must not pine for it.

(b) In the Perfect negatively:

Nē trānsierís Hībārum, L., xxii. 44, 6; do not cross the Ebro.

Nē vēs mortem timuerītis, C., Tusc., i. 41, 98; have no fear of death!

3. In the Third Person Present (regularly):

Suum quisque nōscat ingenium, C., Off., i. 31, 114; let each one know his own mind.

Dōnīs impīl nē plāsēre audeant deōs, C., Leg., ii. 16, 41; let the wicked not dare to try to appease the gods with gifts.
264. The Subjunctive is used as a Concessive:

Sit plus, C., Verr., v. i, 4; (granted that) he be a thief.
Fuerit malus cives, C., Verr., i. 14, 37; (suppose) that he was a bad citizen.

For other examples with ut and nē, see 608.

265. The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (coniunctivus deliberatīvus).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person:

Utrum superbiae prius commemorem an orādēlitātem, C., Verr., i. 47, 122; shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty?
Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē défenderent an obviām frent hostibus, Nep., i. 4, 4; there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nōs défendēmus an obviam sāmus?)

Imperative Mood.

266. The Imperative is the mood of the will. Its tone varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

Abi in malam rem, Pl., Capt., 877; go to the mischief.
Compēscō mentem, H., O., i. 16, 22; curb your temper.
Dē mihi hōc, mēl meum! Pl., Trin., 244; give me this, honey dear!

267. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

Remark.—Some verbs have only the second form: so sēctō, know thou; mementō, remember thou; habētō, in the sense of know, remember.

268. i. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: Patent portae; proficiscere, C., Cat., i. 5, 10; open stand the gates; depart.
General: Istitiam oole et pietātem, C., Rep., vi. 16, 16; cultivate justice and piety.
2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like; likewise in familiar language.

Consulès nēmini pārentō, C., Leg., iii. 3, 8; the consul shall obey no one.

Percontātōrem fugītō, nam garrulus idem est, H., Ep., i. 18, 69; avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.

(269) 270. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—i. The regular negative of the Imperative is nē (nēve, neu), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepellītō nēve ēritis, C., Leg., ii. 23, 58; one shall not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.

Tū nē cōde māles, sed contra audentior ēritis, V., A., vi. 95; yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.

REMARKS.—1. Nōn may be used to negative a single word:

Opus poliat īma, nōn exterat, Cf. Quint., x. 4, 4; let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.

2. Instead of nē with the First Imperative was employed either nōlī with the Infinitive (271, 2); or occasionally nē with the Pr. Subjv. (263, 2, b). The Pr. Subjv. with nē is the Ideal Second Person; see 263, 2, a.

271. PERIPHRASES.—1. For the Positive Imperative may be used cūrā (cūrātō) ut, take care that; fac (facitō) ut, cause that; fac (facitō), do, with the Subjunctive.

Cūrā ut quam primum (303) veniās, C., Fam., iv. 10, 1; manage to come as soon as possible.

Fac cōgitās, C., Fam., xi. 3, 4; do reflect!

2. For the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive) nōlī, be unwilling, with Infinitive is the rule:

Cavē and cavē (cavētō) nē, beware lest, and also fac nē, do not, with the Subjunctive are also found.

Nōlī verberāre lapidem, Pl., Curc., i97; don't beat a stone.

Cavē fusiās, C., Fam. xvi. 12, 6; do not be in a hurry.

Fac nē quid aliud cūrās hoc tempore, C., Fam., xvi. 11, 1; see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.
272. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

(a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
(b) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (249).
(c) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).

2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:

(a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with nē (263, 2, a).
(b) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with nē (263, 2).
(c) The Second Person of the Future, with nēn (249).
(d) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with nē (263, 3).

REMARK.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on the continuance of the action; the Pl., when stress is laid on the completion. Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

Dōtem darēs; quaseret alium virum, Ter., Ph., 297; you should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.
Nē popōcinēs librōs, C., Att., ii. 1, 3; you ought not to have asked for the books.

273. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

Nōn taceās! Pl., Am., 700; won't you hold your tongue?
Quin tū taceās! Pl., Men., 561: why don't you hold your tongue?

(274) 275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.

Positive.

SECOND PERSON.

audi, hear thou,

audiō (legal or contingent),

audiēs (ideal 2nd Person chiefly),

audiēs (familiar),

NEGATIVE.

nē audiēre, hear not.

nē auditōs (occasional).

nē audītō (legal).

nē audītē (ideal 2nd Pers. chiefly).

nē audītēs (familiar).

nē audi (poetic).

THIRD PERSON.

audiat, let him hear.

audiōtō (legal),

nē audiāt, let him not hear.

nē audītē (legal).
Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

276. The Indicative.—The tenses of the Indicative alone express with uniform directness the period of time.

277. The Subjunctive.—1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with continued action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with completed action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the attainment.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive have a Future force because the Future alone can tell whether the action is realized. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat, he may believe (now or hereafter).
Crēdiderit, let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter).

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, R. 3); otherwise the tenses of the Subjunctive represent corresponding tenses of the Indicative according to the law of sequence (509).

278. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

279. The Infinitive has two uses:

1. Its use as a Substantive.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

280. The Infinitive as a Substantive.—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)

1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with continued action.
TENSES OF THE MOODS.

(a) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 422, 424.)

Quibusdam tōtum hoc displicet philosophāri, C., Fin., i. i. 1; to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.

(b) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (often called Auxiliary Verbs, see 423.)

Cato servire quam pāgnāre māvult, C., Att., vii. 15, 2; Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).

2. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with completed action, and is also used to express attainment.

(a) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendīsse decōrum est, Ov., M., ix. 5; 'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.

(b) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active in prose, except after velle, to wish.

Nōminem notā strēnul aut ignāvi mīlitis notāsse volūī, L., xxiv. 16, 11; I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.

In the poets it is not uncommon, perhaps for metrical reasons; but it occurs usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, volūī, etc., potūī, débueram (dēbui).

Prātēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposuisset Olympō, H., O., iii. 4, 52; the brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus for good and all.

(c) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired. See 537.

Patriam extinctam cupīt, C., Fin., iv. 24, 66; he desires his country blotted out.

Here the Infinitive esse is seldom expressed.

281. The Infinitive as the representative of the Indicative.—As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.
1. The Present Infinitive represents contemporaneous action—hence: the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

Dixō eum venire, I say that he is coming.
Dixībam eum venire, I said that he was coming.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents prior action—hence: the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

Dixō eum vēnissee, I say that he came, has come, used to come.
Dixī eum vēnissee, I said that he had come, used to come, did come.

Remark.—Memini, I remember, when used of personal experience, commonly takes the Present.

Tum mē rēgem appellārī & vōbis memini, nunc tyrannum vocārī videō, L., xxxiv. 31, 18; I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.

When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience.

Mē memini irātum dominæ turbāsē capillōs, Ov., A.A., II. 169; I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.

3. The Future Infinitive represents subsequent action:

Dixō eum ventūrum [esse], I say that he will come.
Dixī eum ventūrum [esse], I said that he would come.

282. The Present Participle active denotes continuance; the Perfect passive, completion or attainment. See 665.

Remark.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present, as ratus, thinking; veritus, fearing; gāvisus, rejoicing, etc.

283. The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations; such as, Time, Cause, Condition, and Concession; especially Purpose after a verb of Motion. See 670.
SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

284. The sentence may be expanded by the multiplication or by the qualification, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

A.

1. Multiplication of the Subject.

Concord.

285. Number.—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number:

Pater et mater mortui sunt, Ter., Eun., 518; father and mother are dead.

Exceptions.—I. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: "My flesh and my heart faileth," Psa., LXXIII. 26.

Aetæs et foris et super omnia Romānum nōmen tē ferōdiōrem facit, L., XXXI. 18, 3; your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettle some.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb: "When distress and anguish cometh upon you," Prov., I. 27.

Religio et fidēs antepōnētur amicitiae, C., Off., III. 10, 48; let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.

So any close union: "Your gold and silver is cankered," Jas., v. 3.

Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit, C., Fam., v. 8, 2; the senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives).

286. Gender.—When the genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in things without life, the neuter.

(a) The strongest:

Pater et mater mortui sunt, Ter., Eun., 518; father and mother are dead.

Mūrus et porta dē caelo tācta erant, L., XXXII. 29, 1; wall and gate had been struck by lightning.

(b) The nearest:

Convicta est Messālīna et Silius, Cf. Tac., Ann., xii. 65; Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.
2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.
   (a) Both as persons:
   *Rex regiaque clasis profecti sunt, L., xxii. 50, 11; the king and the
   king's fleet set out.*
   (b) Both as things:
   *Natura inimica sunt libera civitates et rex, Cf. L., xliii. 24, 2; a free
   state and a king are enemies by nature.*

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, r. 4).
   *Stultitiam et intemperantium dicimus esse fugienda, C., Fin., iii. 11, 39; folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided.*

287. Persons.—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:
   *Si tab et Tullia, lrix nostra, valitatis, ego et suavisissmus Cicer6 valitatis, C., Fam., xiv. 5, 1; if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicer6 and I are well.*

Remarks.—(a) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.
   *Et ego et Cicer6 meus flagitabit, C., Att., iv. 18, 5; my Cicer6 will demand it and (so will) I.*
   (b) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: *Ego et uxore meae, Wife and I.*

2. Qualification of the Subject.

288. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character. The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: *amilus certus, a sure friend.*

Remark.—The equivalents of the adjective are:
   1. The pronouns *his, this, ille, that, etc.*
   2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade:* *servus homi, a slave person; homi senex, an old fellow; mulier andilla, a servant-wench.*
   3. The Genitive of quality (380).
   4. The Ablative of quality (400).
   5. Preposition and case: *excessus et vitae, departure from life.*
   6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles: *ruci facts, good actions.*
   7. Relative clauses (624).

II. The substantive in apposition: *Cicer6 orator, Cicero the orator.*
I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

Concord.

289. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Vir sapientēs, a wise man,</em></td>
<td><em>virī sapientēs, wise men.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mulier pulchrā, a beautiful woman,</em></td>
<td><em>mulierēs pulchrāe, beautiful women.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rēgium dōnum, royal gift,</em></td>
<td><em>rēgia dōna, royal gifts.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Vir sapientēs, of a wise man.</em></td>
<td><em>bone fili! good son!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mulier pulchrāe, for a beautiful woman.</em></td>
<td><em>rēgiō dōna, by royal gift.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Virum sapientem, wise man.</em></td>
<td><em>mulierēs pulchrāe, beautiful women.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

290. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest; rarely with the most important.

*Volusōnus, vir et oōnsilī māgnī et virtūtīs, Caes., B. G., iii. 5, 2; Volusōnus, a man of great wisdom and valor.*

*Cūncta marīa terrāque pātēbant, S., C., 10, 1; all seas and lands lay open.*

Remarks.—1. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive.

*Semprōniae multae facētīae, multusque lepōs inerat, S., C., 25, 5; Semprōnia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk.*

2. When a substantive is construed with several similar adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position:

*Quārta et Mārtia legiōnēs, C., Fām., xi. 19, 1, but Legiō Mārtia quārtaque, C., Ph., v. 17, 46, The fourth and Martian legions.*

291. Position of the Attribute.—1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it.

1. *Fugītīvus servus, a runaway slave* (one complex).

2. *Servus fugītīvus, a slave* (that is) *a runaway* (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulae, such as

* civīs Rōmānus, Roman citizen; populus Rōmānus, people of Rome.*

Compare *body politic, heir apparent* in English.
NUMERALS.

Remarks.—1. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus res bona, good things; bona res, articles of value, or good circumstances; res urbane, city matters; urbane res, witticisms; mensa secunda, a second table; secunda mensa, dessert.

2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: summa alta, the surface of the water; summa mensa, the top of the mountain; vero primo, primo vero, in the beginning of spring. Similarly in mediet urbe, in the midst of the city; reliquae, cetera Graecia, the rest of Greece, and the like.

2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

Divitiae, nomen, opes vacuae censiliü de decessis plaeae sunt, C., Rep., r. 34, 51; riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonor.

For examples of the other positions see 290.

Numerals.

292. Duo means simply two, ambo, both (two considered together), uterque, either (two considered apart, as, “They crucified two other with him, on either side one,” JOHN, xix. 18):

Supplicatio amborum nominem et triumphant utrique decretus est, L., xxviii. 9, 9; a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed.

Remark.—Uterque is seldom Pl., except of sets; so with pluralia tantum.

Caesar a castris utriusque opiiem suas adduxit, Caes., B. G., 1. 50, 1; Caesar led his forces out of either camp.

On uterque with the Pl., see 211, r. 1; with Gen., see 371, r.

293. Milia, a thousand, is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive: milia militae, rather than milia miltum, a thousand soldiers; in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive: duo milia militum, two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers. If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number; see the following examples:
Comparatives and Superlatives.

294. Ordinals.—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English; thus always in dates: annō ducentē-
mīliō quārtō, in the year 204. Sometimes they are carelessly used for the cardinals:

Quattuor annī sunt, ex quō tē nōn vīdī,
It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).
Quārtus annus est, ex quō tē nōn vīdī,
It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).

295. Distributives.—The distributives are used wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

Bis hīna quot sunt? C., N. D., ii. 18, 49; how many are twice two?
Scriptum eōrum cum quīnque pedibus, pullīs gallīnācōs trīs cum ternīs
pedibus nātūs esse, L., xxxii. 1, 11; a letter was written to say that a
colt had been foaled with five feet, (and) three chickens hatched with
three feet (apiece).

Comparatives and Superlatives.

296. Comparative.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with quam, than, or in the Ablative:

Ignorātiō futūrōrum malōrum sīillior est quam scientiā, C., Div., ii. 9,
23; ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).
Nīhil est virtūte amābilior, C., Lael., 8, 28; nothing is more lovable
than virtue.

Remarks.—1. (a) The Abl. is used only when the word with quam
would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

Caesar minor est \{ quam Pompeius, \}
\{ Pompeiō, \}
Caesar is younger than Pompey.

Caesarem plūs amāmus, \{ quam Pompeium, \}
\{ Pompeiō, \}
we love Caesar more than Pompey.

In the second example the adverb makes the Ablative construction
ambiguous, for plūs Pompeiō may mean "more than Pompey does."
Hence the comparative adverb with the Abl. is avoided in careful prose.
(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., quam is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

Ānulis nostris plūs quam animis créditur, Sen., Ben., III. 15, 3; our seals are (217) more trusted than our souls.

2. The Abl. is very common in negative sentences and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Polybiuṁ sequāmur, quō nāmō fuit diligentior, C., Rep., II. 14, 27; let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful.

3. Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (408).

4. Quam is often omitted after plūs, amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction:

Plūs quingentās colaphōs infrēgit mīhī, Ter., Ad., I. 99; he has dealt me more than five hundred boxes on the ear.

Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, Caes., B.C., I. 38, 5; the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.

But the normal construction is not excluded:

Palās nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā, Caes., B.G., VII. 19, 1; a swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).

5. Age may be variously stated; thus, more than thirty years old may be:

1. Nātus plūs (quam) trigintā annōs.
2. Nātus plūs trigintā annis (rare).
3. Māior (quam) trigintā annōs nātus.
4. Māior trigintā annis (nātus).
5. Māior trigintā annōrum.

297. Standard of Comparison omitted.—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre, Cf. C., Verr., III. 33, 76; the kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].

2. By the proper standard:

Senectūs est nātūrā loquācior, C., Cat. M., 16, 55; old age is by nature rather (or too) talkative.

3. By the opposite:

Quiēsce erit melius, L., III. 48, 3; it will be better to be-perfectly quiet (than to make a disturbance).
298. Disproportion.—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam prō, than for, and the Ablative; or with quam ut, than that or quam qui, than who, and the Subjunctive:

Minor caesēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit, L., x. 14, 21; the loss was (too) small for so great a victory.

Quis nōn intellegit Canachi signa rigidiōre esse quam ut imitentur vēritātem? C., Br., 18, 70; who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth (of nature)?

Māior sum quam cul possit Fortūna nocēre, Ov., M., vi. 195; I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.

299. Two Qualities compared.—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either magis and quam with the positive, or a double comparative:

Color tūns disertus magis est quam sapīens, C., Att., x. 1, 4; your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.

Acūtiōrem sē quam ērnātiōrem vult, C., Opt. Gen., 2, 6; he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.

300. Restriction to the Comparative.—The Latin uses the Comparative more exactly than the English. So regularly when only two objects are compared.

Nātā māior, the eldest (of two), the elder; nātā minor, the youngest, the younger. Prior, the first; posterior, the last.

Posteriōres cōgitātiōnēs, ut sīunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse, C., Ph., xii. 2, 5; afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.

Remark.—The same rule applies to the interrogative uter, which of two? (whether?): Ex duōbus uter dignior? ex pluribus, quis dignissimus? Quint., vii. 4, 21; of two, which is the worthier? of more (than two), which is the worthiest?

301. Comparative Strengthened. The comparative is often strengthened by the insertion of etiam, even; adhuc, still; multō, (by) much; longē, far:

Diē etiam clārius, C., Verr., iii. 75, 175; speak even more clearly!

302. Superlative.—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Māximus, Quintus Fabius the Great.

Māximō imperāns mālōre fortūnā, L., xxviii. 36, 2; with great vigor, with greater luck.
303. Superlative Strengthened.—The superlative is strengthened by multō, (by) much; longē, by far; vel, even; unus, unus omnium, one above all others.

Prōtagoras sophistēs ills temporibus vel máximnus, C., N.D., i. 23, 63; Protagoras, the very greatest sophist in those times.

Urbem tūnam mihi amicissimam dēcelmāvi, C., Planc., 41, 97; I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.

Quam (with or without a form of possum) and the superlative is the regular form for as—as possible.

Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit, Caes., B.G., v. 49, 7; Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.

PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns.

304. 1. The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb; see 207.

2. The Genitive forms, mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are used mainly as Objective Genitives.

Mārcellinus sē locārim assum tui dēfensōrem fore ostendit, C., Fam., i. 1, 2; Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender.

REMARK.—The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive: Vester oculospectus reficit et recreat mentem meam, C., Planc., i, 2; the sight of you refreshes and renews my spirits.

"If I be a master, where is my fear?" Mal., i. 6.

3. The Genitive forms, nostrum and vestrum, are used partitively; see 364, R.

Tū ad mē venire ueterque nostrum cupit, C., Att., xiii. 33, 2; each of us two desires that you should come to me.

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

305. Hic, this (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and may mean:

1. The Speaker himself: hic homō = ego, Pl., Trin., 1115.
2. His friends: at ego hic nōvī, if I know these men (= my friends, the Gentlemen of the Jury).
3. His subject: hic sapiēns de quō loquor, C., Ac., ii. 33, 105; this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking.
4. His hobby: hic studium, this pursuit of mine, of ours.
5. That which has just been mentioned: hæc hēcēnus, these things thus far = so much for that.
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: *his conditionibus, on the following terms.*

7. The current period of time: *hie diēs, to-day; haec nox, the night just past or just coming; hie mēnsis, the current month.*

306. *Iste, that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

*Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, C., Cat., i. 7, 16; at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

307. *Ille, that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker, and is often used in contrast to hic, this.*

*Catulus nōn antiquō illō mōre sed hōc nostrō ērudītus, C., Br., 35, 132; Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time (illō) but by the standard of to-day (hōc).*

*Ille may mean:*

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often ille quidem): *illud quod initiō vōbis prōposul, C., Font., 7, 17; that which I propounded to you at first.*

2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive): *tēstula illa, that (notorious) potsherds = institution of ostracism; illud Solōnis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled: *illud imprīmitis mirābile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected:

*Ilia diēs veniet mea quā lægubria pōnam, Ov., Tr., iv. 2, 73; the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.*

*Remarks.—1. Hic and ille are used together in contrasts: as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

(a) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: *hic, the former; ille, the former.*

*Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adulōsentiam reddit, Cels., i. 1; laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.*

(b) When the former is the more important, *hie is the former, ille, the latter:*

*Melior tumultūque est certa pāx quam spērāta victūria; haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū est, L., xxx. 30, 19; better and safer is certain peace than hoped for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.*
2. Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, *this man and (or) that man = one or two.*
Nōn dicam hoc signum ablatum esse et illud; hic dieō, nūllum tē signum reliquīsse, C., Verr., i. 20, 58; *I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.*
3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille: hic, *here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); huc, kither (where I am); iste, there (where you are); ille, there (where he is), etc.*

3. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

308. *Is, that,* is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative:

*Mibi vēnit obviam tuus puer; is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit, C., Att., ii. 1, 1; I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.*

Is minimō egit mortālis qui minimum cupit, Syrus, 286 (Fr.); *that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

Remarks.—1. *Is,* as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

*Bis dat qui dat celeriter, Syrus, 235 (Fr.); he gives twice who gives in a trice.*

Often it has the force of *tālis* (631, r) in this connection:

Ego *is sum qui nihil umquam meō potius quam meōrum civium causē facerim, C., Fam., v. 21, 2; I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.*

2. *Is,* with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he or that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: *et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that too; neque is, et is nōn, and he not; and that not; sed is, but he.*

Exempla quaeirimus et ea nōn antiqua, C., Verr., iii. 90, 210; *we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.*

3. *Is* does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of.* In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Nōn itidēs discipulōrum dōcere dēbet magister sed discipulī magistrī, Quint., ii. 2, 13; *the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils; but the pupils according to that of the master.*

Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere, C., Tusc., i. 19, 48; *there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.*
PRONOUNS.

Coelius tribunal suum iuxtâ Trebonî sellam collectavit, Caes., B.C., III. 20, 1; Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Trebonius.

Of course hic, ille, and iste can be used with the Gen. in their proper sense.

309. Reflexive. Instead of forms of is, the Reflexive Pronoun sui, sibi, sê, together with the Possessive of the Reflexive suus, sua, suum is used. (See 521.)

1. Regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject of the sentence.

ipse sê quisque diliget quod sibi quisque cœrns est, C., Lael., 21, 80; every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

Contentum suis rébus esse máximae sunt divitiæ, C., Par., VI. 3, 51; to be content with one's own things (what one hath) is the greatest riches.

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep himself unspotted from the world." James, I. 27.

2. Frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (521, R. 2):

œculatûr tigrîm suæ cœtös, Sen., E.M., 85, 41; her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper).

This is especially common with suus, which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense: own, peculiar, proper.

3. Sui, sibi, sê are the reflexive of the Infinitive and its equivalents.

Römânî sui colligendi hostibus facultatem non relinquunt, Caes., B.G., III. 6, 1; the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to get themselves together, to rally.

Sê is also used with prepositions ergâ, inter, propter, per in reflexive or emphatic phrases; as inter sê, among one another, per sê, by itself.

4. Suus is also used in prepositional phrases, especially after cum and inter; more rarely after in, intra, and ad.

Mâgönum cum clâse suâ in Hispâniâm mittunt, L., xxiii. 32, 11; they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain.

So the phrases suâ tempore, at the right time; suâ locâ, at the right place.

Omoediae quem tâsum in puérîs putem suâ locâ dicam, Quint., I. 8, 7; what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.
310. **Idem, the same**, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing; it is often to be translated by *at the same time*; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.

Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.

Difficilis facilis, incurvus acerbus, *es idem*, Mart., xii. 47, 1; crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.

**Remarks.**—1. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by *idemque, et idem, atque idem*.

Vir doctissimus Plato atque idem gravissimus philosophorum omnium, C., Leg., ii. 6, 14; Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.

2. *The same as* is expressed by *idem* with *quī*, with *atque* or *sc*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative. See 359, n. 6, 642, 643.

Tibi mecum in eodem est stipinō vivendum, C., Or., ii. 33, 144; you have to live in the same treadmill with me.

3. *Idem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

311. 1. **Ipse, self**, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

Ipse feci, *I my self did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it*. Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.

Valvae subitōse ipse aperuērant, C., Div., i. 34, 74; the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.

Catō mortuus est annis octōginta sex ipse ante Cicerōnum œnsulem, C., Br., 15, 61; Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.

**Remarks.**—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of persons in opposition to things; riders in opposition to horses; inhabitants in opposition to the towns which they inhabit; the master of the house in opposition to his household, etc.

Ipse dixit, C., N.D., i. 5, 10; the master said (*aērum ipse*).

Mē ipse misit, Pl., Cas., 790; mistress sent me.

2. *Et ipse, likewise, as well*, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

Locrī urbs dēsciverat et ipse ad Poenōs, L., xxix. 6, 1; Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.
PRONOUNS.

2. **Ipsē** is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

   *Sē ipsē laudat, he (and not another) praises himself. Sē ipsum laudat, he praises himself (and not another).*

   *Piger ipsē sibī obstat, Prov. (Sen., E.M., 94, 28); the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

Exceptions are common:

   *Quīque alīus cāvit, nōn cavit ipsē sibī, Ov., A.A., i. 84; and he who cared for others, cares not for himself.*

4. Possessive Pronouns.

312. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

   *Manūs lavē et cēnā, C., Or., ii. 60, 246; wash (your) hands and dine.*

   *Praedīa mea tī possidēs, ego alīnā misericordiā vivō, C., Rosc. Am., 50, 145; you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

**Remarks.**—1. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness: sum esse, to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.*

   *Tempore tuō pāgnāstī, L., xxxvii. 45, 10; you have fought at your own time (= when you wished).*

   *Hōc honōre mē adsēctīs annō mēū, C., Leg. Agr., ii. 2, 4; you visited me with this honor in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul).*

2. On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

5. Indefinite Pronouns.

313. **Quidam** means *one, a, a certain one;* the speaker may know but he does not tell. In the Plural, **quidam** means *some, sundry,* without emphasis.

   *Interēs mulīer qu Cardam commigrāvīt hāc, Ter., And., 69; meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here.*

**Remarks.**—1. With an adjective **quidam** often heightens by adding vagueness and mystery. (Gr. *τίς.*)

   *Est quidam incrēdibilis rōbore animī, C., Mil., 37, 101; really he is endowed with a certain (strange, indescribable) strength of mind that is past belief.*
2. Quidam is often used with or without quasi, as if, to modify an expression:

Est quaedam virtutem vitiorumque victoria, Quint., ii. 12, 4; there is a certain neighborhood relation between virtues and vices.

314. Aliquis (aliqui) means, some one, some one or other; neither the speaker nor the hearer knows:

Deciambam omn aliquis sopticidit, C., Br., 90, 310; I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Litotēs, 700): sum aliquis, aliqual, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight; opposed to: nōllus sum, nihil sum, I am nobody, nothing.

Est hōc aliqual, tametā nōn est satis, C., Div. in Caec., 15, 47; this is something, although it is not enough.

315. Quis (qui), fainter than aliquis, is used chiefly after si, if; nisi, unless; nē, lest; num, whether, and in relative sentences. See 107, r.

Nē quid nimis! Ter., And., 61; nothing in excess!

Remark.—Aliquis is used after si, etc., when there is stress: si quis, if any; si aliquis, if some; si quid, if anything; si quidquām, if anything at all (317, 1).

Si aliqual dandum est voluptāti, senectūs modois convivīs dēlectārī potest, C., Cato M., 14, 44; if something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.

316. Quispiam is rarer than aliquis, but not to be distinguished from it, except that quispiam never intimates importance.

Dixerit quispiam, C., Cat. M., 3, 8; some one may say.

317. i. Quisquām and ullus (adjective) mean any one (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in questions that imply a negative answer, and in sweeping conditions:

Iustitia numquam nocet culquam, C., Fin., 1, 16, 50; justice never hurts anybody.

Quis Graecorum rhētorum & Thucyōdide quidquām dāxit? C., Or., 9, 317; what Greek rhetorician drew anything from Thucydides? [None.]

Si quisquām, ille sāpiēns fuit, C., Lael., 2, 9; if any one at all (was) wise, he was.

Hostem esse in Syriā negant ullum, C., Fam., iii. 8, 10; they say that there is not any enemy in Syria.
So after comparatives, for these involve a negative:

Sōlis candor infirrior est quam tūllus ignis, C., N.D., ii. 15, 40; the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.

2. The negative of quīsquam is nēmō, nobody; nihil, nothing (108). The negative of tūllus is nūllus, no, none.

Nēmō vir māgnus, C., N.D., ii. 66, 167; no great man, no one (who is) a great man.

Remark.—Instead of nēminis and nēmine, nūllus and nūlī, nūlē are used regularly.

318. i. Quisque means each one, as opposed to omnis, every, and is usually post-positive.

Laudātī omnes sunt dōnātique prō merītō quīsque, L., xxxviii. 23; all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.

2. With superlatives and ordinals quīsque is loosely translated every:

Optimum quidquē rārissīnum est, C., Fin., ii. 25, 81; every good thing is rare = the better a thing, the rarer it is.

Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cōnsētur, C., Verr., ii. 56, 139; every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.

3. Quisque combines readily with the reflexives, sui, sibi, se, suus, in their emphatic sense (309, 2).

Here the reflexive regularly precedes.

Sua quemque fruēs et suōs terror vexat, C., Rōsc. Am., 24, 67; it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man.

Remark.—Suum suīque has become a standing phrase: let every one have his own.

319. Alter and alius are both translated other, another, but alter refers to one of two, alius to diversity.

Sōlius aut cum alterō, alone or with (only) one other; alter Nero, a second Nero.

Alter alterum quaerit, one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person); alius alium quaerit, one seeks one, another another.

Alteri—alteri, one party—another party (already defined); alī—alī, some—others.

Alter often means neighbor, brother, fellow-man; alius, third person.

Alter:

Āgesilaüs fuit claudus alterō pede, Nep., xvii. 8, 1; Agesilaüs was lame of one foot.

Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā, Pl., Aud., 195; in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread.
Alius:
Fallacìa aliæ aliæm trüdít, Térb., And., 779; one lie treads on the heels of another (indefinite series).
Divitiae aliæ præÆ?: non, aliæ honores, C., Laél., 6, 20; some prefer riches, others honors.

Alter and alius:
Ab aliœ expectās alteri quod feceris, Syrus, 2 (Fr.) ; you may look for from another what you've done unto your other (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

APPPOSITION.

320. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:
Cicerò urátor, Cicero the orator. Rhenus flúmen, the river Rhine.

CONCORD.

321. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number:
Nom. Häródotus pater historiæ, Herodotus, the father of history; Gen. Häródoti patris historiæ; Dat. Häródoti patris historiæ.
Cnidus et Colophon, nóbilissimæ urbēs, captæ sunt, Cf. C., Imp., 12, 33; Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken.
Omnium doctrinārūm inventrīs Athenæae, Cf. C., Or., 1, 4, 13; Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning.

Remarks.—1. Exceptions in number are due to special uses, as, for example, when délicias or amóres, etc., are used of a Singular:
Pompélius, nostri amóres, ipse se amíxit, C., Att., 11, 19, 2; Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself.
2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition:
Urbs meā unius operā fuit salva, Cf. C., Pís., 3, 6; the city was saved by my exertions alone.
3. On the agreement of predicate with appositive, see 211, 6, 6.

322. Partitive Apposition.—Partitive Apposition takes a part out of the whole.
Cétera multitūdō sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium læcti sunt, L., II. 59, 11; (of) the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.

323. Distributive Apposition.—Distributive Apposition subdivides the whole into its parts, chiefly with alter—alter,
the one—the other; quisque, ueterque, each one; alii—alii, pars—pars, some—others. (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, Caes., B.G., 1. 53, 4; (of) two daughters, the one was killed the other captured.

Remark.—The Part. Gen. is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

324. Apposition in Sentence.—Sometimes an Accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence.

Admineor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dioendum existimem, rem non difficilēm, C., Tus., 1. 43, 102; I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.

Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

325. Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

Nominaive: Filius nescītus redit.
Ordinary Attribution: The sick son returned.
Predicative Attribution: The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.

Hercules iuvenis leōnem interficit.
Ordinary Apposition: The young man Hercules slew a lion.
Predicative Apposition: Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.

Genitive: Potestas sūs adhibendae uxoris, the permission to take her to wife.

Dative: Amico vivō nōn subjēnisti, you did not help your friend (while he was) alive.

Accusative: Herculeō cervam vivam cēpit.
Ordinary Attribution: Hercules caught a living doe.
Predicative Attribution: Hercules caught a doe alive.

Ablative: Aere úntur importātō, they use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.

Remarks.—1. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

Quō, moriēre, ruis! V., A., x. 810; “whither dost thou rush to die” (thou doomed to die)?
Notice here the old phrase: Macte virtūte estō, H., S., i. 2, 31; increased be thou in virtue = heaven speed thee in thy high career.
2. Victorēs rediērunt may mean, the conquerors returned, or, they returned conquerors; idem, the same, is similarly used.

Idem absunt qui vēnerant, C., Fin., iv. 3, 7; they go away just as they had come (literally, the same persons as they had come).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive:

Défendi rem pūblicam adulēscentēs, nōn dēseram senex, C., Ph., ii. 46, 118; I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age.

So with prepositions:

Ante Cicērōnem cōnsulem, before the consulship of Cicero; ante urbem conditam, before the building of the city.

4. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" (= as if) of comparison—ut, quasi, tamquam, sicut, velut (602, 642).

(5) 6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: so in adjectives of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally:

Libēns, with pleasure; volēns, willing(ly); nōlēns, unwilling(ly); invitūs, against one's will; prūdēns, aware; imprūdēns, unaware; scīēns, knowing(ly); prīmus, prior, first; ultimus, last; medius, in, about the middle; hodiēns, to-day; mātūtinus, in the morning; frequēns, frequent(ly); sublimis, aloft; tōtus, wholly; sōlūs, ānus, alone; and many others.

Ego cum ā mē invitāssimus dīmisī, C., Fam., xiii. 63, 1; I dismissed him most unwillingly.

Plus hodie boni fēci imprūdēns quam scīēns ante hunc diem umquam, Ter., Hec., 880; I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before.

Adcurrit, medium mullerem complectitur, Ter., And., 133; he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.

Vespertinus pete tēctum, H., Ep., i. 6, 20; seek thy dwelling at eventide.

Sōlī hōc contingit sapientī, C., Par., v. 1, 34; this good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of prīmus, and the adverbs prīmus, first, for the first time, and primō, at first. Prīmus means first in a series; primō, first in a contrast.

Prīmus sententiam dixit, C., Ph., x. 3, 6; he was the first to express his opinion.

Samothrāsidam tē prīnum, post Thasum contulisti, C., Pis., 36, 89; you betook yourself to Samothrace first, afterwards to Thasos.

Improbōrum facta prīmo sūspiciō insequitur, tum accusātor, C., Fin., i. 16, 50; the deeds of the reprobate are attacked at first by suspicion, then by the public prosecutor.
B.

1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

326. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

2. Qualification of the Predicate.

327. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object.
   1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute which may be in the form of
   1. The Genitive Case. 3. Preposition with a case.
   2. The Ablative. 4. An Adverb.

I. External Change.

Accusative.

328. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

1. (a) The object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected):

Deus mundum creavit, God made a creation—the universe.

(b) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent:

A reōtē conscientē traversum unguem non oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4; one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.

Decem annōs (Trōia) oppūgnāta est, L., v. 4, 11; ten years was Troy besieged.

Māximam partem lacte vivunt, Caes., B.G., iv. 1, 8; for the most part they live on milk.

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected):

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.
DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

(329) 330. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Cf. C., Div., i. 17, 30; Romulus founded the City of Rome. (Object Effected.)
Mēns regit corpus, C., Rep., vi. 24, 26; mind governs body. (Object Affected.)

Remark.—Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as: dolère, to grieve (for); déspérère, to despair (of); horrère, to shudder (at); mirāri, to wonder (at); ridère, to laugh (at).
Honōrē désespérant, C., Cat., ii. 9, 19; they despair of honors (give them up in despair).
Cōnsi dēs mēns rēctī Fāmæ mendācia rīsit, Ov., F., iv. 311; conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.

331. Verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trāns, when they become transitive, take the Accusative:
All with circum, per, praeter, trāns, and subter.
Many with ad, in, and super.
Some with ante, con, inter, ob, and sub. See 347.

Pythagorēs Persārum magōs addit, C., Fin., v. 29, 87; Pythagoras applied (consulted) the Persian magi.
Stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem, C., N.D., ii. 20, 53; the star Venus goes in advance of the sun.

Omnēs Domitium circumvāsint, Caes., B.C., i. 20, 5; all surround Domitius.

Eam, si opus esse vidēshūr, ipse conveniān, C., Fam., v. 11, 2; I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient.
Convivia cum patre nōn inibāt, C., Rosc. Am., 18, 52; he would not go to banquet with his father.

Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patrās interfluit, L., xxvii. 29, 9; the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae.
Alexander tertīo et trīcemī anno mōtem obiit, C., Ph., v. 17, 48; Alexander died in his thirty-third year.
Caesar omnem agrum Picio num percurrit, Caes., B.C., i. 15, 1; Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.

Populus solet dignō praeterire, C., Planc., 3, 8; the people is wont to pass by the worthy.

Epaminōndas poemam subjīt, Cf. Nep., xv. 8, 2; Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.
Crinum vim subterfugere nullō modo poterat, C., Verr., i. 3, 8; he could in no way evade the force of the charges.

Români ruinas mūri supervisabant, L.; xxxii. 24, 5; the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.

Crassus Euphrātem nullā bellō causa transit, Cf. C., Fin., iii. 22, 75; Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.

Remarks.—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives: Equitum māgnam partem flūmen trāscit, Caes., B.C., i. 55, 1; he threw a great part of the cavalry across the river.

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated; but never circum: Čōpiās trāscit Rhodanum, or trans Rhodanum, he threw his troops across the Rhone.

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition; so, adire ad aliquem, to go to a man; adire aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.

**INNER OBJECT.**

Re. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

332. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

Xenophon eadem fere pecosat, C., N.D., i. 12, 31; Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides:

Discipulis id tūnum moneō, Quint., ii. 9, 1; I give pupils this one piece of advice.

Remarks.—1. The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English it after intrans. verbs, “to walk it, to foot it,” etc., where “it” represents the substantive that lies in “walk, foot,” etc.

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative quid, which has almost the force of our. Quid ridēs? what (laughter) are you laughing = what means your laughter? Why do you laugh?

2. Cognate Accusative.—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute.

Mirum atque inscillum somniāvi somnium, Pl., Rud., 597; a marvelous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.
REMARK.—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phraseological usages, such as rem certare, to fight a case; foedus ferte, to make a treaty (compare, to strike a bargain); its respondere, to render an opinion; causam vincere, to win a case, etc. Also the phrases with ire: exsequias ire, to attend a funeral; infitiis ire, to deny, etc.

Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

334. The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, multum, plus, tantum, quantum, etc.

Si me amis tantum quantum protegés amís, C., Att., ii. 20, 5; if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.

REMARKS.—1. The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

2. Here belong the adverbial Accusatives magnam, etc., partem, to a great extent, in great part; perhaps meam, etc., vicem, on my side, in my turn, in my stead.

335. The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of per, through.

Trabea, distantiss inter se binas pedes, in solo colocabantur, Caesar, B. G., vii. 23, 1; beams two feet apart are planted in the ground.

Phoebeidas iter per Thébás fecit, Nep., xvi. 1, 2; Phoebeidas marched through Thebes.

Militae aggerem latum pedes trecentos triginta altum pedes octoginta exstruxerunt, Caesar, B. G., vii. 24, 1; the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.

REMARKS.—1. The adjectives in most common use with this Accusative are longus, long, látus, wide, altus, deep, high.

2. With abesse and distare, an Abl. of Measure may also be used:

Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse, Caesar, B. G., i. 41, 5; to be twenty-four miles from.

Noteworthy also is ab (§) : ab milibus passuum duabus, Caesar, B. G., ii. 7, 3; two miles off.
336. The Accusative of Extent in Time, with or without per, answers the question, How long?

Duodéquadraginté annós tyrannus Syræsàndrum fuit Dionysius, C., Tusc., v. 20, 57; thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse.

Lādi per decem diēs facti sunt, C., Cat., iii. 8, 20; games were performed for ten days.

Sedet aeternumque sedēbit infelix Théseus, V., A., vi. 617; there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus.

Remarks.—1. In giving definite numbers with iam, iam diē, iam dūdum, etc., the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (403).

Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vicesimum rēgnat, C., Imp., 3, 7; Mithridates has been (230) reigning now going on twenty-three years.

2. Per with the Acc. is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.

So especially with the negative:

Nulla rēs per triennium iūdīcēsta est, C., Verr., i. 5, 13; no matter was decided during (in) three years.

3. The Dating Point may be given by abhinc, ago, which usually precedes the Accusative.

Dēmosthenēs abhinc annós propē trecentōs fuit, C., Div., ii. 57, 118; Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago.

4. Nātus, old (born), may also take Accusative of Extent. For other constructions see 296, r. 5.

Puer decem annōs nātus est, the boy is ten years old.

5. Here belong the colloquial phrases id temporis, at that time, id ætātis, at that age.

Accusative of the Local Object.

Terminal Accusative.

337. Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also rūs, into the country, domum, domōs, home.

Missī lēgāti Athēnēs sunt, I., iii. 31, 8; envoys were sent to Athens.

Latōna cōnspicit Dēlum, Cf. C., Verr., i. 18, 48; Latona took refuge in Delos.

Ego rūs ibō atque ibi manēbo, Ter., Eun., 216; I shall go to the country and stay there.

Innumerable philosophi numquam domum revertērunt, C., Tusc., v. 37, 107; innumerable philosophers never returned home.
REMARKS.—1. Countries and large Islands require prepositions, such as: in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward; in Graeciam proficisces, to set out for Greece.

2. When urbem, city, or oppidum, town, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if urbem or oppidum follows, in or ad may be omitted: in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.

When urbem or oppidum is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition:

Iugurtha Thalam pervénit in oppidum magnum et opulentum, S., Jug., 75, 1; Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.

3. Domum, with a possessive pronoun, or Gen., may mean house as well as home, and accordingly may or may not have in before it: domum meam, or, in domum meam, to my house; domum Pompéii, or, in domum Pompéii, to Pompey’s house; also domum ad Pompéium. Otherwise: in magnificam domum venire, to come into a grand house.

4. Ad means to the neighborhood of, often before, of military operations: ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).

5. The simple Acc. will suffice even for extent:

Omnia illa muniénta, quae sunt & Víbó Brundisium, C., Planc., 41, 97; all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.

6. Motion to a place embraces all the places mentioned:

Phalara in sinum Málacum proficisces, L., xxxv., 43, 8; he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliaç Gulf. Tarentum in Itália Inferiórem proficisces, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.

7. The poets and later prose writers occasionally omit the preposition also before Countries and large Islands.

OUTER OBJECT.

Accusative of Respect.

338. The Accusative of the object affected is sometimes used with a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective. It is called the Accusative of Respect, sometimes the Greek Accusative.

1. Definite: The Accusative of the part affected (chiefly poetic).

Percussa novē mentem formidine, V., G., iv. 357; her mind stricken (stricken in her mind) with a new dread.

Saécus pector, Quint., ix. 3, 17; “breast-wounded.”

2. Indefinite: cætera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plerque, omnès; in other respects, in all respects, in most respects.

Cætera adscenior Crassus, C., Or., i. 9, 35; in all other points I agree with Crassus.

Omnia Mercurii similis, V., A., iv. 558; in all respects like unto Mercury.
DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

339. Active verbs signifying to Ask, Demand, Teach, and Conceal take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

Pāsānem quendam Sōratēs interrogat quaedam gōmētricas, C., Tusc., i. 24, 57; Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.
Caesar ādēnu frūmentum fāgēbat, Caes., B.G., i. 16, 1; Caesar kept demanding corn from the Aedui.
Quid nunc tā, asine, litterās doceam? C., Pīs., 30, 73; why should (365) I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?
Nōn tā cēlēri sērmōnem Ampiū, C., Fam., ii. 16, 3; I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Amphius.

REMARKS.—1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way, Pōsoē, I claim, and fāgēti, And always pētō, pōstulā,
For it is also right to say, Dōcēre and cēlāre dē, cē; Interrogāre dē quō rē.
Take aliquid ab aliquid, While quaerō takes ex, ab, dē, quō.

Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs miserat, qui senātum docērent dē caede frātris, S., Jug., i3, 3; Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.
Aquam à pumice nunc pōstulā, Pl., Pers., 41; you are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).

2. With dōcē the Abl. of the Instrument is also used; dōcēre fidibus, equō, to teach the lyre, to teach riding; with ērudīre, the Abl., or Abl. with in. The Participles dōctus and ērūdītus generally take the Abl.: dōctus Graecās litterāt, a good Grecian.

3. With the Passive cēlāri, we find either: aliquid mē cēlāitur, something is being concealed from me; or, cēlor dē aliquid rē, I am kept in the dark about something.

4. The Passive of dōcēre is usually dīscere, to learn.

340. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

Īram bene Ennius initium dīxit ināniae, C., Tusc., iv. 23, 52; well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.
Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit, L., i. 32, 1; the people made Ancus Marcius king.
Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam, Cf. Nēp., xxiv. 1, 2; Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.
ACCUSATIVE.

Athēniēnsibus Pythia praecipit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātorem sūmerent, Nep., i. i, 3; the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.

Praeśtā tē sum quī mihi es cōgnitus, C., Fam., i. 6, 2; show yourself the man that I know you to be.

Remarks.—1. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). Reddō, I render, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, fīō, I become.

Habēō, with two Accusatives, commonly means to have; in the sense of hold, regard, other turns are used; usually prō.

Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filīā? Pl., Pers., 341; do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter?

Similarly habēre servōrum locūtum, (in) numerō deōrum, to regard as slaves, as gods.

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the end or purpose is indicated by the Dat. or ad with Accusative.

Rōmulus trecentō armātōs ad cūstōdiām corporis habuit, L., i. 15, 8; Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard.

ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

(341—2) 343. 1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations:

Mē miserum, C., Fam., xiv. i, 1; poor me!
Mē cæcum quī hæc ante nōn viderim, C., Att., x. 10, 1; blind me! not to have seen all this before.

So in Exclamatory Questions:

Quō mihi fortūnam, si nōn concōditur tīt! H., Ep., i. 5, 12; what (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?

The Interjections heu, alas! ó, oh! prō, for, are sometimes used.

Heu mē miserum! Ter., Ph., 187; Alas! poor me!
ó miserēs hominum mentēs, ó pectora cæca, Lūcr., ii. 14; oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!
prō deum fidēm, C., Tusc., v. 16, 48; for heaven's sake!
So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

Remark.—Ecco, behold! takes only the Nom. in classical Latin; so usually ūn, lo!

2. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used:

(a) In Exclamations. (See 534.)
(b) As an Object. (See 527.)
(c) As a Subject. (See 535.)
DATIVE.

344. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be expressed in the Accusative case or contained in the verb itself.

Tibi exercitum patria pró sē dedit, C., Ph., xiii. 6, 14; your country gave you an army for its own defence.

Nemō errat uni sibi, Sen., E.M., 94, 54; no one errs (makes mistakes) to (for) himself alone.

Dative with Transitive Verbs.

345. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation to, for, from.

This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged.

Active Form:

To: Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, recta cōnsilia aegrōtis damus, Ter., And., 309; readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.

For: Frangam tōnsōri orbā mānasque simul, Mart., xi. 58, 10; I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.

From: Somnum mihi adēsīt, C., Att., ii. 16, 1; it took my sleep away from me.

Passive Form:

To: Merōvem mihi glōria dēsitur, Ov., F., iii. 389; let glory be given to me as a reward.

For: Immemēris franguntur orbā caballīs, Juv., x. 60; the innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.

From: Arma adimuntur militibus, L., xxii. 44, 6; the soldiers have their arms taken from them.

Remarks.—1. The Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like (Dative of Separation), is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation from is merely approximate, instead of for. When the Person is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

Is frāter, qui ēripuit frātrem carōcē, nōn potuit ēripere fātō, Sen., Dial., xi. 14, 4; the brother who wrested his brother from prison could not wrest him from fate.

2. Observe that to when motion is involved is ad or in: litterās ad aliquem dare, to indite a letter to some one; for (in defence of) is pró: pró patriē mort, to die for one's country.
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

346. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

Crassus pudor non obsuit eius orationi, C., Or., I. 26, 122; Orassus’s modesty was not a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory.

Ipsa sibi imbecillitates indulget, C., Tusc., IV. 18, 42; weakness gives free course to itself.

Probus invidet nāmini, C., Tim., 3, 9; your upright man cherishes envy to no one.

Catilina litterās mittit sæ fortūnāe cādere, S., C., 34, 2; Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune.

Diēs stultitias quoque medendi solut, C., Fam., VII. 28, 3; time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools.

Moderātī animō, est nōn mediocris ingenii, C., Q.F., I. 11, 13, 38; to put bounds to one’s temper is the work of (shows) no mean ability.

Sic agam, ut auctōr hāmin disciplīnae placet, C., Fin., I. 9, 29; I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought).

Mundus deā pāret et hūs obedientia maris terraeque, C., Leg., III. 1, 3; the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.

Virtūtis suōrum satis crēdit, Cf. S., Iug., 106, 3; he puts full confidence in the valor of his men.

Remarks.—1. Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (308):

Quī invidēnt, egent, illīs quībus invidētur, I rem habent, Pl., Truc., 745; those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.

2. Observe the difference where either Accusative or Dative may be employed; so especially with verbs of Fearing, as: metuere aliquem, to dread some one, but metuere aliqui, to fear for some one; cāvere aliqui, to take precautions for some one, but cāvere aliquem (also dē, ab aliquo), to take precautions against some one; cōnsulere aliquem, to consult a person, but cōnsulere aliqui, to consult for a person.

Noteworthy are the constructions of invidēre and vacēre:

Invidēre aliquī (in) aliquī rē, to begrudge a man a thing.

aliqui, aliquid,

aliquius aliquī rē vel, to envy something belonging to a man.

Vacēre rē, to be at leisure for, to attend to

rē, & rē, to be at leisure from

a matter.

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning:

Comitōr aliquem, I accompany a man; comitōr aliquī, I act as companion to a man; praestōlor aliquī (better) or aliquem, I wait for.
3. Some words with meaning like to the above take the Acc.; the
most notable are: *aequâre, to be equal; deóre (to distinguish), to be
becoming; dâficere, to be wanting; dëlectâre, to please; iuvâre, to be a
help; inbâre, to order; laedere, to injure; and vetâre, to forbid. *Aequâre
and dâficere have also the Dative.

Eam pictûram imitâtī sunt multi, aquâvit nâmâ, Plin., N.H., xxxv.
ii, 126; that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.

Fûrma virûs neglecta deoct, Ov., A.A., i. 509; a careless beauty is
becoming to men.

Ms dies dâficat, Cf. C., Verr., ii. 21, 52; the day would fail me.

Fortês fortûna adiuvat, Ter., Ph., 203; fortune favors the brave.

Dative with Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

347. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, (post), prae, sub, and *super, take the
Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

Plîbès eîncta comîtis adfuit, C., Planc., 8, 21; the entire commonly
was present at the election.

Omnis sênsus hominum multō antecellit sênsibus bêstiarum, C., N.D.,
ii. 57, 145; every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts.

Ennius equi fortis senectûti comparat suam, C., Cat.M., 5, 14; Ennius
compares his (old age) to the old age of a gallant steed.

Imminent duo régæ tôti Asiae, C., Imp., 5, 12; two kings are menaces
to all Asia.

Interes cônsiliis, C., Att., xiv. 22, 2; you are in their councils, are
privy to their plans.

Fîger ipse sibi obstat, Sen., E.M., 94, 28; the lazy man stands in his
own way.

Omnibus Druidibus præceet ûnus, Caes., B.G., vi. 13, 8; at the head
of all the Druids is one man.

Anatum ûva gallinis saepe supponimus, C., N.D., ii. 48, 124; we often
put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).

Neque dëssere neque superesse ref pûblïcae volô, C. (Pollïo), Fam.,
x. 33, 5; no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the
state's—that is my motto.

Remarks.—1. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs
are used in a figurative sense. In a local sense the preposition is
usually employed, except in poetry and later prose.

So incumbere in gladium, C., Inv., ii. 51, 154, to fall upon one's sword.

(3, 8, 4) 5. Some trans. verbs compounded with *âs and ex (rarely
with *ab) sometimes take the Dative of Separation; see 345, r. 1.
Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

Praedam militibus dōmat, Caes., B. G., vii. 11, 9; he presents the booty to the soldiers. But Rubrium corōna dōnāti, C., Verr., iii. 80, 185; thou didst present Rubrius with a crown.

Nātūra corpus animāe circumdedit, Sen., E. N., 92, 13; Nature has put a body around the mind. But Deus animum circumdedit corpore, Cf. C., Tim., 6, 20; God has surrounded the mind with a body.

Dative of Possessor.

349. Esse, to be, with the Dative, is commonly translated by the verb to have:

Contrōversia mihi fuit cum avunculo tūū, C., Fin., iii. 2, 6; I had a debate with your uncle.

An nescis longēs rēgibus esse manūs? Óv., Her., xvi. 166; or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?

Remarks.—1. The predicate of esse, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner: Caesar amicus est mihi, Caesar is a friend to me (amicus mens, my friend, friend of mine).

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. With the Dat. the Possession is emphatic; with the Gen. the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other:

Latīni concēdunt Rōmam caput Latīō esse, Cf. L., viii. 4, 5; the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in Rome. (Latīō: that Latium's capital is Rome).

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by esse with in and the Abl., by inesse with Dat. or with in, or by some other turn:

Fuit mirificus in Crassō pudor, C., Or., 1. 26, 122; Crassus had a marvellous modesty.

Cimōn habēbat satis eloquentiae, Nep., v. 2, 1; Cimon had eloquence enough.

4. Abesse and dōesse, to be wanting, to fail, take also the Dat. of Possessor.

5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases nōmen est, cōg-
nōmen est, etc. Here the name is regularly in the Nom. in apposition to nōmen; occasionally in the Dative.

Fōns aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arēthūsa est, C., Verr., iv. 53, 118; a fountain of sweet water named Arēthusa.

Nōmen Arēthūsa est mihi, Pl., Rud., 5; my name is Arēthurus.
Dative of Personal Interest.

350. The Dative is used of the person in whose honor, or interest, or advantage, an action takes place, or the reverse (*Dativus Commodi et In commodi*):

Cōnsurrēxisse omnēs Lysandrō dicuntur, C., Cat. M., 18, 63; all are said to have risen up together in honor of Lysander.

Deō nostra altāria fumant, V., Ec., i. 43; our altars smoke in honor of the god.

Ethical Dative.

351. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Dativus Æthicus*).

Ecce tibi Sēbōnus! C., All., ii. 15; here’s your Sebōnus!

Tū mihi istius audāciam defendas! C., Verr., iii. 91, 213; do you defend me (to my face) that fellow’s audacity?

“She’s a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer.”—Shakes., Merry Wives, ii. 2, 201.

Dative of Reference.

352. This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Dativus Iūdicantis*).

Ut mihi deōnsis, sē tibi māgnīcis, Tac., H., xii. 37; to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendor.

Quintia fōrmōsa est multīs, Cat., 86, 1; Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.

353. Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles.

Vērō aestimānti, L., xxxvii. 58, 8; to one whose judgment was true.

Hōc est oppidum primum Thessalīae venientibus ab Æpīrō, Caes., B.C., iii. 80; this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus.

Dative of the Agent.

354. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result.

Mihi rēs tōta prōvīsa est, C., Verr., iv. 42, 91; I have had the whole matter provided for.

Cul nōm sunt audītæ Dēmosthenēs vigiliæ! C., Tusc., iv. 19, 44; to whom are not Demosthenes’ long watchings a familiar hearsay?
355. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

Despéranda tibi salute concordia sorti, Juv., vi. 231; you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.

Remark.—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with ab (§) is employed:

Civilibus & vobis consulendum, C., Imp., 2, 6; the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.

Dative of the Object For Which.

356. Certain Verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

Nāmini meus adventus labōri aut sūmpulit fuit, C., Verr., l. 6, 16; to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense.

Habēre quaeśtul rem pūblicam turpe est, C., Off., ii. 22, 77; it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.

Dative with Derivative Substantives.

357. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives:

Institia est obtemperātiō lægibus, C., Leg., l. 15, 42; justice is obedience to the laws.

Local Dative.

358. The Dative is used in poetry to denote the place whither.

It caelō olāmorque virum clangorque tubārum, V., A., xi. 192; mounts to high Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.

Dative with Adjectives.

359. Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative:

Canis similis lupō est, C., N.D., l. 35, 97; the dog is like unto the wolf.

Castris idōneus locus, Caes., B.G., vi. 10, 2; a place suitable for a camp.

Utile est rei pūblicae nōbilēs hominēs esse dignōs mālōribus suīs, C., Sest., 9, 21; it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors.
Vir mihi amissimus, Fabricius, C., Sest., 35, 75; my very great friend, Fabricius.

Omni acætæi morte est communis, Cf. C., Cat. M., 19, 68; death is common to every time of life.

Proximus sum ego et omnis mihi, Ter., And., 636; myself am nearest to me.

Tæsis id dicit quod illi caussa maximâ est aliânum, C., Caec., 9, 24; the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantive, and as such are construed with the Genitive: amicus, friend; aequalis, contemporary; cognatus, kinsman; communis, common; contrarius, opposite; par, match; proprius, peculiar, own, peculiar; similis, like (“we ne’er shall look upon his like again”).

Ille, cuius paucis partes hæc civitatis tuit, C., Pis., 4, 8; (he was) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Acc. with in, erga, adversus:

Manlius fuit severus inütium, C., Off., III. 51, 112; Manlius was severe toward his son.

Mē esse scit sese erga benivolum, Pl., Capt., 350; he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Acc. with ad, to:

Homē ad nullam rem utiliss, C., Off., III. 6, 29; a good-for-nothing fellow.

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

II. Internal Change.

Genitive.

360. 1. The Genitive Case is the case that fills out or completes the meaning of the word with which it is construed. It may be defined as the Case of the Complement (compleō, I fill out).

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:

(a) The Possessive case: domus rēgis, the king’s palace.

(b) The Objective case with of: domus rēgis, the palace of the king.

(c) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition: arbor abietis, fir-tree.

REMARKS.—1. Other prepositions than of are not unfrequently used:

Patriciae quis exsil sa quoque filig? H., O., II. 16, 19; what exile from his country ever fled himself as well?

Belœrum triumphi spem collegae reliquit, L., xxxiii. 37, 10; he left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague.
2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute:

Vernī temporis suāvitās, C., Cat. M., 19, 70; the sweet spring-time.
Fontium gelidae perennitās, C., N. D., ii. 39, 98; cool springs that never fail.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with of:
Ante Rōmam conditam, before the founding of Rome. (325, r. 3.)
Notice also his metus, this fear = fear of this, and kindred expressions.

2. The Genitive is employed:
I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.
III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIves.
Adnominal Genitive.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

361. The Genitive is sometimes used by way of Apposition or Explanation, thus:

1. Appositional Genitive.—Genitive after such words as, vox, expression; nomen, name, noun; verbum, word, verb; res, thing, etc.
   Nōmen amicitiae, C., Fin., ii. 24, 78; the name friendship.

2. Explanatory (Epezegetic) Genitive.—Genitive after such words as genus, class; vitium, vice; culpa, fault, etc.
   Virtūtēs continentiae, gravitātis, iustitiae, fidelis, C., Mur., io, 28; the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.

Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

362. The Person to whom a thing belongs is put in the Genitive. This is called the Possessive Genitive and is often parallel with the adjective.

   Domus régis = domus régis, the palace of the king, the king’s palace = the royal palace; domus sūs, his house.

Remarks.—1. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns: amīcus meus, a friend of mine; gladius tūns, a sword of thine. But when omnium is added, vestrum and nostrum are used (364 r.). Sometimes the adjective form is preferred: canis alīmus, a strange dog, another man’s dog; filius erīlus, master’s son.
2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. *Statua Myrōnis*, Myron’s statue, may mean: 1. A statue which Myron owns; 2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily supplied, so especially *aedem* or *templum*, after *ad*, and less often after other prepositions: *pecūnia utinam ad Opis manēret*, C., *Ph.*, i. 7, 17; would that the money were still at Ops’s (temple).

**Active and Passive Genitive.**

**363.** When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (*nōmen actionis*), the possession may be active or passive. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive: *amor Dei*, the love of God, the love which God feels (God loves); *patriae beneficia*, the benefits of (conferred by) one’s country.

2. Passive or Objective Genitive: *amor Dei*, love of God, love toward God (God is loved).

**Remarks.**—1. The English form in of is used either actively or passively: the love of women. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than of are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as for, toward, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin:

*Voluntās Servilli ergā Caesarēm*, Cf. C., *Q.F.*, iii. 1. 6, 26; the goodwill of Servilius toward Caesar.

*Odium in bonōs inveterātum*, C., *Vat.*, 3, 6; deep-seated hate toward the conservatives.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive:


**364.** The Subjective Genitive, like the Possessive, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used.

*Amor meus, my love (the love which I feel).* *Dēsiderium tuum, your longing (the longing which you feel).*

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (331, r. 2):

*Hādrī hanc urbem meōs sūnis operā salvām esse*, C., *Pis.*, 3, 6; I swore that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone.
REMARK.—Nostrum and vestrum are used as Partitive Genitives.
MAGNAE pars nostrum, a great part of us; uterque vestrum, either (both) of you.
Nostrī melior pars means the better part of our being, our better part.
With omnium, the forms nostrum and vestrum must be used (363, n. 1).

Genitive of Quality.

365. The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

VIR magnae auctūritātis, Caes., B. G., v. 35, 6; a man of great influence.
Homō nihil (=nullius pretīs), Pl., B., 1188; a fellow of no account.
Triādī via, Caes., B. G., i. 38, 1; a three days’ journey.

REMARK.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)

Genitive as a Predicate.

366. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

Hīus versus Planti nōn est, his est, C., Fam., ix. 16, 4; this verse is not by Plantus, this is.
Virtūs tantārum virtūrum est ut sē ipsa tueatūr, C., Tusc., v. 1, 2; virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector.

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations:

Hūius erō vivus, mortuus hūius erō, Prop., ii. 15, 35; hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be.
Dannatūs est iūdicium, poena lēgis, C., Sull., 22, 63; condemning is the judges’ (business), punishment the law’s.
Panperīs est numerāre pecūs, Ov., M., xiii. 823; ’tis only the poor man that counts his flock (’tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).
Observe this Genitive with facere, to make (cause to be).
Rōmānāe dicōnis facere, L., xxii. 60, 3; to bring under the Roman sway.

2. Stultitiae est, it is the part of folly may be used, as well as stultī est, it is the part of a fool. So, too, stultum est, it is foolish. But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.
Some combinations become phraseological, as: omenstudinis, mores est, it is the custom.

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine"): meum est, it is my property, business, way.

Non est mentiri meum, Ter., Heaut., 549; lying is not my (nature).

His tantis in rebus est tuum videre, quid agatur, C., Mur., 38, 88; in this important crisis it is your (business) to see what is to be done.

Partitive Genitive.

367. The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs.

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

Maximus vini numerus fuit, permagnum pondus argentii, C., Ph., II. 27, 66; there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver.

Campanorum clam excedere acti iubet, L., x. 29, 2; he orders a squad-ron of Campanians to leave the line.

Remark.—Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

Medimnus tritici, a medimnus of wheat, may be a medimnus of wheat (Genitive Generis) or a medimnus of wheat (Partitive).

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with the neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

tantum, so much, quantum, as (how much), allquantum, somewhat,
multum, much, plus, more, pluRimum, most,
paulum, little, minus, less, minimum, least,
satis, enough, parum, too little, nihil, nothing,
hoc, this, id, illud, istud, that, idem, the same,
quod and quid, which and what? with their compounds.

Is locus ad omni turbæ id temporis (336, n. 5) vacuus erat, C., Fin., v. 1, 1; that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd.

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, S., C., 5, 4; enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.

Remarks.—1. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen.; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted: alicum beneum, or boni,
something good; aliquid memorabile, something memorable; aliquid bona et memorabilia, something good and memorable (better aliquid bonum et memorabile).

2. A familiar phrase is: Nihil reliqui facere. 1. To leave nothing (not a thing). 2. (Occasionally), to leave nothing undone.

370. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both general and special.

Special:

Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.

(Centum militae, a, the hundred soldiers.)

Quintus regum, the fifth (of the) king(s).

(Quintus rex, the fifth king.)

General:

Muti militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers

(Multi militae, many soldiers.)

Remarks.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:

Multi civium adsunt, many citizens are present. Multi civis adsunt, many are the citizens present.

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin:

Nos trecenti coniuravimus, L., ii. 12, 15; three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.

Qui omnes, all of whom. Quot estis? how many are (there of) you? So always quot, tot, totidem.

3. On mille and milia, see 293. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, r. 2.

371. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

If militum, those (of the) soldiers. If militae, those soldiers.

Illi Graecorum, those (of the) Greeks.

Fidenatium quae superstunt, ad urbem Fidenas tendunt, L., iv. 33, 10; the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.

Remarks.—1. Uterque, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque consul, either consul = both consuls; as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used: uterque hōrum, both of these; but uterque ille dux, both of those leaders.

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 372, r. 2.
372. The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:

Prior bōrum in proelī cecidit, Nep., xxi. 1, 2; the former of these fell in an engagement.
Indus est omnium flūminum maximus, C., N.D., II. 52, 180; the Indus is the greatest of all streams.

Remarks.—(1) 2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with ex, out of, dā, from, or the Acc. with inter, among, apud: Gallus próvocat finum ex Rōmānis, the Gaul challenges one of the Romans; finus dā multīs, one of the many (the masses); Croesus inter rōgās opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings.

With finus, ex or dā is the more common construction, except that when finus is first in a series, the Gen. is common.
3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, r. 2.
4. The Partitive Genitive with positives belongs especially to poetry.
Sequinur tā, sæc. deōrum, V., A., iv. 576; we follow thee, holy deity.
5. The use of neuter adjectives as substantivatives with the Genitive is also mainly poetical.
Ardua dum metuunt, ἐκμιστὰν νέαν νῖκον (29, r. 3), Lucre., i. 660; the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.
So amāra cūrārum, H., O., iv. 12, 19; bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strāta viārum, V., A., i. 422 = strātae vīae, the paved streets.
6. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent, as: ubi terrārum, gentium! where in the world? Observe also its colloquial uses with hūc, eō, as hūc, eō arrogantis proceessit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantivatives.

373. Causā, grātiā, ergō, and instar are construed with the Genitive.

Sophistae quaestūs causā philosophābantur, C., Ac., ii. 23, 72; the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.
Amīris magis quam honōris grātiā, Enn., F., 287 (m.); more for love’s (sake) than for honor’s sake.
Instar montis equus, V., A., ii. 15; a horse the bigness of a mountain.
II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

374. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Participation, of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.

Plenus rimarum, Tert., Eun., 105; full of chinks ("a leaky vessel").
Particeps omnium, C., Sull., 4, 13; a sharer in the plan.
Mentis compae, C., Ph., II. 38, 97; in possession of (one's) mind.
Multarum rerum peritus, C., Font., 11, 25; versed in many things.
Cupidus pecuniae, Cf. C., Verr., I. 3, 8; grasping after money.
Omnium rerum insanus, C., Br., 85, 292; a universal ignoramus.
Sitque memor nostri necene, refere mehi, Ov., Tr., IV. 3, 10; bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us or no.
Omnis immemorem beneficis odatunt, C., Off., II. 18, 63; all hate a man who has no memory for kindness.
Bastiae sunt rationalis et ursalis expertias, C., Off., I. 16, 50; beasts are devoid of reason and speech (lack discourse of reason).
Omnis plena consiliorum, inania verborum videmus, C., Or., I. 9, 87; we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence.
Gallia frugum fertilis fuit, L., v. 34, 2; Gaul was productive of grain.

Remark.—The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with animi and ingenii. Aeger animi, L., I. 58, 9; sick at heart, heart-sick. Audax ingenii, Stat., S., III. 2, 64; daring of disposition. The Pl. is animis.

Genitive with Verbs.

375. Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature; and so occasionally do verbs in -ax in poetry and later prose.

Epaminondas erat adeo veritatis diligens ut ne loque quidem mentiretur, Ner., xv. 3, 1; Epaminondas was so careful (such a lover) of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.

Omnium omnium capax imperit nisi imperasset, Tac., H., I. 49; by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

376. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

Te veteris amicitiae communis fecit, [C.] ad Her., IV. 24, 88; he reminded you of your old friendship.
Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus, Mart., II. 59; a god himself bids you remember death.

Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, oblivisci suōrum, C., Tusc., III. 30, 73; the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with dū and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numeral adjective.

Oro ut Terentiam moneatis dē testamentō, C., Att., XI. 16, 5; I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.

Discipulōs id annum moneō, Quint., II. 9, 1; I give pupils this one (833, 1) piece of advice.

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things:

Haece tūm meminisse invēbit, V., A., I. 203; to remember these things will one day give us pleasure.

Obliviscī nihil solōs niās inlūriās, C., Leg., XII. 12, 35; you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.

Recūdor (literally = I bring to heart, to mind) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing; dū is found with Persons.

Et vōcēm Anchīsae mágnum volúntaque recōder, V., A., VIII. 156; and I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.

Memini, I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember, takes the Accusative:

Antipatrum tū probē meministī, C., Or., III. 50, 194; you remember Antipater very well.

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

377. Misereor, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, and pertaesum est take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing.*

Misērsminī sociōrum, C., Verr., I. 28, 72; pity your allies!

Suae quæcumque fortūnae paenītēt, C., Fam., VI. 1, 1; each man is discontented with his lot.

Mī non sōlum piget stultitiae mēae, sed etiam pudet, C., Dom., XI. 29; I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it.

Remarks.—1. Pudet is also used with the Gen. of the Person:

Pudet deōrum hominumque, L., III. 19, 7; it is a shame in the sight of gods and men.

* misereor, I pity; miseret, it moves to pity; paenitet, it repents; piget, it irks; pudet, it makes ashamed; taedet and pertaesum est, it tires.
(3) 8. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf. (422) and quod (542).

Nōn mā vīxīssē paenitēt, C., Cat. M., 23, 84; I am not sorry for having lived.

Quintum paenitēt quod animum tuum offensit, Cf. C., Att., xi. 13, 2; Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.

Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

378. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.

Mǐtiadēs accusātus est prōdītīonis, Nep., 1. 7, 5; Mǐtiades was accused of treason.

Fannius Verrem insimulat avāritiae, C., Verr., 1. 49, 128; Fannius charges Verres with avarice.

Vīdo nōn tē absūlūtum esse improbitātis sed illūs damnātūs esse caedīs, C., Verr., 1. 28, 72; I see not that you are acquitted of dishonor, but that they are convicted of murder.

Remarks.—1. For the Gen. of the Chargé may be substituted (a) nōmine or crīmine with the Gen., or (b) the Abl. with dē: nōmine (crīmine) conīrātīonis damnāre, to find guilty of conspiracy; accusāre dē vīl, of violence; dē venēficiō, of poisoning; dē rébus repetundās, of extortion.

2. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge; the definite Finē is put in the Ablative; the indefinite Finē, quantī, duplī, quadruplī, etc., is in the Genitive.

Accusāre capitās, or capitē, to bring a capital charge; damnāre capitās, or capitē, to condemn to death; damnārī decem mīlibus, to be fined ten thousand.

Multāre, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative: Multāre pecūnīā, to mulct in (of) money.

Mǎnius virtūtem fīlī morte multāvīt, Quint., v. 11, 7; Mǎnius punished the valor of his son with death.

Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

379. Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: aessimāre, existimāre, to value; putāre, to reckon; diœcre, to take; habēre, to hold; pendere, to weigh; facere, to make, put; esse, to be (worth); fīeri, to be considered.

Verbs of Buying are: emere, to buy; vendere, to sell; vēnīre, to be for sale; stāre and cōnstrāre, to cost, to come to; prūstāre, locāre, to be exposed, left (for sale); condūcere, to hire; locāre, to let.
380. i. Verbs of Rating take:

Māgni, much, plūris, more, plūrimi, māximi, most,
Parvi, little, minūris, less, minimi, least,
Tanti, tantidem, so quanti (and compounds), nihil, naught.

Dum nō ob malefacta, peream; parvi existamō, Pl., Capt., 682; so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die; little do I care.
Voluptàtem virtūs minimi facit, C., Fin., II. 13, 42; virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses.
Judicès rem públicam flocc non faciunt, Cf. C., Att., IV. 15, 4; the judges do not care a fig for the State.

Remarks.—1. Tanti is often used in the sense of operaæ pretium est = it is worth while.

Est nihil tantù huius invidiæ tempestātem subīre, C., Cat., II. 7, 15; it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

2. Aestimō is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So aestimāre māgni and māgnō, to value highly.

2. Verbs of Buying take tanti, quanti, plūris, and minūris. The rest are put in the Ablative.

Vēndō meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cēteri, fortasse etiam minūris, C., Off., III. 12, 51; I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.

Émit Canius hortōs tantū quantis Pythius voluit, C., Off., III. 14, 59; Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

Émit! perit hercle: quanti!—Viginti minias, Ter., Eun., 984; he bought her? I'm undone; for how much?—Twenty minae.

Quantī oénās! What do you give for your dinner?
Quantī habitās! What is the rent of your lodgings?
But:

Parvō famās o osobat, māgnō fāstimium, Sen., E.M., 17, 4; hunger costs little, daintiness much.

Remark. — Bene emere, to buy cheap; bene vēndere, to sell dear; male emere, to buy dear; male vēndere, to sell cheap. So, too, other adverbs: melius, optimō, pēius, pessimō.

Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

381. i. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Interest omnium rēctōs facere, C., Fin., II. 22, 72; it is to the interest of all to do right.

Rēfert compositōnīs quae quibus antepōnās, Quint., IX. 4, 44; it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.
2. Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

Meā interest, meā rēfert, I am concerned.

382. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbal Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

Id meā minūmē rēfert, Terr., Ad., 381; that makes no difference at all to me.
Theodōri nihil interest, C., Tusc., i. 43, 102; It is no concern of Theodorus.
Magnō interest meā unā nōs esse, C., Att., xiii. 4; it is of great importance to me that we be together.

Occasional Uses.

383. The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fuzziness, but the Ablative is the rule:

Piso multōs cōdiosem implēvit rērum rērum, C., Verr., i. 46, 119; Piso filled many books full of those things.
Virtūs plārmæ commentātiōnis et exercitātiōnis indiget, Cf. C., Fin., iii. 15, 50; virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice.

ABLATIVE.

384. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?
In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.
A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.
B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:
C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:
To these we add:
1. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

Ablātivus Locālis.

385. The Ablative answers the question Where? and takes as a rule the preposition in.

In portū nāvīgō, Ter., And., 480; I am sailing in harbor.
Pōns in Hībērō, propē effectus erat, Caes., B.C., 1. 62, 3; the bridge over the Ebro was nearly finished.
Histrīō in scaenā est, Pl., Poen., 20; the actor is on the stage.
Haeret in equō senex, Cf. C., Dei., 10, 28; the old man sticks to his horse.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with in, to designate the result of the motion:
Plato ratiōnem in capīte posuit, frām in pectore locāvit, C., Tusc., 1. io, 20; Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.
Feedus in columnā aēneā incūsim, C., Balb., 23, 53; a treaty cut upon a brazen column.
The same observation applies to sub:
Pōne sub currū nīimiūn propinquī sōlis, H., O., 1. 22, 21; put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun.
2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take ex, ab, or dē.
Spēs omnīs pendet ex fortūnā, C., Par., ii. 17; all his hopes are suspended on fortune.
3. The Ablative of Place without in is confined to a few words and phrases, except in poetry and later prose. So terrā, on land; marī, by sea; terrā marīquee, on land and sea. Locō and locis, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit in. Also parte and partibus; so regularly dextrā (parte), sinistrā, laevā, etc., on the right, on the left.

386. Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without in.

Ut Rōmāe cōnsulēs sic Cartāgīne quotannī bīnī rēgēs cōsīentur, Nep., xxiii. 7, 4; as at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.
Taliō Rōmāe Fabriciūs, quālīs Aristidēs Athēnēs, fuit, C., Off., iii. 22, 87; Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides was at Athens.
Remarks.—1. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with in. Neapoli, in celeberrimo oppido, C., Rab. Post., 10, 26; at Naples, a populous town.
2. In the neighborhood of, at, is ad with Acc., especially of military operations: pons ad Genavam, Caes., B.G., 1: 7; the bridge at Geneva.

387. In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without in.

Libro tertio, third book; versu decimo, tenth verse; aliis locis, elsewhere. But in is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book is meant.

Agricultura laudatur in ooth libro qui est de tuenda re familiaris, C., Cat. M., 17, 50; agriculture is praised in the work on domestic economy.

388. In designations of Place, with totus, cunctus, whole; omnia, all; medius, middle, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without in.

Menippus, meo iudicio, totus Asiæ discretissimus, C., Br., 91, 315; Menippus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor).

389. When Place is looked upon as Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.

Ariovistus exercitus castris continuit, Caes., B. G., 1, 48, 4; Ariovistus kept his army within the camp.
Nemö ire quemquam publico prohibet viæ, Pl., Curc., 35; no man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.
So recipere aliquem totum, oppidum, portam, to receive a man into one's house, town, harbor.

B.ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENENCE.

Ablativus Separativus.

390. i. The Ablative answers the question Whence? and takes as a rule the prepositions ex, out of, dē, from, ab, off.

Araneas dēsciam dē pariete, Pl., St., 355; I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.
Dēcédit ex Galliæ Rōmanam Naevium, C., Quint., 4, 16; Naevius withdrew from Gaul to Rome.
2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding; so regularly with domō, from home, rūre, from the country.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly ab) must be used.

Verrēs omnia domō ēius abestulit, C., Verr., ii. 34, 83; Verres took everything away from his house.

Ego, cum Tullius rūre redierit, mittam eum ad tē, C., Fam., v. 20, 9; when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you.

Compare Aliēnō manum abstineant, Catō, Agr., 5, 1; let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property, with Alexander vix ā sē manūs abstinuit, C., Tusc., iv. 37, 79; Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).

Compare Lapidibus optimōs virōs fōrō pellīs, C., Har. Res., 18, 39; you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones, with Iustum semulam ab eō pellītō, Ter., Eun., 215; drive that rival from her.

Compare Omnium rūrum nātūrā cognitā liberāmur mortis metā, C., Fin., i. 19, 63; by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the fear of death, with Tē ab eō liberō, C., Q.F., iii. i. 3, 9; I rid you of him.

Compare Amicitia nūlō locō exclūditur, C., Lael., 6, 22; friendship is shut out from no place, with Ab illā exclusūrō, hōc conclusūrō, Cf. Ter., And., 386; I am shut out from her (and) shut up here (to live with her).

Remarks.—1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. The poets use it more freely.

3. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: & tergo, in the rear; ex parte dextra, on the right side; ab oriente, on the east; & tantō spatiō, at such a distance; ex fugā, on the flight; & re frumentāris labōrāre, to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.

3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

· Animus excelsus omni est liber curā, C., Fin., i. 15, 49; a lofty mind is free from all care.

Catō omnibus hūmānis vitis immūnis fuit, Vell., ii. 35, 2; Cato was exempt from all human failings.

Remark.—Procul, far from, regularly takes the preposition ab, except in the poets and later prose.
391. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

*Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquinii Cōrinthō, C., Tusc., v. 37, 109*; *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

*Dolabella Dēlō proficiscitur, C., Verr., l. 18, 46*; *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

**REMARKS.—1. The prepositions *ab* (א) and *ex* (א) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness.**

*Dēbū discēsīt & Brundīsium, Caes., B.C., iii. 24, 4*; *Libo departed from Brundisium.*

When the substantives *urbe, city,* and *oppidō, town,* are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighborhood is intended.

*Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.* *Ex oppidō Gergovīō, Caes., B.G., vii. 4, 2*; *from the town of Gergovia.*

2. The Place Whence embraces all the places involved.

*Agrigentiī ex Aesculapīō finō, whereas we should say, from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.*

*Unde domō? V., A., viii. 114*; *from what home?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

**C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.**

*Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.*

392. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition *cum,* *with.*

*Cum febrī domum rediit, C., Or., iii. 2, 6*; *he returned home with a fever.*

*Cum baculō pārōque senex, Mart., iv. 53, 3*; *an old man with stick and wallet.*

**REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without *cum*:**

*Caesar cum equītibus DCCC in castra pervēnit, Caes., B.C., i. 41, 1*; *Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.*

*Albāni ingenti exercitū in agrum Rōmānum imperium fōcēre, L., i. 23, 3*; *the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative:

*Nāvibus prefectus est, C., Fam., xv. 3, 2*; *he set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions:

*Hasdrubal medium acēm Hispānīs firmat, L., xxiii. 29, 4*; *Hasdrubal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops.*
II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.,

Ablative of Time. Ablātīvus Temporis.

393. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

Quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādem Diānae Ephesiae templum déflāgrāvit, Cf. C., N.D., ii. 27, 69; on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground.

Saturni stella trigintā séren annis cursum sūm cōnīcit, C., N.D., ii. 20, 52; the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.

Remarks.—1. Time Within Which may be expressed by per and the Accusative:

Per eōs ipsós dīs Philoclēs saltum Cithāeron transscendit, L., xxxi. 26, 1; during those very days Philoclus crossed the range of Cithaeron.

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so usually with tōtus, all, whole:

Nocte pluit tōtā, V. (P. L. M., iv. 155 B); all night (Jupiter) rains.

So with definite numbers; but rarely in model prose.

Apūd Pythagoram discipulis quīnquē annīs tacendum erat, Sen., E.M., 52, 10; in Pythagoras’ school the discipālēs had to keep silence five years.

3. When the notion is negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

Rōscius Rōmam multitās annīs nōn vēnit, C., Rosc. Am., 27, 74; Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years.

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with hīc, this; ille, that:

Eartāginem hāc biennō ēvertēs, C., Rep., vi. 11, 11; Carthage you will overturn in the next two years.

Transferred to Īrātā Obliqua, hīc becomes ille (660, 3):

Diodórus respondit illud argentum sē paucēs illīs diēbūs missēs Lilia-bæum, C., Verr., iv. 18, 39; Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lillybaeum within a few days (a few days before).

394. The Ablative with the preposition in is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

Bis in diē, twice a day; in puerītās, in boyhood; in adulēcentīs, in youth.

Nullō modō mīhi placuit bis in diē satūrum fieri, C., Tusc., v. 35, 100; it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.

Post ego istae cītātēm in adulēcentīs, Pl., B., 410; I did those things too in my youth.
REMARK.—The use or omission of in sometimes changes the meaning. So bello Persiae, at the time of the Persian war; but in bello, in war times; in pace, in peace times.

B. The Place Whence is transferred:
   1. To Origin.  2. To Respect or Specification.

   1. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin; sometimes with the prepositions ex and de.

Amplissimae famillae nati adulae centos, CAES., B.G., VII. 37, 1; young men born of a great house.
Sancti sanguinis divus! V., A., VI. 125; seed of blood divine!
Ex me atque ex hunc natus es, TER., Heaut., 1030; you are his son and mine.
Odesunt natos de paclice, JUV., VI. 627; they hate the offspring of the concubine.
Ab, and occasionally ex, are employed of remote progenitors:
Plurique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Cf. CAES., B.G., II. 4, 1; Belgians are mostly of German descent.

396. The Ablative of Material takes ex in classical Latin.

Ex animo constamus et corpore, Cf. C., FIN., IV. 8, 19; we consist of mind and body.
Statua ex auris, ex aere, facta, a statue made of gold, of bronze. Often an adjective is used: aureus, golden; lignaeus, wooden.

REMARKS.—1. With fieri the previous state is given also by de:
De templo carcerem fieri! C., PH., V. 7, 18; from a temple to become a jail.
Ex oratio ekelor factus, C., PH., XIII. 9, 22; a pleader turned plowman.
2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late.
Nivos caelatus ferrum, V., A., VIII. 700; Mars carven of iron.

2. Ablative of Respect.

397. The Ablative of Respect or Specification is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

Disscriptus populus oenae, ordinibus, aetatisbus, C., Leg., III. 19, 44; a people drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.
Ennius ingenti maxime, arte rudis, Ov., TR., II. 424; Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.
Animō ignāvus, proāx ëre, Tac., H., ii. 23, 18; coward of soul, saucy of tongue.

Noteworthy are the phrases: orīne ruber, red-haired; captūs oculis (literally, caught in the eyes), blind; captūs mente, insane; mēs sententīās, according to my opinion; ïrē, by right; lēge, by law, etc.; and the Supines in -tū (436).

Remark.—Prepositions are also used, to show the conception:

Caesariās adventūs ex colore vestītūs ognītus, Cf. Cæs. B.G., vii. 88, 1; the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.

Dē gestū intelligō quid respondēas, C., Vat., 15, 35; I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.

Similarly ex lēge, according to law; ex pactō, according to agreement; ex (dē) mōre, according to custom; ex animī sententīās, according to (my) heart’s desire; ex ûsū, useful.

398. The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of quam, than, with the Nominative or Accusative. (Ablātīvus Comparātiōnis.)

Tunica proprior palliōst, Pl., Trin., 1154; the shirt is nearer than the cloak.

Nihil est virtūte amāibilīus, C., Lael., 8, 28; nothing is more attractive than virtue.

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

Lacrimā nihil cītius krēscit, C., Inv., i. 56, 109; nothing dries more quickly than a tear.

Remark.—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, r. 2.

Phīdiae simulāēra quibus nihil perfectius vidēmus, C., Or., 2, 8; the statues of Pheidias, than which we see nothing more perfect.

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātīvus Sociātīvus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. Ablative of Manner.

399. The Ablative of Manner answers the question How? and is used with the Preposition cum when it has no Adjective; with or without cum when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (Ablātīvus Modī.)

Stellae circulōs suōs orbēsque omnisunt celebrātēs mirābilīs, C., Rep., vi. 15, 15; the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness.

Beātē vivere est honestē, id est cum virtūte, vivēre, C., Fin., iii. 8, 29; to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.
2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

400. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

Agæsilàus statūrē fuit humilī, Nep., XVII. 8, 1; Agæsilàus was (a man) of low stature.

Ista turpisculō puella nāseō, Cat., 41, 3; that girl of yours with the ugly nose.

Remarks.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions sum may be used: Ægnus sum suillō capite, L., XXXI. 12, 7; a lamb with a swine’s head.

3. Ablative of Means.

401. The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition ab (ā). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with per.

Xerxes certior factus est, \{ 1. nuntiō, by a message. 
Xerxes was informed, \{ 2. & nuntiō, by a messenger. 
3. per nuntium, by means of a messenger.

Virgīs caeci tribunī ab légētō sunt, L., XXIX. 18, 13; the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.

Discite sēnāri per quem didicitis amāre, Ov., Rem. Am., 43; learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.

Remarks.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful; see 354, and 214, r. 2.

So incend sunt tēstibus, C., Mil., 18, 47; they are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.

2. A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person. So dēserī sē mente, sē spē.

Vobis animus ab ignāviā atque aequidō corruptus est, S., Iug., 31, 2; you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.

402. The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

Māgnōs hominēs virtūte mētimur, nōn fortūnā, Nep., xviii. i, 1; we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.

Sons hominēs ut aera tinnitū dignōscimus, Quint., xi. 3, 31; we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.

REMARK.—Ex with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs; so regularly with aestimāre, existimāre, spectāre, in the sense of judge, value.

Si est vulgus: ex virtūte paucē, ex opinione multa aestimat, C., Rosc.Com., i0, 29; this is the way of the rabble: they value few things by (the standard of) truth, many by (the standard of) opinion.

403. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

Sōl multīs partibus māior est quam terrā univerσa, C., N.D., ii. 36, 92; the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth.

Perfer et obdāre: multō graviōra tuliσ, Ov., Tr., v. xi, 7; bear to the end and be firm: you have borne much heavier burdens.

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with ante, before, and post, after:

Paucēs ante diēbus, paucēs diēbus ante, a few days before. 
Paucēs post diēbus, paucēs diēbus post, a few days after, afterward.
Duōbus annīs postquam Rōma condita est, two years after Rome was founded.

Paulō post Trōiam captam, a little while after the taking of Troy.

The Acc. can also be employed: post paucēs annīs, after a few years; ante paucēs annīs, a few years before; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when quam follows): two hundred years after(ward) may be:

Ducentīs annīs post or Ducentāsimō annō post,
Post ducentōs annōs or Post ducentāsimum annum.
5. Ablative of Price.

404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

Eriphyle aurō virī vitam vēndidit, C., Inv., i. 50, 94; Eriphyle sold her husband’s life for gold.

Viginti talentiās unus orātīōnem Isocrātēs vēndidit, Plin., N.H., vii. 31, 110; Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.

Ȧmitt morte immortalitātem, Quint., ix. 3, 71; he purchased deathlessness with death.

Remark.—Mūtāre, to exchange, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy; the latter in poetry and later prose.

Nāmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit, S., C., 58, 15; no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace.

Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtātur, C., Tac., Ann., iii. 44, 10; a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.

6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

405. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

Dēmocritus diōcit oculus sē privāsse, C., Fin., v. 29, 87; Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.

Dēns bonā omnibus explēvit mundum, C., Univ., 3, 9; God has filled the universe with all blessings.

Capua fortissimōrum virōrum multitūdine redundat, C., Pās., ii. 25; Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen.

Remarks.—1. Ego and indīgō also take the Genitive:

Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris, C., Or., i. 34, 156; they are not so much in need of skill as of industry. So implāri, V., A., i. 214.

2. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb.

Asellus onustus aurō, C., Att., i. 16, 12; a donkey laden with gold.

Polluitītus dives quilibet esse potest, Ov., A.A., i. 444; anybody can be rich in promises.

406. Opus and usus take the Dative of the Person and the Ablative of the Thing.

Opus may be used as a predicate with the thing wanted as a subject.

Novō oūnāliō mihi nunc opus est, Pl., Pās., 601; a new device is what I’m needing now.

Vigintī iam usus filiō argenti minās, Pl., Asin., 89; my son has urgent need of twenty silver minae.
Nūn opus est verbis sed fūstibus, C., Pis., 30, 73; there is need not of words, but of cudgels.

Qued nūn opus est esse cārum est, Cato (Sen., E.M., 94, 27); what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Qued parētō opus est, parē, Ter., And., 523; what must be got ready, get ready.

Victū convēntōst opus, Pl., Cas., 502; the neighbor must be called on.

7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

407. The Deponent Verbs ātūr, ābūtūr, fruor, fungor, potior, and vesco, take the Ablative.

Victūrī ātī nescīs, L., xxii. 51, 4; how to make use of victory you know not.

Quē sāque tandem abūtēre patientīs nostrīs, C., Cat., i. 1, 1; how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience?

Lux quā fruimur & Deō nōbīs datur, Cf. C., Rosc. Am., 45, 131; the light which we enjoy is given to us by God.

Funguntur officīō, C., Cael., 9, 31; they acquit themselves of their duty.

Tūtīus esse arbitrēbantur sine āltō vulnere victōrīs potīrī, Caes., B.G., iii. 24, 2; they thought it safer to make themselves masters of (gain) the victory without any wound.

Numīdeae lacte vescoēbantur, S., Jug., 89, 7; the Numidians made their regular food of milk (fed on milk).

Remarks.—1. Potior has occasionally the Genitive.
2. On the Personal Gerundive of these verbs see 427, n. 5.
3. Ātūr is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation:

Ātī alīquō amīcō, to avail one’s self of (to enjoy) a man’s friendship (to have a friend in him); ātī consilīō, to follow advice; ātī bonō patre, to have the advantage of having a good father; ātī lēgibus, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

D.ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

408. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. Ablātīvus Causae.

In culpā sunt qui officiā dēserunt mollitiās animī, C., Fin., i. 10, 33; they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.

Ōdērunt pecūnāe bonī virtūtis amōrē, H., Ep., i. 16, 52; the good hate to sin from love of virtue.
Dèlectō dolere, corōctiōne gaudēre oportet, C., Lael., 24, 90; one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement.

Remarks.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes: adductus, led; ardēns, fired; commōitus, stirred up; incitātus, egged on; incōnsus, inflamed; impulsus, driven on; motūs, moved, and many others; ambōre, by love; irā, by anger; odio, by hate; metā, by fear; spē, by hope, etc. Metī perterritūs, sore frightened; versōundīō dēterritus, abashed, etc.

2. Instead of the simple Abl. prepositions are often used; especially, de and ex with the Abl., or ob and propter with the Accusative.

3. The preventing cause is expressed by prae, for: Prae gaudīō ubi sim nescīō, Ter., Heaut., 308; I know not where I am for joy.

E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

409. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive, or adjective can be employed.

410. The Ablative Absolute answers to the English so-called Nominative Absolute, but for purposes of style, it is often well to vary the translation.

Xerxe rēgnānte (= cum Xerxes rēgnāret), Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.

Xerxe victō (= cum Xerxes victus esset), Xerxes defeated, being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.

Xerxe rēgē (= cum Xerxes rēx esset), Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.

Pater vivō, while father is, was alive (in father’s lifetime).

Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit:

Passive Form: The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.

Active Form: Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.

Abstract Form: After the taking of the city. After taking the city.

Māximā virtūtēs iacēre omnes necesse est voluptāte dominantē, C., Fin., 11, 35, 117; all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if (or when) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.

Rāmōni veterēs rēgāri omnes volēbant libertātēs dulcēdine nōndum expertēs, L., 1, 17, 8; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.
Remarks.—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English:

Invenit veste positæ corpora oleo perfusœrunt, C., Tusc., i. 47, 113; the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.

(2) 8. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace is to be rendered: Manlius caesium Gallum torque spoliiavit.

This rule is frequently violated, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

Neque illum mé vivō corrumpi sinam, Pl., B., 419; nor will I suffer him to be debauched while I am alive.

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive:

Ingurtha fratre meō interfecit régnum Æius sceleris sui praedam fecit, S., Jug., 14, 11; Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.

Locative.

411. In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

Pompeius hiemâre Dýrrhaschii, Apollôniae omnibusque oppidis constitutārat, Caes., B.C., III. 5, 1; Pompey had determined to winter at Dýrrhaschium, Apollonia, and all the towns.

Rhodâ ego nūm fui, sed fui in Bithyniâ, C., Planc., 34, 88; I was not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.

Remarks.—1. Other Locative forms are, domī, at home (61, R. 2), humī, on the ground, bellī, and militiae, in the combinations domī militiaeque, bellī domique, in peace and in war, at home and in the field; rūrī, in the country (but rūre meō, on my farm). So perhaps animī, at heart (374, R.).

Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōnsilium domī, C., Off., i. 22, 76; of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.

Iacere humī, C., Cat., i. 10, 26; to lie on the ground.

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with in, and regularly follow when qualified by an attribute:

Militēs Albae cōnsitārunt in urbe opportūnā, C., Ph., iv. 2, 6; the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.
Archias Antiochiae natus est celebri quondam urbe, C., Arch., 3, 4; Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.

When urbe, city, oppido, town, or insula, island, precedes, the preposition is always employed:


3. Domi takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive:

Domi suae senex est mortuus, C., N.D., iii. 32, 81; the old man died at his own house.

Metuis ut meae domi cursetur diligenter, Terc., Hec., 257; you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house.

Also aliœae domi (61, r. 2), C., Tusc., i. 22, 51; in a strange house; domi illius, C., Div. in Caec., 18, 58; in his house.

But in domo Pericli (65), Nep., vii. 2, 1; in the house (hold) of Pericles.

In domo castæ, in a pure house. In domo, in the house (not, at home).

PREPOSITIONS.

412. The Prepositions serve to define more narrowly the ideas of place involved in the cases.

The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs.

The cases used with Prepositions are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation whither? the Ablative represents the relations whence? and where?

Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper Prepositions. The prefixes ambo- (am- an-), dis (di), por- (porr- pol-), red- (re-), sed- (sé-), and vas- are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

413. Position of the Preposition.—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

Remarks.—1. Cum always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun: mœcum, with me; quœcum or cum quœ, with whom. Dom is not uncommonly placed after quœ and quœ, rarely after quibus.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often.

Tenus, as far as, and versus, -ward, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between: hanc ob causam (C., Br., 24, 94), for this reason.

In poetry and later prose both Preposition and attribute are sometimes postponed: metà in magnâ, L., ix. 37, 11; in great fear.
3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by a word or two: *post vērō Sullae victōriam, but after Sulla's victory; ad besštē vivendum, for living happily.*

414. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.—With different words, the Preposition is repeated, (a) when the Preposition is emphatic, or (b) when the individual words are to be distinguished; as is the case after aut—aut, et—et, nec—nec, vel—vel, nōn modo—sed etsi, sed, nisi, quam, and in comparative clauses with ut.

Otherwise it is omitted; so always with que.

Et e(x) urbe et e(x) agris, C., Cat., II. 10, 21; both from (the) city and from (the) country.

De honōre aut de dignitāte contendimus, C., Tusc., III. 21, 50; we are striving about office, or about position.

Remarks.—1. When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

Cimōn incidit in sānum invidiam (in) quam pater suus, Nep., V. 3, 1; Cimon fell into the same disrepute into which his father had fallen.

(2, 3) 4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of is used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb:

Prō Scipionē et adversus Scipionem, L., XXIX. 19, 10; for and against Scipio. Ante pāgnam et post eam, before and after the battle. Et in corpore et extrā, C., Fin., II. 21, 68; both in the body and outside.

1. Prepositions Constructured with the Accusative.

416. The Prepositions constructured with the Accusative are:

Ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, (pōne) post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, ûque, versuā.

1. Ad. Of Motion Whither, to, up to. Of Direction, towards. Of Respect, for, with regard to. Of Manner, after, according to. Of Place, at. Of Time, at. With Numerals, about. Of Purpose, for.

2. Adversus (-um), [i.e., turned to]. Towards, over against, against.

3. Ante [i.e., over against, facing]. Of Place Where, before. Of Time, before; the most frequent use.

4. Apud is used chiefly of Persons. At the house of (characteristic locality). In the presence of. In the writings of. In the view of. Of Place, at, in (= in). In phrases like apud sē esse, to be in one's senses.


7. Cis, citră, of Place, *this side, short of*. Citră, of Time, *within, this side of*. Without (stopping short of).

8. Contră. Opposite to, *over against, opposed to, against*.


12. Intră. Beneath, lower down; of Space, Rank, or Grade.

13. Inter. Between; of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Of Time, during.


15. Intră [i.e., adjoining]. Hard by, near, next to. Usually of Place.

16. Ob [i.e., over against, opposite to]. Rarely of Place, right before. Usually of Cause, for.

17. Penes. With = in the hands of; usually of Persons.

18. Per. Of Space, through; of Time, during; of Cause, owing to; of Instrument, by (both persons and things); of Manner, by, in. It is also used in oaths, by.

19. Post. Behind, only of Place, and rare.


21. Praeter. Of Place, in front of, on before, past. Also, except; contrary to. Of Rank, beyond.

22. Prop. Usually of Place, near. Propius and proximus also occur occasionally as prepositions.

23. Propter. Of Place, near. Of Cause, on account of.

24. Secundum [i.e., following]. Of Time, immediately after. Of Series, next to. Of Reference, according to.

25. Supră. Of Place, above, beyond. Of Grade, above.

26. Trāns. On the other side, beyond, across; only of Place.

27. Últră. Of Space and Measure, on that side, beyond.

(28) 29. Versus, -ward. Usually with names of Towns, and small Islands; otherwise with the prepositions *ad* or *in*.

II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

417. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are ā (ab, abs), cŏram, cum, dē, ē (ex), praec, prō, sine, tenus.

Note.—The form before vowels and h is always ab; before consonants usually ã, though ab is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials b, f, p, v, and is frequent before l, n, r, s, and i (j); abs is found only before ã.

(2) 3. Curam. Face to face with, in the presence of.
5. De. Of Place, down from, and then from; especially with compounds of de and ex. Of Source, from. Of Origin. Of Object, concerning. Of the Whole from which a part is taken.

Note.—Ex is used before consonants only, ex before both vowels and consonants.

(7) 8. Palam, in the sense of curam, in the presence of, is very rare.
(11, 12) 13. Sine, without, is opposed to cum.
14. Tenus, to the extent of. Of Space (actual and transferred), as far as. It is regularly put after its case.

III. Prepositions Constrained with the Accusative and Ablative.

418. Prepositions constrained with the Accusative and Ablative are in, sub, subter, super.

1. In. (a) With Accusative: Of Place, into, into the midst of. Of Disposition and Direction, towards. Of Time, into, for. Of Purpose or Destination, for. Of Manner, in, after. With Distributives, to, among.
(b) With Ablative: Of Place, in, on. Of Time, within. Of Reference, in the case of, in the matter of. Of Condition, in.
3. Subter, under. (a) With Accusative; rare, and locally equal to sub.
(b) With the Ablative; more rare and almost wholly poetical.
4. Super. (a) Usually of Place, over, above. Post-classical.
(b) With the Ablative: Of Space, above. Of Time, during.
INFINITIVE.

The Infinitive as a Substantive.

419. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb. It corresponds to the English Infinitive and to the English verbal substantive in -ing:

Amāre, to love; the loving.

The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it may take an adverb and has voice and the construction of the verb:

Amāre, to love; valdē amāre, to love hugely; amāt, to be loved; amāre aliquem, to love a man; nośtre aliquī, to hurt a man.

420. The Subject of the Infinitive, expressed or unexpressed, is in the Accusative Case, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

Rēgem esse, to be king. Bonum esse, to be good.

Quid stultius quam aliquem sibi placēre? Sen., E.M., 74, 17; what is more foolish than for a man to be pleased with himself?

So in the paradigm of the verb:

Amātūrum esse, to be about to love.

421. The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. The other cases are supplied by the Gerund and the Supine.

Remarks.—1. The Inf. is occasionally used to express Design, particularly in the poets, never in good prose.

Semper in Oceanum mittit me quaerere gemmās, Prop., II. 16, 17; she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for pearls.

2. Similarly after some adjectives of capability, ability, necessity, etc., especially in the poets, where model prose requires Sup. in -tā or a Final clause.

The Infinitive as a Subject.

422. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

Incipere multō est quam inpetrāre facilius, Pl., Poen., 974; beginning is much easier (work) than winning.

Non tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decūrum est, Ov., M., IX. 6; 'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten, as 'tis an honor to have struggled.
The Infinitive as an Object.

423. 1. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Auxiliary Verbs.

2. Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

Emorti cupidé, Ter., Heauf., 971; I want to die.
Sed procor ut possim títius esse miser, Ov., Tr., v. 2, 78; but I pray that I may be more safely wretched.

Vincere sús, Hannibal; victóriæ títius nescís, L., xxii. 51; how to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.
Quit mentiri solet, pæleré cónsumvit, C., Rosc. Com., 16, 46; he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.

Vulnera quæ fecit dēbitus ipse pati, Ov., Am., ii. 3, 4; the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.

Miser Catulle, désiné ineptére, Cat., viii. 1; poor, poor Catullus, prithee cease to play the fool.

Só habeó, I have (it in my power).

Tantum haveó pollicet mi tibi cumulátæ satisfactúrum, C., Fam., i. 54, 3; so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction.

Remarks.—(1, 2)8 Notice that coept, I have begun, and désinó, I cease, are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives.

Belló Atheniánsés undique premí sunt coepti, Nep., xiii. 3, 1; the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.

Veterá tráiténsés legi sunt désitae, C., Br., 32, 123; the old speeches have ceased to be read.

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

4. Verbs of Will and Desire take ut as well as the Infinitive. So regularly optó, I choose, in classical prose. See 546.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat take the same tenses as verbs of Saying and Thinking (530).

Subruptúrum pallam prōmisit tibi, Pl., Asin., 930; he promised to steal the mantle from you.

But they are also treated occasionally as in English.

6. Doceó, I teach, inbó, I bid, vetó, I forbid, sinó, I let, take the Inf. as a Second Accusative (339):

Dionysius tondáre filiás suás decuit, C., Tusc., v. 20, 58; Dionysius taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving).

Ipse inbet mortis tē meminisse deus, Mart., ii. 59; a god himself bids you remember (376) death.

Vitae summa brevis spem nē vetat inchoare longam, H., O., i. 4, 15; life's brief sun forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

424. The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula esse, to be, and the like.

Docet homini et eruditō vivere est cogitāre, C., Tusc., v. 38, 111; to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think, living is thinking.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

425. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

N. Legere difficult est, reading (to read) is hard to do.

G. Ars legendi, the art of reading.

Fuer studiōsus est legendi, the boy is zealous of reading.

D. Fuer operam dat legendi, the boy devotes himself to reading.

A. Fuer cupid legere, the boy is desirous to read.

Fuer prōpensūs est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.

A. Fuer discīt legendi, the boy learns by reading.

Remark.—The Infinitive is sometimes quoted:

Multum interest inter "dare" et "accepīre," Sen., Ben., 5, 10; there is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."

426. The Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Hominēs ad deōs nūllīs ré propius accēdunt quam salītam hominibus dandō, C., Lig., 12, 38; men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.

427. Gerundive for Gerund.—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

G. Placandī Deī, of appeasing God.

D. Placandū Deī, for appeasing God.

A. Placandū Deī, by appeasing God.

In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

Ad placandīs Deōs, for appeasing the gods (C., Cat., III. 8, 20).

In placandīs Dīs, in appeasing the gods.
Remarks.—(1, 2) 3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted: aliquid faciendi ratiō, C., Inv., i. 25, 36; method of doing something.

But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, n. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: cupiditās veri videndi, C., Fin., ii. 14, 46; the desire of seeing the truth.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Accusative.

Ad non pārendum senātui, L., xlii. 9; for not obeying the senate.

5. Note as an exception to the foregoing rule that the Gerundives from ἄτορ, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor (407), have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases.

Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

428. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement.

Sāpientia ars vivendi putanda est, C., Fin., i. 13, 42; philosophy is to be considered the art of living.

Triste est nōmen ipsum carendī, C., Tusc., i. 36, 87; dismal is the mere word "care" (go without).

Non est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Def, Ov., Tr., v. 8, 22; I am not without hope of appeasing God.

Ignōrant cupidītīs māledīcendī plus invidiam quam convīdiōm posse, Quint., vi. 2, 16; those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.

Neuter sui prōtegendi corporis memor (erat), L., ii. 6, 9; neither thought of shielding his own body.

Remarks.—1. As mel, tui, sui, nostrī, vestī, are neuter singulars, from meum, my being, tuum, thy being, suum, one's being, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form: cōnservandī sui, of preserving themselves; vestī adhortandī, of exhorting you; and no regard is had to number or gender.

Copia plācandī sit modo parva tui, Ov., Her. 20, 74; let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with causā, less often with grātīs, and rarely with (antiquated) ergō, on account of, to express Design: Dīsimulandī causā in senātum vēnit, S., C., 31, 52; he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation.

With many substantives and adjectives the Infinitive is also allowable (422). Sometimes there is a difference in meaning; thus tempus with Gerund, the proper time (season), with Inf. high time.
Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

429. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.

The more common construction is ad with the Accusative.

*Lignum aridum materia est idonea sideriendis ignibus, Cf. Sen., N. Q.,
ii. 22, 1; dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out
sparks).

So particularly after esse: Solvendo civitate nees non erant, Cf. C., Fam.,
iii. 8, 2; the communities were not (the people) to pay, (ready to pay,
solvent). Solit esse oneri ferendis, Sen., E. M., 71, 26; he knows that
he is (man enough) to bear the burden.

Similarly comitibus decemviris creandis, C., Leg. Agr., 2, 8; assemblies for
creating decemvirs.

Accusative of the Gerundive.

430. The Accusative of the Gerundive is used after such
verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking.

Divitiam homini id aurum servandum dedit, Pl., B., 338; he gave that
gold to a rich man to keep.

Contra muros reduciendos eurat, Nep., ix. 4, 5; Conon has the walls
rebuilt.

Patriam diripiendam reliquimus, C., Fam., xvi. 12, 1; we have left
our country to be plundered.

Carvilius adem faciendam locavit, L., x. 46, 14; Carvilius let the (con-
tract of) building the temple.

The passive form has the Nominative:

Demetrius ad patrem reduciendos legis dat um est, L., xxxvi. 35, 18;
Demetrius was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.

Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

431. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used
as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative
of Manner or Circumstance.

Unus hominis nobis sanctandos restituit rem, Ennius (C., Cat. M., 4, 10);
one man by lingering raised our cause again.

Plausum meo nomine rectandis dedeunt, Cf. C., Att., iv. 1, 6; they
clapped when my name was read.
Prepositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

432. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition *ad*, seldom *ante*, *circā*, *ergā*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *propter*, and *super*. See 427.

*Nulla rēs tantum ad discendum prōdēt quantum scriptūrō*, *C., Br.*, ii. 24, 92; *nothing is so profitable for speaking as is writing.*

*Inter spoliam corpus hostis exspērāvit, Cf. L., ii. 20*, 9; *while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

433. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, often *in*, but seldom *cum*, *prō*, and *super*.

*Libri dē contemptū gloriā*, *C., Tusc.*, i. 15, 34; *books on the contempt of glory.*

*Ex discendō capiunt voluptātem, Cf. C., Fin.*, v. 18, 48; *they receive pleasure from learning.*

*Brūtus in liberandā patriā (= dum liberat) est interfictus, C., Cat.M.*, 20, 75; *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.*

**SUPINE.**

434. The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

The Accusative Supine.

435. The Supine in *-tum* is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

*Galliae légētī ad Caesarem gratulātum convenerunt, Caes., B.G.*, i. 30, 1; *the commissioners of Gaul waited on Caesar to congratulate him.*

*Spectātum veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, Ov., A.A.*, i. 99; *they come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show.*

*Galli cum sōle sunt cubītum, Plin., N.H.*, x. 24, 46; *cocks go to roost with the sun (at sunset).*

**REMARK.—**The Fut. Inf. passive is actually made up of the passive Inf. of *esse, to go*, *irī* (*that a movement is made, from itur*; 208, 2), and the Supine:

*Rūmor venit datum irī gladiātōrēs, Ter., Hec.*, 39; *the rumor comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.*

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nom. (528).

*Reus damnātum irī vidēbātur, Quint.*, ix. 2, 88; *the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*
PARTICIPLE—ADVERB.

The Ablative Supine.

436. The Supine in -tū is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of Respect (397). It never takes an object.

Mirābile dictū, wonderful (in the telling) to tell, vīsū, to behold.
Id dictū quam rūs faellius est, L., xxxi. 38, 4; that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).

PARTICIPLE.

437. The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its verbal nature.

Nihil est māgnum somniānti, C., Div., ii. 68, 141; nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).
Rāgia rūs est succurrere lāpatū, Ov., Pont., ii. 9, 11; it is a kingly thing (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.

Remark.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: rēcta rēctā, right actions; facētā dictūm, a witty remark.

438. The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

Epaminondās erat temporibus sapienter ātēns, Nēp., xv. 3, 1; Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities (= is qui ātēretur).
Senectūs est operōsa et semper āgēns aliqūid, Cf. C., Cat. M., 8, 26; old age is busy, and always doing something.

Remarks.—1. Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive:

Minēra nōn ad dēliciās muliebres quæsītā nec quibus nūpta eōmē-tūr, Tāc., Germ., 18; gifts not sought out for woman’s fancies, nor those by which a bride adorns herself.

2. The Fut. Part is used after verbs of motion to express Design; but this is rare in model prose; see 670, 3.

ADVERB.

439. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, also sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well;
ferē omnēs, almost all; admodum adulēsoēms, a mere youth;
nimis saepe, too often; lētē rēx (V., A., i. 21), wide-ruling;
bis cōnsul, twice consul; duo simul bēlla, two simultaneous wars.

440. Position of the Adverb.—Adverbs are commonly put immediately before the words they qualify.
They occasionally follow the verb.

Infāstē facit, he acts unjustly. Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome. Valēdē dīligenter, very carefully.

Remark.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry:
Iram bene Ennius initium dīxit insāniae, C., Tusc., iv. 23, 52; well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.
Vīxit dum vīxit bene, Ter., Hec., 461; he lived while he lived (and lived) well.

Negative Adverbs.

441. There are two original negatives in Latin, nē and haud (haut, hau). From nē is derived nōn.

442. Nōn (the absolute not) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

Quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat, Petr., 37; whom she likes, she likes; whom she does not like, she does not like.
Nōn aūsim, I should not venture.

Remarks.—1. Nōn, as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, b. 1.)
2. Nōn is the rule in antitheses: Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita, Mart., vi. 70, 15; not living, but being well, is life.

443. Haud is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs: haud quīsquam, not any; haud māgnus, not great; haud māle, not badly.

444. 1. Nē is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

Tū nē cōde mals, V., A., vi. 95; yield not thou to misfortunes.
Nē tānsieris Hībērum, L., xxii. 44, 6; do not cross the Ebro.
Nē vivam, si scīō, C., Att., iv. 16, 8; may I cease to live (strike me dead), if I know.
2. Nô is continued by nêve or nev.

Nô illam vîndât, nev mô perdât hòminem amantem, Pl., Ps., 322; don’t sell her, and don’t ruin me, a fellow in love.

445. Subdivision of the Negative.—A negative may be subdivided by neque—neque, as well as by aut—aut, or strengthened by nê—quidem, not even.

Nihil umquam neque insanitus neque gloriâs ex ëre Timoleontis præcessit, Nep., xx. 4, 2; nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.

Consedûrum nêmô aut latuit aut fügit, L., xxiv. 5, 14; of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.

Numquam Scipiónem nê minimâ quidem re offendî, C., Lael., 27, 108; I never wounded Scipio’s feelings, no, not even in the slightest manner.

"I will give no thousand crowns, neither."—Shãks., As You Like It, i. 1, 78.

446. Negative Combinations.—In English, we say either no one ever, or, never any one; nothing ever, or, never anything; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: nâmô umquam, no one ever.

Verrèê nihil umquam fécit sine aliquō quæstū, C., Verr., v. 5, 11; Verres never did anything without some profit or other.

Remark.—No one yet is nãndum quisquam; no more, no longer, is iam nôn.

447. Negô (I say no, I deny) is commonly used instead of dicô nôn, I say—not.

Vel ei vel negô, Accius, 125 (r.); say yes or say no!

Assem sâss datûrum negat, C., Quinct., 5, 19; he says that he will not give a copper.

448. Position of the Negative.—The Negative usually stands immediately before the Predicate, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

Nê—quidem, not even, bestrides the emphatic word or group.

Potès nôn reverti, Sen., E.M., 49, 10; possibly you may not return (nôn potès reverti, you cannot possibly return).

Sæpe virâ fallunt; teneras nôn saepè puellae, Ov., A.A., iii. 31; often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.

Nôn omnîs setās, Lydê, lâdô convenit, Pl., B., 129; not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.

Nê obsidibus quidem datis pàcem redimere potuèrunt, Cf. Caes., B.G., i. 37, 2; they could not buy back peace, even by giving hostages.
449. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445:

Non nego, I do not deny (I admit).

Remarks.—1. Non possum non, I cannot but (I must):
Qui mortem in melis poniit non potest eam non timere, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.
(2, 3) 4. Of special importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:

**Indefinite Affirmative.**
nonnonnull, somewhat;
nonnullis, some one, some;
nonnunnuntionum, sometimes;
nonnunquam, somewhere;

**General Affirmative.**
nihil non, everything;
nemō non, everybody;
nūlī non, all;
nunquam non, always;
nunquam non, everywhere.

In ipsa civili nonnullis hostis est, C., Mur., 39, 84; in the senate-house itself there are enemies (nemō nonnullis hostis est, everybody is an enemy).
Non est placandī spēs mīhi nullīa Deō, Ov., Tr., v. 8, 22 (428); I have some hope of appeasing God (nullīa spēs nonnullis est, I have every hope).

Nemō non didisse māvult quam dicerē, Quint., III. i, 6; everybody prefers having learned to learning.

**INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.**

Interrogative Sentences.

450. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. It is completed by the answer.

451. A question may relate:
(a) To the verb: Predicate Question:
Vivitne pater? Pl., Capt., 282; is my father alive?

(b) To some other part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverb: Nominal Question.
For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

452. I. Interrogative sentences are divided into simple and compound (disjunctive). Am I? (simple); Am I, or am I not? (disjunctive).

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into direct and indirect, or independent and dependent. Am I? (direct); He asks whether I am (indirect).
DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

453. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

Infelix est Fabricius quod rursus suum sedit! Sen., Dial., i. 3, 6; Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field? (Impossible!)

Hence, inquit, linguam vis meam praecidere? Phaedr., i. 23, 5; Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do? (You shall not.)

Tum parasitem non novisti? Pl., Men., 505; you don't know your own parasite? (Strange!)

454. Interrogative Particles.—Ne (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

This emphatic word usually begins the sentence.

Omnine pecunia dissoluta est? C., Verr., iii. 77, 180; is all the money paid out? (Estne omnis pecunia dissoluta? Is all the money paid out?)

455. Nōnne expects the answer Yes.

Nōnne meminištī? C., Fin., ii. 3, 10; do you not remember?

Nōnne is generōssissimus qui optimum? Quint., v. 11, 4; is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?

So the other negatives with -ne: nāmōne, nihilne, and the like.

456. Num expects the answer No.

Numquīs est hic alius praeter me atque tā? Nāmō est, Pl., Tr., 69; is anybody here besides you and me? No.

457. i. An (or) belongs properly to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is left out. The second alternative with an (or, then) serves to indicate Re- monstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, or Irony.

Nōn manum abstines? An tibi iam māvis cerebrum dispersam hic? Ter., Ad., 781; are you not going to keep your hands off? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now?

An nescis longās rēgibus esse manūs? Ov., Hēr., 16, 166; (my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so?) or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).
2. Especially to be noted, in connection with an, are the phrases, nesciö an, haud sciö an, I do not know but; dubitö an, I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think.

Haud sciö an ita sit, C., Tusc., ii. 17, 41; I do not know but it is so.

Dubitö an Thrasybulum primum omnium pōnam, Nep., viii. 1, 1; I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.

**DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.**

458. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Clause</th>
<th>Second and Subsequent Clauses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utrum, whether,</td>
<td>an (anne), or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne,</td>
<td>an,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an (anne).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Utrum nescis quam altë ascenderis, an prō nihilō id putēs? C., Fum., x. 26, 3; are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?

Vēne Domitium an vēs Domitius dēseruit? Caes., B.C., ii. 32, 8; have you deserted Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you?

Eloquar an sileam? V., A., iii. 39; shall I speak, or hold my peace?

459. In direct questions, or not is annōn, rarely necne; in indirect, necne, rarely annōn.

Isne est quem quaerēs, annōn? Ter., Ph., 852; is that the man I am looking for, or not?

Sitque memor nostri necne, referte mihi, Ov., Tr., iv. 3, 10; bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us or no.

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**

460. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

1. Simple Questions.

(a) Num loses its negative force, and becomes simply whether.

Speculārī fāssērunt num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent, L., xliii. 19, 8; they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.
(5) Si, if, is used for whether, chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial. Compare O si (261).

Temptāta réā est si primō impētū capi Ardea posset, L., i. 57, 2; an attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see) if Ardea could be taken by a dash.

2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with -ne in the second clause only is sometimes found in the Indirect Question.

Tarquinius Priēci Tarquinii régis filiūs nepōsiēne fuerit parum liquet, L., i. 46, 4; whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of King Tarquin the Elder does not appear.

SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

461. Direct.

Is the last syllable short or long? Cf. C., Or., 64, 217.

Postrema syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?

brevišne est an longa?

Indirect.

In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{utrum postrema syllaba brevis sit an longa.} \\
\text{postrema syllaba brevis sit an longa.} \\
\text{postrema syllaba brevis an longa sit (Cicero).} \\
\text{postrema syllaba brevis sit longae.}
\end{align*}
\]

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. In Direct Questions.

462. The Mood of the question is determined by the Mood of the answer.

463. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is genuine.

A. Quis homō est? B. Ego sum, Ter., And., 965; who is that? It is I.

A. Vivitne pater? B. Vivum liquimus, Pl., Capt., 282; is his father living? We left him alive.
464. Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is rhetorical and no answer is expected.

Quis non paupertatem estima? C., Tusc., v. 31, 89; who does not dread poverty?

465. Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is deliberative.

A. Abæm! B. Abi, Pl., Merc., 749; shall I go away? Go.

Utrum superblam prius commemorem an crudelitatem? C., Verr., i. 47, 122; shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty?

RemarK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

466. Subjunctive questions anticipate a Potential answer in the negative, when the question is rhetorical.

Quis hœc crédat? who would believe this? [No one.]

Quid faceret alius? what else was he to do? [Nothing.]

Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48; who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue? [No one.]

RemarK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

2. In Indirect Questions.

467. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

Considerābimus quid fecerit (Indic. fecit), quid faciat (Indic. facit), quid factūrus sit (Indic. factet or factūrus est), Cf. C., Inv., i. 25, 38; we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).

Epaminondas quae salutem esset olipheus, C., Fin., ii. 30, 97; Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvus est?)

The Subjunctive may be original. See 265.

Ipse docet quid agam; Ov., M., iv. 428; he himself teaches (me) what to do (Quid agam? what am I to do?)

Quaerē tē ego Cornélium non defenderem, C., Vat., 2, 5; I inquired of you why I was not to defend Cornelius. (Cūr non défenderem? why was I not to defend?)
ANTICIPATION OF THE SUBJECT.

REMARKS.—1. Nesciō quis, nesciō quid, nesciō qui, nesciō quod, I know not who, what, which, may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction.

Nescio quid māius nāscitur Iliade, Prop., II. 32, 66; something, I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Iliad.

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative except in the Nom. and Acc. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences.

Interrogative: die quid regem, tell me what it is I am asking.

Relative: die quod reges, Teb., And., 754; tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).

Anticipation of the Subject.

468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (Prolepsis).

Nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit, Caelius (C., Fam., VIII. 10, 3); you know Mārcellus, what a slow creature he is.

Yes and No.

(469–70) 471. (a) Yes is represented:

1. By sānē, (literally) soundly, sānē quidem, yes indeed, etiam, even (so), vērō, of a truth, its, so, omnō, by all means, certō, surely, certō, for certain, admodum, to a degree, etc.

Aut etiam aut nōn respondēre potest, C., Ac., II. 32, 104; he can answer either yes or no.

2. By cēnscō, I think so; sciliest, to be sure.

Quid si etiam occentem hymenaeum? Cēnscō, Pl., Cas., 806; what if I should also sing a marriage-song? I think you had better.

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, vērō (principally with pronouns), sānē, prōrsus, etc.

Estīne? Sumus, are you? We are.

Dārne? Dō sānē, C., Leg., I. 7, 21; do you grant? I do indeed.

(b) No is represented:

1. By nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ċita, minimē, by no means, nihil, nothing, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative:

Nōn trāta es? Nōn sum trāta, Pl., Cas., 1007; you are not angry? I am not.
SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

472. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once; one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination (Parataxis) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination (Hypotaxis) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

_He became poor and we became rich_; the second clause is a coördinate clause.

_He became poor that we might be rich_; the second clause is a subordinate clause.

4. The clause which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. "_He became poor_" is the Principal Clause, "_that we might be rich_" is the Subordinate Clause.

COÖRDINATION.

473. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

Remark.—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (Asyndeton). Then the connection must determine the character.
Copulative Sentences.

474. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: et, -que, atque (ác), etiam, quoque.

475. Et is simply and, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

Fíxem et aquam nátrum dé siderat, Sen., E.M., 25, 4; bread and water (is what) nature calls for.

Próbitás laudátur et alget, Juv., I. 74; honesty is bepraised and—freezes.

Both—and is et—et: et vita et fortúna, C., Ph., X. 1, 3; both life and fortune.

476. -Que (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to complete or extend the first.

Senátus populusque Rómanus, C., Planc., 37, 90; the Senate and people of Rome.

Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander, L., XXXVI. 20, 5; there Alexander died and was buried.

Que—que; both—and, is found mainly in poetry and later prose.

477. Atque (compounded of ad and -que) adds a more important to a less important member.

Ác (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or h) is fainter than atque, and almost equivalent to et.

Intrá moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt hostés, S., C., 52, 35; within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.

A. Servus! Ego! B. Atque meus, Pl., Cas., 735; a slave? I? And mine to boot.

478. Etiam, even (now), yet, still, exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

Nóbis rēs familiaris etiam ad necessāria dōst, Cf. S., C., 20, 11; we lack means even for the necessaries of life.

479. Quoque, so also, complements (compare que) and always follows the words to which it belongs.

Cum patrī Timōthēpol populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dēdit, Cf. Nep., XIII. 2, 3; the people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).
COÖRDINATION.

Remark.—The difference between etiam and quoque is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

Grande et conspicuum nostro quoque tempore monstrum, Juv., iv. 115; a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.

480. Copulation by means of the Negative.—Instead of et and the negative, neque (ne) and the positive is the rule in Latin.

Opiniōnibus vulgī rapimur in errōrem nec vera cernimus, C., Leg., ii. 17, 43; by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.

Remarks.—1. Et—nōn, and—not, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

Paradigms:  And no one,  neque quisquam,  nor any one.
            And no,    neque illus,      nor any.
            And nothing, neque quidquam, nor anything.
            And never, neque umquam,    nor ever.

Iste neque désideravit quemquam, C., Ph., ii. 42, 109; and he missed no one.

481. i. Insertion and Omission of Copulative.—When multus, much, many, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: many renowned deeds, multa et præclara facinora; many good qualities, multae bonaque artes.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take et throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilioēs, C., Div., i. 41, 92; or, Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilioēs, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.

3. Et is further omitted in climaxes, in antitheses, in phrases, and in formulas.

Virī nōn est debilitāri dolère, frangī, succumbere, C., Fin., ii. 29, 95; it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.

Difficilis facialis, inœcandus acerbus, es idem, Mart., xii. 47, 1; crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, you are at once (310).

Patres Consīcripti, Fathers (and) Consīcript (Senators).

Iuppiter Optimus Máximus, Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.
Other Particles Employed.

482. Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal: tum—tum, then—then; aliás—aliás, at one time—at another; iam—iam, nunc—nunc, modo—modo, now—now; simul—simul, at the same time.

Tum Graecē—tum Latinē, partly in Greek, partly in Latin.

Horatius nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnēs, Cf. L., ii. 10, 8; Horatius now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.

Modo hāc, modo illāc, C., Att., xiii. 25, 3; now hither, now thither (hither and thither).

(2, 3) 4. Comparative: ut—ita, as—so:

Dolabellam ut Tarēnēs ita Lādocēnī arcēs dārunt, C., Fam., xii. 13, 4; as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella.

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative; and ut may be loosely translated although, while.

Hae omnia ut invitās ita non adversantibus patriciis trānsācta, L., iii. 55, 15; all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

5. Adversative: non modo, non sōlum, non tantum, not only; sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vērum etiam, but even, but also:

Non docērī tantum sed etiam delectārī volunt, Quint., iv. i, 57; they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot.

In the negative form, non modo non, not only not; sed ne—quidem, but not even: sed vix, but hardly.

Ego non modo tibi non trāscor, sed ne reprehendē quidem factum tuum, C., Sull., 18, 50; I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.

Remarks.—1. Instead of non modo (sōlum) non—sed ne—quidem, the latter non is generally omitted, if the two negative clauses have a verb in common; otherwise both negatives are expressed.

Pīōne consūle senātūi non sōlum invāre rem publicam, sed ne lægāre quidem licēbat, Cf. C., Pis., 10, 23; when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).

2. Noteworthy is nēdum, not (to speak of) yet, much less, which is used either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive.

Satrapa numquam sufferre ēius sāmpēs queat, nēdum tā possis, Ter., Heaut., 454; a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.
Adversative Sentences.

483. The Adversative particles are: autem, sed, verum, vero, at, atqui, tamen, ceterum. Of these only sed and tamen are really adversative.

484. Autem (post-positive) is the weakest form of but, and indicates a difference from the foregoing, a contrast rather than a contradiction.

It serves as a particle of transition and explanation (= moreover, furthermore, now), and of resumption (= to come back), and is often used in argument.

Modo accedens, tum autem recedens, C., N.D., ii. 40, 102; now approaching, then again receding.

Rum orbibis mecum pugnäs, ego autem e tē rationēs requīrō, C., N.D., iii. 5, 13; you fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.

Qued est bonum, omne laudēbile est; quod autem laudēbile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est, C., Fin., iii. 8, 27; everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.

Remark.—Autem commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic est or sunt occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So igitur and enim.

485. Sed (set) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote contradiction, partly in a weaker sense, to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one.

Non est vivere sed valēre vita, Mart., vi. 70, 15; not living, but being well is life.

Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dīcebat, C., Br., 77, 267; Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.

486. Verum, it is true, true, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to sed in its stronger sense.

Si certum est facere, faciam; verum nē post confessēs culpam in mē, Ter., Eun., 388; if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.
487. Vērō, *of a truth*, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

Platōnem Dion adeō admirātus est ut 5e totum et trāderet. Neque vērō minus Platō ἀδυνατός est Dūmē, NEP., x. 2, 3; Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.

488. *At, but*, introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation.

At vīdīte hominis intolerābilem audāciam! C., Dom., 44, 115; well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!

At vōbis male sit! Cat., iii. 13; and ill luck to you!

"At multis malis affectus!" Quis negat? C., Fin., v. 30, 92; "but he has suffered much?" Who denies it?

489. *Atquī, but at any rate, but for all that*, is stronger than *at*, and is used chiefly in argument.

Vīx cersedīle. Atquī sic habet, H., S., i. 9, 52; scarce credible. But for all that, 'tis so.

490. Tamen, *nevertheless*, is often combined with *at, vērum, sed*. It commonly stands first in a sentence.

Nātūram expellēs furore, tamen tāque recurrēt, H., Ep., i. 10, 24; you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.

Remark.—Nihilōminus (*nothing the less*), nevertheless, is used like *tamen*, by which it is occasionally strengthened.

491. Cēterum (*for the rest, but*), is used by the Historians as an adverative particle.

Duo imperātorēs, ipse parēs, cēterum opibus disparibus, S., Jug., 52, 1; two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.

**Disjunctive Sentences.**

492. The Disjunctive particles are *aut, vel, -ve, sive (seu).*

493. i. *Aut, or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.

Vincitis aut vincis, PROP., ii. 8, 8; you are conquered or conquering.
2. Aut is often corrective = or at least, at most, rather (aut saltem, aut potius).

Cuncti aut magna pars fidem mutávissent, S., Iug., 56, 5; all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.

Duo aut summum trés iuvenés, L., xxxiii. 5, 8; two, or at most three, youths.

3. Aut—aut, either—or.

Aut dix aut acipto caelest, Juv., iii. 295; either speak or take a kick.
Quaedam terrae partés aut frigore rigent aut fúruntur calóre, Cf. C., Tusc., I. 28, 68; some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.

494. 1. Vel (literally, you may choose), or, gives a choice, often with etiam, even, potius, rather.

Ego vel Cluvienus, Juv., I. 80; I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus.
Satís vel etiam nimium multa, C., Fam., iv. 14, 3; enough, or even too much.

Epictetus homô minimâ malus vel potius vir optimus, C., Tusc., ii. 19, 44; Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

2. Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or).

Miltiades dixit régem vel hostium ferré vel inopí paciés disbus interi- tárnum, Nep., I. 3, 4; Miltiades said that the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.

495. -Ve (enclitic) is a weaker form of vel.

Cúr tiam dubitemve locum défendere? Juv., I. 103; why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?
Alicud faciendi non faciendâe ratiâ, C., Inv., ii. 9, 31; the method of doing something or not doing it.
-Ve is often used with numerals in the sense at most.
Bis terve, C., Fam., ii. 1, 1; twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).

496. 1. Sive (seu), if you choose, gives a choice between two designations of the same object.

Urbem mātri seu novercae relinquuit, L., i. 3, 3; he leaves the city to his mother or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.
2. Sive—aive (seu—seu), whether—or (indifference).

Sive medium adhibueris sive non adhibueris non convalescet, C., Fat., 12, 29; whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.

Causal and Illative Sentences.

(497) 498. A. The Causal particles are nam, enim, namque, and etenim, for.

Nam is put at the beginning of a sentence; enim is post-positive: namque and etenim are not common, and usually occur in the first place.

Sunt mirifici conlociti sunt; nam oculi tamquam speculatiores altissimum locum obtinunt, C., N.D., ii. 56, 140; the senses are admirably situated; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post.

Piscis ova reliquum, facile enim ulla aqua sustinentur, C., N.D., iii. 51, 129; fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.

499. B. Illative particles are itaque, igitur, ergō; eō, hinc, inde, ideo, idcirco, quōcirca, propterēa, quāpropter, proin, proinde.

500. Itaque (literally, and so), therefore, is used of facts that follow from the preceding statement; it is usually put at the beginning of the sentence.

Namō anus est Phocionem liber sepelire; itaque & servis sepultus est, Cf. Nep., xix. 4, 4; no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.

501. Igitur, therefore, is used of opinions which have their natural ground in the preceding statement; it may precede or follow the first word.

Mihi nōn satisfacit. Sed quot homines tot sententiae; fallit igitur possimus, C., Fin., i. 5, 15; me it does not satisfy. But many men, many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.

502 (503). Ergō denotes necessary consequence, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than igitur.

Negat haec filiam mea esse; nōn ergō haec mater mea est, Pl., Ep., 590; she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.
SUBORDINATION.

Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

(504–7) 508. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by Ὅρατιόν Obliqua.

2. Ὅρατιόν Obliqua, or Indirect Discourse, is opposed to Ὅρατιόν Ἐκτο, or Direct Discourse, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

 четыре Obliqua, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied; in it the Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

Socrate dicere solēbat:

Ợ. Ὅρατιόν in eo quod sunt satis sunt sēloquentēs.
Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."

 principalColumn. Ὅρατιόν in eo quod sunt satis esse sēloquentēs, C., Or., 1. 14, 63.
Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.

3. The oblique relation may be confined to one clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called Partial Obliquity. See 541, 628.

Ợ. Ὅρατιόν nupta dixit: Fieō quod ire necesse est.
The bride says: I weep because I must needs go.

恁. Ὅρατιόν nupta dixit sē fīō quod ire necesse sit.
The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.

_OPENGL. Ὅρατιόν nupta fiet quod ire necesse est, Cf. Cat., lxii. 81.
The bride weeps because she must go.

F. Ὅρατιόν nupta fiet quod ire necesse sit.
The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).

4. Akin to Ὅ. Ὅ. is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives.

(629.)

Nōn dubitō quin nova nupta fīet quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go (sit is attracted from est).
Sequence of Tenses.

509. 1. In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive,
Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses; Historical, by Historical.
2. This rule is subject to several modifications:

1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that
   (a) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense as Past or according to its tense as Present. (239.)
   (b) The Pure Perfect may be felt as giving the past starting-point (Past), or the present completion (Present). (235.)
2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (518).
3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a varying Sequence (511, n. 2).
4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (365) often does not change, especially in the Indirect Question.

510.
All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses) are followed by the Present Subjunctive (for continued action);
All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses) are followed by the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action);
the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action);
the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing. The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the Impf. Indic. (I was doing) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511.
Pr. (Pure cognōscō, or Hist.), I am finding out, quid faciás, what you are doing;
Fut., cognōscam, I shall (try to) find out, quid fecerís, what you have done,
Pure Pf., cognōvī, I have found out (I know), what you have been doing (what you did),
Fut. Pf., cognōverūs, I shall have found out (shall know), what you were doing (before).
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Hist. Pr., cognescō, I am (was) finding out,

Imp., cognescēbam, I was finding out,

Hist. Pf., cognēvi, I found out,

Pluff., cognūveram, I had found out (I knew),

I am (was) finding out; what you were doing;
what you had done, what you had been doing,
what you were doing (before).

When the Subjunctive is original, we have:
cognescō, etc., I am finding out, quid facēs, what you are to do.
cognēvi, etc., I knew, quid facēre, what you were to do.

Principal Tenses.

Nihil rēfert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit, Cf. C., Or., 64, 217 (461).
Ut hūi Caesarem ōrant (historical), ut sibī parēat, Caes., B.G., vi. 9, 7 (546, 1).
Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit, H., Ep., i. i, 39 (552).
Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condat erit, Ov., Her., i0, 120 (631, 2).
Rūsticus exspectat dum défluat amnis, H., Ep., i. 2, 42 (572).
Ār deat ipse licet, tormentis gaudet amantis, Juv., vi. 209 (607).
Utrum nēsēs quam altē ascenderīs an prō nihilō id putās? C., Fam., x. 26, 3 (458).
Laudat Āfricnum Panasēius quod fuerit abstīnēns, C., Off., ii. 22, 76 (542).
Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam & turpitūdine revocārit, C., Cat., i. 9, 22 (552).

Historical Tenses.

Epaminondās quaesīvit salvusne esset cūpis, C., Fin., ii. 30, 97 (467).
Nōctū ambulābat in pūblīō Thebais clūsīs quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., Tusc., iv. 19, 44 (541).
Athēnānēs erant decem præstūres qui exercītū præcessent, Nep., i. 4, 4 (545).
Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermæ dēicerentur, Nep., vii. 3, 2 (518, r.).
Hannibal omnē prīusquam excēderet pūgnē erat expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4 (577).
Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam terrās ūmā nōminis sibi implēs-
set, L., i. 2, 5 (531, r. 1).
Cum Caesār Ancōnam occupāvisset, urbem reliquimus, C.,
Fam., xvi. 12, 2 (585).
Original Subjunctive Retained.

Ipes deset quid agam (original, agam); sis est et ab hoste doceiri, Ov., M., iv. 428 (319).
Quae est et ego Cornelium non defende rem (original, defende rem), C., Vit., 2, 5 (487).
Missunt Delph\'ae consulum quid facerent (original, faciamus), Nep., ii. 2, 6 (518).

Remarks.—1. The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense (Past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions.

Agunt gratias quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus con-
sanguineis contulerint queruntur, Caes., B.C., i. 74, 2; they return
thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had
crossed swords with kinsmen.

(2) 8. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of sequence:

Quae subsidia haberēs et habēre possēs, exposul, Q. Cicero, 4, 13; what
supports you have or can have, I have set forth.

512. Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr.</td>
<td>edunt</td>
<td>they are eating</td>
<td>ut vivant, that they may live (to live).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Prf.</td>
<td>edūrent</td>
<td>they have eaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>edent</td>
<td>they will eat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Prf.</td>
<td>ederint</td>
<td>they will have eaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>edēbant</td>
<td>they were eating</td>
<td>ut viverent, that they might live (to live).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluff.</td>
<td>ederant</td>
<td>they had eaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. Prf.</td>
<td>edūrant</td>
<td>they ate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spectābunt veniunt, veniunt spectantur ut ipsae, Ov., A.A., i. 99 (435).

Gallinæ pennis fovent pullæ nē frigore laedantur, Cf. C., N.D., ii. 52, 129 (545).

Lēcem brevem esse oportet quō facilitus ab imperitis teneatur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38 (545).

Nē praemisit domum haece ut nūntiēm uxōri suae, Pl., Am., 195; he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.

Laelius veniēbat ad eōnam ut satiēret désideria nātūrae, C., Fin., ii. 8, 26 (545).

Phaethōn optāvit ut in currum patris tollētūr, C., Off., iii. 25, 94 (546, 1).
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Remark.—Parenthetical final sentences like ut ita dicam, nē errēris, are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

Nē longior sim, valē, C., Fam., xv. 19; not to be tedious, farewell!
Nē ignōres, virtūte Nerōnis Arēmnīus occidit, H., Ep., i. 12, 25; that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valor of Nero that the Armenian fell.

513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Result.—In sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative:

Present Tense:

Siciliam Verrēs per triennium āta vexāvit ut ea restitut in antiquum statum nūllo modo possit, C., Verr., i. 4, 12; Verres so harassed Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.

Perfect Tense (Pure):

Mūrena Asiam sic oblit ut in eā neque avarītiae neque luxuriae vestigium reliquerit, C., Mur., 9, 20; Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery (there is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist):

Equītēs hostium scriber cum equitātō nostrō oōnīflixērunt tamen ut nostri eōs in silvās colōsa cesserunt, Cæs., B.G., v. 15, 1; the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills.

Remark.—After accidit, contiguit, and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indic. form.

Accidit ut anā nocte omās Hermae déserentur, Nep., vii. 3, 2; it happened that in one night all the Hermæ were thrown down.

Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, and these relations are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation; as follows:
RULE I.—(a) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the *Future Perfect* is represented by the *Perfect* Subjunctive; but the *Future* is represented by the *Present* Subjunctive, only when the action occurs *at the same time* as that of the leading verb.

| Cognoscam,  | quid facias, what you are doing (will be doing). |
| I shall (try to) find out, |
| Cognovero,  | quid feceris, what you have done (will have done). |
| I shall have found out (shall know), |

(b) But whenever the dependent Future occurs *after* the leading Future, the *Periphrastic* Tense must be employed.

| Cognoscam,  | quid facturus sis, what you are going to do (what you will do). |
| I shall (try to) find out, |
| Cognovero,  | what you are going to do (what you will do). |
| I shall have found out (shall know), |

[Considerabimus], [we shall consider].

A. *Quid fecerit aut quid ipsi acciderit aut quid dixerit, what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. *Ant quid faciat, quid ipsi accidat, quid dicas, or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. *Ant quid facturus sit, quid ipsi castum sit, quae sit usurus, eriti, C., Inv., i. 25, 36; or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

515. RULE II.—After the other Tenses, the *Future* relation is expressed by the Active *Periphrastic* Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

| Cognoscō,  | quid facturus sis (what you are going to do), what you will do. |
| I am finding out, |
| Cognōvi,  | |
| I have found out (know), |

| Cognoscēbam,  | quid facturus essēs (what you were going to do), what you would do. |
| I was trying to find out, |
| Cognōveram,  | |
| I had found out, |

Tam ea res est facilius ut innumerābilis nātūra mundūs effectūra sit, officiat, effectūrit, Cf. C., N.D., i. 21, 53; the thing is so easy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.
Incertum est quam longa omnique nostrum vita futura sit, C., Verr., i. 58, 158; it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).

Antea dubitabam venturae esset legiones; nunc mihi non est dubium quin venturae non sint, C., Fam., ii. 17, 5; before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no); now I have no doubt that they will not come.

Remark.—(1, 2) 8. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, etc.), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

Galli, nisi perfrægerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Römāni, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium expectant, Caes., B.G., vii. 85, 3; the Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).

516. Sequence of Tenses in Oration Obliqua: In Oration Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In clāve erat scriptum nisi domum revertētur sē capitis cum damnāturēs, Nep., iv. 3, 4; it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. (Oration Rōcta: nisi domum revertēris, tē capitis damnābimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death).

Pynthia praecipit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id si fecissent (O. B., sēcērītis) incepta prōspera futūra (O. B., erunt), Nep., i. 1, 3; the Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.

Lacedaemonii, Philippō ministrante per litterās sē omnia quae omnēs ōmnēs prohibērunt (O. B., omnēs omnēs prohibērunt) prohibērunt, quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam mori prohibērunt (O. B., prohibēra), C., Tusc., v. 14, 42; the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.

517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

Ne compēne comēs quia sēs ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679; do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.

Excedentibus ingenii situs dēsuerit ars què cīvēm regant quam què hostem supereor, L., ii. 43, 10; great genius would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Quid mihi prohiberet Epicurum esse, si probarem quae ille diceret? C., Fin., i. 8, 27; what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)?

Quae vita fuisse Priamo si ab adolescentia seisse quae eventus sequerentur? C., Div., ii. 9, 23; what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?

REMARKS.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjv. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence:

Magna culpa Pelops qui non docuerit filium quatenus esset quidque curandum, C., Tusc., i. 44, 107; greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.

518. Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.
—When a clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the sequence is Historical, if either the Finite verb is Past or the dependent verb represents a Past; otherwise the sequence is that of the Primary tenses.

Dicit sibi interrogàre (original interrogò),
He says that he is asking,

\begin{align*}
\text{quid agas,} & \quad \text{what you are doing.} \\
\text{quid ageris,} & \quad \text{what you have done.} \\
\text{quid seturum sit,} & \quad \text{what you are going to do (will do).}
\end{align*}

Dicit sibi interrogasse (original interrogòvi),
He says that he asked,

\begin{align*}
\text{quid agerès,} & \quad \text{what you were doing.} \\
\text{quid égissès,} & \quad \text{what you had done.} \\
\text{quid seturum esset,} & \quad \text{what you were going to do (would do).}
\end{align*}

Dicit sibi interrogàre (original interrogò),
He said that he was asking,

\begin{align*}
\text{quid agat,} & \quad \text{what he is doing,} \\
\text{quid égerit, what he has done,} \\
\text{quid seturum what he is going to do (will do),} \\
\text{quid ageret, what he was doing,} \\
\text{quid égisset, what he had done,} \\
\text{quid seturum esset, what he was going to do,}
\end{align*}

nòn respondit,
he gave no answer.

nòn respondet,
he gives no answer.

nòn respondit,
REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelës ait bésticls quædam násæf quae
finum diem vivant, C., Tusc., i. 39, 94 (650).

Satis mihi multa verba fácisse videor quærë esset hóc bellum necessäríum,
C., Imp., 10, 27; I think I have said enough (to show) why
this war is necessary.

Apelles pictóres esse pecoráre dísbat quic nón sensérunt quid esset
satis, C., Or., 22, 78; Apelles used to say that those painters blundered
who did not perceive what was (is) enough.

Missíunt Delphs døsultum quid facerent, Nep., ii. 2, 6; they
sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do. See 265.

519. Original Subjunctives in Dependence.—The Poten-
tial of the Present or Future after a Past tense goes into
the Past; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465).
On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be re-
tained even after a Present tense (467). See also 597, n. 4.

Videò causás esse permultás quae Titum Roscium impellerent,
C., Rosc. Am., 33, 92; I see that there are very many causes which
might have impelled Titus Roscius.

Quærò & tò sér Cornelium nón défenderem, C., Vat., 2, 5; I
inquire of you, why I was not to defend Cornelius!

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE
SENTENCES.

520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with
reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the
subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the
one and then to the other.

521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when
reference is made to the thought or will of that subject;
hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in
Sentences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of
the Oblique Relation.

Sentit animus sè ví suæ, nón alius movèrit, C., Tusc., i. 23, 55; the
mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.

Pompéius sè mè petivit ut sècum et apud sè essæ cotidía, Cf. C., Att.,
v. 6, 1; Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.

Paetus omnè librè quæ fràter suus relinquisset mihi dónavit, C., Att.,
iu. i. 19; Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his
brother had left (quæ fràter èius relinquérat, would be the narrator’s
statement).
REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of *is*, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb; otherwise the Reflexive:

*Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo habère tur filius, C., Rep., ii. 21, 38; Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

But *Tanta opibus Etruria erat ut iam terrae fama nominis sui impleret, L., i. 2, 5; so great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled the land with the reputation of her name.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent. and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause. (309, 2.)

*A Caesare invitor sibi ut sim légatus, C., Att., ii. 18, 8; I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Note the freer use of *sums* (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulae (309, 3), as *sē recipere, to withdraw, etc.*

*Rōmānī sūf colligendī hostibus facultātem non relinquunt, Caes., B.G., iii. 6, 1; the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one’s self, etc.* (309, 1): *Deforme est sē sē ipsum praedīcāre, C., Off., i. 38, 137; it is unseemly to be bragging about one’s self.*

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions, *is* is the rule.

*Socratēs inhonestam sibī accedit orĕtīnem quam si Lysiās reō componērat, Quint., ii. 15, 30; Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Élius et Sui.

522. *Alexander moriēns ënulum sum dederat Perdiccas, Nep., xviii. 2, 1; Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

*Perdiccas accipserat ënulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.*

*Quārē Alexander déclāraverat sē rēgnum ei commendāsse, thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō Perdiccas coniōsērat sūm rēgnum sibī commendāsse, from this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō omnēs coniōsērant sūm rēgnum ei commendāsse, from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Perdiccas pēstulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent cum Alexander ënulum sibī dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

*Amid pēstulāvērunt ut omnēs sūm rēgum habērent cum Alexander ënulum et dedisset, (his) friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)*

*Ita sē gesserat Perdiccas ut ei rēgnum ab Alexandrō commendārētūr, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.*
OBJECT SENTENCES.

523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

1. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

(524) 525. 1. Quod, the fact that, the circumstance that, in that, introduces explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

Addo haec quod perferri litterae nullae condiciione potuissent, Pollio (C., Fam. x. 31, 4); add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through.

Præterea quod eam sibi domum deligit, C., Cluent., 66, 188; I pass over the fact that she chose that house for herself.

Bene facis quod me adiuvas, C., Fin. iii. 4, 16; you do well (in) that you help me.

Accidit perincendio quod sum nusquam vidisti, C., Att. i. 17, 2; it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere.

REMARK.—With several of the above-mentioned verbs ut can be employed, as well as quod (ut, of the tendency—quod, of the fact):

Ad Apollini Claudii senectutem accedebat ut etiam caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16; to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind, or, quod caecus erat.

Accidit quod patrem plus etiam quam ipsa se sit amœ, C., Att., xiii. 21, 7; besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.

2. Quod, in that, as to the fact that, whereas, introduces explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb.

Mihi quidem videntur hominês hæc re maximè bestiis praestàre, quod loqui possunt, C., Inv. i. 4; to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech.

Nil habet Insulæ paupertas dàrius in se quam quod (= id quod) ridiculis hominês facti, Juv., iii. 152; unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.

3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Õratiō Obliqua (508, 3).

Hœc tæ superfœrem esse putabas quam Laelium quod tæ civitatem Pergamœnæ laudaret, C., Flacc. 30, 74; in this you thought that you were superior to Laelius, that the state of Pergamum praised you.
REMARK.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take quod with the Indic. or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 539.

II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

(526) 527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (verba sentiendi et declarandi), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive:

Thalēs aquam dixit esse initium rūrum, C., N.D., i. 10, 25; Thales said that water was the first principle of things.

Medici causā morbi inventāe curātiōnēm esse inventam putant, C., Tusc., iii. 10, 23; physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.

Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et constricture nidōs, C., Or., ii. 6, 23; we see that birds fashion and build nests.

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ö. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Infinitive.

Refriēturōs carcerem minābantur, L., vi. 17, 6; they threatened to break open the jail.

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive. This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising.

Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum esse, I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.

Prōmitterat sē ventūrum esse, he promised to (that he would) come.

5. In some authors Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object perceived or represented (536).

Polyphemōnum Homērōs cum arīte conloquentem facit, C., Tusc., v. 39, 115; Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.

But the Inf. is the rule for the language, and must of course be used, when the Participle is lacking.

Octavium dolēre confici vidi, C., Fin., ii. 28, 98; I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.

Nominative with Infinitive.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving may be construed either personally or impersonally:

1. In the Simple tenses personal construction is preferred; except crēditur, it is believed.

2. In the Compound tenses the impersonal construction is preferred.
Thus, instead of
Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, _they say that Homer was blind,_

we should have,
Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, _Homer is said to have been blind,_
or,
Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, _C., Tusc., v. 39, 114; there is a tradition that Homer was blind._

**Aristaeus inventor olei esse dicitur, C., Verr., iv. 57, 128; Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil.**

**Terentī fābellae putābantur & Laelīō serībī, C., Att., vii. 3, 10; Terence’s plays were thought to be written by Laelius.**

But:
**Venerem Adōniī nūpisse prōdītum est, C., N.D., iii. 23, 59; it is recorded that Venus married Adonis.**

**Philōnem existimandum est disertum fuisse, C., Or., i. 14, 62; we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.**

Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sēntiendi et Dēclārandī.

(529) **530.** After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,
The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

**Remark.**—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: _I have been studying, I had been studying._ Hence, the Impf. Indic. (_I was studying_) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb. See 510, R.

**In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.**

**531.**

**Contemporaneous Action.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P. T. Dīcit: tē errāre, <em>He says, that you are going wrong,</em></td>
<td>tē dēcipī, <em>that you are (being) deceived (296, R).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. T. Dīdībat: tē errāre, <em>He was saying, that you were going wrong,</em></td>
<td>tē dēcipī, <em>that you were (being) deceived.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

Prior Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errāsse,
He says, that you have gone wrong,
that you went wrong,
that you have been going wrong,
tē deceptum esse,
that you have been (are) deceived,
that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.),
that people have been deceiving you.

H. T. Dicēbat: tē errāsse,
He was saying, that you had gone wrong,
that you went wrong,
that you had been going wrong,
tē deceptum esse,
that you had been deceived,
that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.),
that people had been deceiving you.

Subsequent Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errātūrum esse,
He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) going wrong,
tē deceptum Iri,
that you (are going to) will be deceived.

H. T. Dicēbat: tē errātūrum esse,
He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,
tē deceptum Iri,
that you were going to (would) be deceived.

Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the Periphrastic Future) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the passive than the Fut. Inf. pass. of the paradigms.

P. T. Dicit: fore (futūrum esse) ut errās (metuās),
fore ut discipiāris (metuāris),
fore (futūrum esse) ut errāveris (rare),
fore ut deceptus sis (rare), usually deceptum fore (not futūrum esse).

H. T. Dicēbat: fore (futūrum esse) ut errās (metuērēs),
errāsseās (rare),
fore ut dēcipērēris (metuērēris),
dēceptum fore (rarely: fore ut dēceptus esse).

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

Si vis mē flāre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, H., A.P., 102; if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.

Utrum Millōnis corporis a Pythagorae tibī mālis viris ingenii dāri? C., Cat.M., 10, 33; whether (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind?
ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

Remarks.—(1) 2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed:

Et iam mallem equos numquam tetigisse paternos, Ov., M., II. 182; and now he could have wished rather never to have (that he had never) touched his father's horses.

3. On the construction of this class of verbs with ut, etc., see 546.

Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

Salvum tē advēnsisse gaudeō, Ter., Ph., 286; I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe). But quod salvus advēnisti, that you have arrived safe; quod salvus advēnéris, that (as you say) you have arrived safe.

Inferiores non dolere débent sē & suis dignitàte superāri, C., Lael., 20, 71; inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends).

Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

Hem, mea lux, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexāri, C., Fam., xiv. 2, 3; ah, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear.

Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecō loquī? Plin., Ep., iv. 3, 5; a Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek.)

Remarks.—1. Different is quod, which gives the ground.

Ei mihi quod nūllīs amor est sānābīlis herbīs, Ov., M., i. 523; woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.

2. On ut, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558.

Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

Est infiniūtūm rēgēm reum capitis esse, C., Dei., i. 1; it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.
Facinus est vincire civem Römēnum, C., Verr., v. 66, 170; it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains.

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneatur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38; it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.

Remarks.—(1) 2. Oportet, it is proper, is always, and necesse est, must needs, is usually followed by the Subjunctive. So, also, many other phrases with ut. (See 558, 4; 557.)

Necesse also takes the Dat. of the Person:
Ut culpem alii, tibi mē laudāre necesse est, Ov., Her., 12, 181; let others blame, but you must give me praise.

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is usually put in the same case as the indirect object: in standard prose chiefly with licet, it is left (free), permitted.

Licit esse Thūsī Thēmistsōllī, C., Tusc., i. 15, 38; Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.

The Acc. is the rule if the Dat. is not expressed.

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum, Prop., ii. 9, 46; I shall be alone since I may not be thine.

Object Sentences Represented by the Participle.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

Catōnem vīdi in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfusum libris, C., Fin., iii. 2, 7; I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him.

Prōdigas nōn sentit persecutum fēminā cēsum, Juv., vi. 362; the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.

Saepe illam audīvi fūrtīvē vōce loquentem, Cat., lxvii. 41; I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone.

537. The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired.

Si quī voluptātibus dūcuntur missīs faciant honōres, C., Sest., 66, 138; if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honors (at once and forever).

Hunc mandēs si quīd rēcē cūrātum vēlis, Ter., Ad., 372; you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.
CAUSAL SENTENCES.

Causal Sentences with quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō.

(538–9) 540. Causal sentences with quod, quia, because, quoniam, quandō, since, take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

Torquatus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat necātī isset, S., C. 52, 30; Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pugnāset = because, as Torquatus said or thought].

Quia nātūra mātāri nōn potest idcirco vēras amicitiae sempiternae sunt, C., Lael., 9, 32; because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum, Prop., II. 9, 46; I shall be alone since I may not be thine.

Voluptās sāmovenda est quandō ad mātūra quaedam nātī sumus, Cf. C., Fin., v. 8, 21; pleasure is to be put aside because we are born for greater things.

Sequitur ut liberātūs sint, quandōquidem tertium nihil potest esse, C., Ph., II. 13, 31; it follows that they are liberators, since there can be no third alternative.

541. Causal sentences with quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulābat in públicō Thesmòcleas quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., Tusc., iv. 19, 44; Thesmocles used to walk about in public at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.

Ne compōne omēs quia sīs ventūrus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679; do not arrange (your) locks, because "you are going to see her."

Quoniam ipse prō sē diœcre nōn posset, verba fācit frāter ēius Stēagoras, Nep., I. 7, 5; "as [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Steagoras, made a speech. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Steagoras.)

Remark.—A rejected reason (if not a fact) is introduced by nōn quod (rarely quia) with the Subjv. (as being the false suggestion of another person). But when it is itself a fact the Indicative may be used. The corresponding affirmative is given by sed quia (less often quod) with the Indicative. Nōn quia sometimes occurs for nōn quod nōn.

Subjunctive:

Fugīlēs in ēactus caestibus ingemīscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundē vōce omne corpus intensūrur venītique plāgā vehementior, C., Tusc., II. 23, 56; boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blow comes with a greater rush.
Malēres nostri in dominum dē servō quaerī nōn dūrunt; nōn quīm possēt vārum invenīr, sed quīa vīdēbātur indignum esse, C., Mil., 22, 59; our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though they thought) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.

Indicative:

Sum nōn dīcam miser, sed certī exercitus, nōn quīa multīs dēbō sed quīa sēpe concurrunt aīqūrum bēne dē mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentionēs, C., Planc., 32, 78; I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many (though this is true), but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict.

QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

542. Quod is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already: 540, 541.

Indicative:

Gaudē quod spectant oculti tē mille loquentem, H., Ep., I, 6, 19; rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.

Dolet nūlī quod tū nūne stomachāris, C., ad Br., I, 17, 6; it pains me that you are angry now.

Tībī grātīs sōgō, quod mē omnī molestīs liberāsti, C., Fam., xiii, 62; I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.

Subjunctive:

Gaudēs miles quod viscerit hostem, Ov., Tr., II, 49; the soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.

Laudē Afrīcānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstīnēs, C., Off., II, 22, 76; Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent.

Nāmō est trātōrem quod Latīnō loquerūtur admirātus, C., Or., III, 14, 53; no one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.

Sōcratēs acquisītus est quod corrumpet invēntūm, Quint., IV, 4, 5; Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.

REMARK.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Infinitive; see 533. But in expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, quod is more common.

Grātūlor ingenium nōn latuīsse tuum, Ov., Tr., I, 9, 54; I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain hidden.

Isocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dārit, Qunt., Ill, 8, 9; Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.
SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle ut (how, that), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative.

Final: nē (ut nē), Consecutive: ut nōn, that not.

nē quis,

nē ālīus,

nē ānumquam, (nē quandē),

nē āsquam, (nēcubi,)

nē aut—aut, (ut nēve—nēve), ut neque—neque, that neither—nor.

† i :  FINAL SENTENCES.

544. Final sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

This form may be translated by (in order) to; sometimes by that may, that might, that, with the Subjunctive and the like.

Oportet ēisse, ut vīvēs, nōn vivere ut edēs, [C.], ad. Her., iv. 28, 39; you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (verba studii et voluntātis, verbs of Will and Desire); Complementary Final Sentences.

This form is often rendered by to, never by in order to, sometimes by that and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

Vōlō ut mihi respondēs, C., Vat., 7, 17; I wish you to answer me.
Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are:
Verbs of Hindering.
Peculiar in their sequence are:

III. Verbs of Fearing.

Remark.—The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed:
(1) By the Relative qui with the Subjunctive. (630.)
(2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) causa or gratia. (428, r. 2.)
(3) By ad with Gerund and Gerundive. (432.)
(4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429.)
(5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, etc. (430.)
(6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)
(7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (438, r. 2.)
(8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, r. 1.)

I. Pure Final Sentences.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by:

1. Ut (uti), (how) that, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.) Negative: ut nē.
2. Quō = ut eō, that thereby; with comparatives, that the...
3. Nē, that not, lest, continued by nēve, neu. (444.)

Ut amāris, amābilis estō, Ov., A.A., ii. 107; that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.

Athenienses creant decem praetores qui exercitum praeessent, Nep., i. 4, 4; the Athenians make ten generals to command their army.

Laelius veniēbat ad ēnam ut satisficet desideria nature, C., Fin., ii. 8, 25; Laelius used to go to table to satisfy the cravings of nature.

Lègem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneatur, Sen., E.M., 94, 38; a law ought to be brief that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.

Gallaeae pennae fovent pullēs, nē frigore laedantur, Cf. C., N.D., ii. 52, 129; hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold.

Dionysius, nē collum teneātur committeret, tondē filiēs suās docuit, C., Tusc., v. 20, 58; Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave.
REMARKS.—(1) 2. Nōna is used after ut when a particular word is negativē:

Confer tō ad Mānlium, ut nōn eōctus ad aīliēs sed invitātus ad tuēs
esse videāris, C., Cat., i. 9, 23; betake yourself to Manlius, that you
may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited
guest to your own (friends).

II. Complementary Final Sentences.

A. Verbs of Will and Desire.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring (verba
studii et voluntātis).


Volō ut mihi respondēas, C., Vat., 7, 17; I wish you to answer me.

Phaethōn optāvit ut ān currum pateris tollērētur, C., Off., iii. 25, 94;
Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father’s chariot.

Ubi Caesarēm ōrant, ut sībī parcēat, Caes., B.G., vi. 9, 7; the Ubii
beg Caesar to spare them.

Exīgis ut Priamus nātōrum funēre lūdēt, Ov., Tr., v. 12, 7; you exact
that Priam sport at (his) sons’ funeral.

So also *any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or
Demanding.

Pythiā respondit ut moenibus lignēs sē mānīrent, Nep., ii. 2, 6; the
Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

2. Negative: nē, ut nē; continued by nēve (nēn), and not.

Caesar sūs imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlōn in hostēs rēlicerent, Caes.,
B.G., i. 46, 2; Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any
military at all at the enemy.

Pompēius sūs praedixerat ut Caesaris impētum exciperent nēve sē locō
mōvērent, Caes., B.C., ill. 92, 1; Pompey had told his men before-
hand to receive Caesar’s charge and not to move from their position.

REMARKS.—1. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as
verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must
be used. The English translation is that, and the Indic.: volō, I will
have it (maintain), moneō, I remark, persuādeo, I convince, dēcernō, I
decide, ëgō, I conclude.

Moneō artem sine assiduitāte dīscendi nōn multum iuvāre, Cf. [C.], ad
Her., i. 1, 1; I remark that art without constant practice in speaking
is of little avail.
Vix cuiquam persuadēbatur Graecē omni essūrē Romānēs, L., xxxiii. 32, 3; scarce any one could be persuaded (made to believe) that the Romans would retire from all Greece.

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without ut, is employed.

Maliō tē sapientiores hostis metuat quam stupe divēs laudent, L., xxii. 39, 20; I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.

Vellem nē ad oenam invitāsēs, C., Fam., xii. 4, 1; would that you had invited me to your dinner-party!

3. Some of these verbs have also the Infinitive; so regularly iubeō, I bid, and vētā, I forbid (423, r. 6).

B. Verbs of Hindering.

(547) 548. Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take nē with the Subjunctive, if they are not negatived.

Impedior nē plūra dicam, C., Sull., 33, 92; I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).

“Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?” — Gal., v. 7.

Servītūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mūrer meum malum, Pl., Pers., 621; my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine.

Histiaeōs nē rerē cōnfligerētur obtitītī, Nep., i. 3, 5; Histiaeus opposed the thing’s being done.

Rēgulus sententiam nē diceret recūsāvit, C., Off., iii. 27, 100; Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.

Remark.—Cavēre, followed by ut, means to be sure to; by nē or ut nē, to see to it that not; by nē, to take precautions against. When nē is omitted, cavē, cavētū, with the Subjv. form circumlocutions for the negative Imperative (371, 2). So with vidē ut, nē.

Vidē nē (nē nōn), see to it lest, is often used as a polite formula for dubīō an (457, 2), I am inclined to think. Crēdēre omnia vidē nē nōn sit necessē, C., Div., ii. 13, 81.

549. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take quōminus (= ut eō minus), that thereby the less, with the Subjunctive.

Aētās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendi studia teneāmus, C., Cat., M., 17, 60; age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.

Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus? C., N.D., i. 34, 95; what is in the way of God’s being happy?

Caesar cōgnīvit per Afrāniīm stare quōminus proellī dimicāretur, Cæs., B.C., i. 41, 3; Caesar found that it was Afranius’s fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand-still).
III. Verbs of Fearing.

550. 1. Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

2. With verbs of Fearing:

Ne, lest, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared;

Ut (ne non) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared:

Ne non is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

Vereor ne hostis veniat, I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come. (I wish he may not come.)

Vereor ne hostis venerit, I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.

Vereor ut amicus veniat, I fear (how my friend can come) lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come. (I wish he may come.)

Vereor ut amicus venerit, I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.

Non vereor ne amicus non veniat, I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.

Non vereor ne amicus non venerit, I do not fear that my friend has not come.

Timeo ne tibi nihil praefer laetantias quaem reddere, C., Planc., 42, 101; I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears.

Timeo ut sustineas labores, C., Fam., xiv. 2, 3; I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.

Non vereor ne tua virtus optinat hominum non respondeat, Cf. C., Fam., ii. 5, 2; I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.

Metu ne id censelit egerimus quod non facile explicare possimus, C., Fam., xiv. 12; I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain.
CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

551. 1. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions.

2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes:
   I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle: Pure Consecutive Sentences.
   II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb: (a) after verbs of Effecting; (b) after negative verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty; (c) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

1. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

552. Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by

1. Ut (uti), that, so that, and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).

2. Ut—nōn, that, so that, as—not, continued by neque, nec (543, 4).

3. Quīn = ut nōn, after a negative sentence (555).

Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ē turpitudine revocārit, C., Cat., 1. 9, 22; you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.

Tanta vis prohibētēs est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligentius, C., Lael., 9, 29; so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.

Nēmō adeō feros est ut nōn mitāscere posse pīt, H., Ep., 1. 1, 39; no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.

Nil tām difficīle est quin quaerendū īnvestigāri possīt, Tēr., Heaut., 675; naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.

Remarks.—1. Notice especially the impersonal tantum abest, āfuit (rarely aberat)—ut—ut.

Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verēat nē homīni sit nīhil bonum alīud, C., Tusc., 1. 31, 76; so far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.

The personal construction is extremely rare.

Āgesilāus tantum āfuit ab insolentīō glōriae ut commiserētūs sit fortūnam Graeciae, Nēp., XVII, 5, 2; Agesilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece.
The second ut may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow independently; Tantum aberat ut hinc libros scriberent: vix singulös confessurunt, C., Att., xiii. 21, 5; so far were they from writing two copies of each book, they with difficulty finished up one.

2. Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idoneus, fit, take a consecutive sentence with qui. Occasionally dignus and indignus take ut.

Qui modestè paret, videtur qui aliquando imperet dignus esse, C., Leg., iii. 2, 5; he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day.

3. Ita (and sic) are sometimes used to give a restriction or a condition (= provided, on condition); in this case the negative is nē.

Ita probanda est manusstitudo ut adhibeatur rei publicae causa severitas, C., Off., 1. 25, 88; mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.

Ita tī instac tua missectā nē me admiscēas, Ter., Heaut., 783; mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.

4. Ut nōn is often = without, and the English verbal in -ing:

Mālet existimāri bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur, C., Fin., 22, 71; he will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).

II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

A. Verbs of Effecting.

558. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is nōn or nē; the sequence varies between final and consecutive.

Such verbs are:

1. Verbs of Causation: facere, efficere, perficere, I make, effect, achieve; assequi, cōsequi, I attain, accomplish, and many others. (Sequence Final.)

Effidiam ut intellegētis, C., Ctuent., 3, 7; I will cause you to understand.

Sed perficere, ut Crassus haec quae coartāvit nōbis explicit, C., Or., 1. 35, 163; but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed.

Negatives:

Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ut nōn moriar nōn potestis, Plin., Ep., iii. 16, 11; you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.

Effidiam posthāc nē quemquam vocē laecēs, V., Ec., 3, 51; I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song.
Facere ut is often little more than a periphrasis; especially in the forms fac ut and factū, factit (both peculiar to Comedy).

Fortūna vestra factit ut trea meae temperem, L., xxxvi. 35, 3; your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).

Invitus (325, r. 6) factū ut recorder ruñas rei públice, C., Vat., 9, 21; (it is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.

2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting (Sequence Final):

Tenēmus memorī Catulm esse coëtum ut vita sē ipse privāret, C., Or., iii. 3, 9; we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life.

Illud nātūra non patitur, ut aliōrum spoliās nostrās cōpiās angēūmus, C., Off., iii. 5, 22; nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.

3. Passive verbs of Effecting, and their equivalents, namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following (Sequence Consecutive, but see 513, r.).

Such verbs are cōnācitūr, efficitūr, sit, accīdit, contīgītūr, ēvenīt, it happens, ēstātūr, it occurs, sequītur, it follows, and many others. So also est, it is the case.

Ex quō efficitūr, nōn ut volūptās nē (the design of the arguer) sit volūtās, sed ut volūtās nōn (the result of the argument) sit sumnum bonum, C., Fin., ii. 8, 24; from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good.

Potest fieri ut is unde tē audīsse dixiō frātus dixerit, C., Or., ii. 70, 285; (it) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.

Persaepe ēvenīt ut ētūltās cum honestāte certet, C., Part. Or., 25, 69; it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.

4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with est, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned (Sequence Consecutive).

The Infinitive is much more common after neuter adjectives.

Ad Appī Claudī senectūtem acēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset, C., Cat. M., 6, 16; to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.

Eī ne integrum quidem erat ut ad iūstitiānum remigrāret, C., Tusc., v. 21, 62; for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice.

Remark.—Necessē est, it is necessary, generally, and oportet, it behooves, always omit ut:

Leuctrīca pāgna immortālīs sit necessē est, Nēp., xv. io, 2; the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.

Mōsum morīris oportet, Prop., ii. 8, 25; you must die with me.
B. Verbs of Hindering.

(554) 555. Quin is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negativized or questioned.

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence Final).

Vix nunc obstiterit illis quin lanient mundum, Ov., M., i. 58; they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.

Antiochus non sē tenuit quin contra suum doctorem librum ederet, C., Ac., ii. 4, 12; Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

Non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius, Ter., And., 172; there is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.

Quis dubitet (=nemo dubitet) quin in virtute divitiae sint? C., Parad., vi. 2, 48; who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue?

Non dubitari debet quin fuerint ante Homœrum poetae, C., Br., 18, 71; it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.

Remarks.—1. Of course dubitō and non dubitō may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467). On dubitō an, see 457, 2.

2. Non dubitō, with the Inf., usually means I do not hesitate to:

Non dubitem dicere omnēs sapientes semper esse beatum, C., Fin., v. 32, 95; I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.

556. Quin, equivalent to ut non, may be used after any negative sentence (Sequence Consecutive).

Here it may often be translated "without."

Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possit, Ter., Heaut., 675; naught is so hard but it can be tracked out by search.

Nullum adhuc intermissi diem quin aliquid ad te litterarum darem, C., Att., vii. 15, 1; I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).

Remark.—Note the combination (facere) non possum quin, I cannot but, and similar combinations, such as non abset quin, etc.

Non possum quin exclamem, Pl., Trin., 705; I cannot but (I must) cry out.

Paulum est quin Fabius Varum interfloret, Caes., B.C., ii. 35, 2; there was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).
Explanatory Ut.

557. A Consecutive Sentence with ut is often used to
give the contents or character of a preceding substantive,
adjective, or pronoun.

An quodamatem fuisse homini esse ut cruciat? Ter., Heaut., 81; of what
good is it to any man to torture himself?

Est miserorum ut malevolentae sint atque invidieant bonis, Pl., Capt.,
583; the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-
to-do.

Ne meum ad tibi ut mittam gratias, Pl., Asin., 190; nor is it my style
to let her go to you as a gracious gift.

Id est proprium civitatis ut sit libera, C., Off., ii. 22, 78; it is the
peculiar privilege of a state, to be free.

Tutum in eo esse, ut tibi imperes, C., Tusc., ii. 22, 58; all depends
upon this (one thing), your self-command.

Exclamatory Questions.

558. Ut with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory
Questions, usually with the insertion of -ne.

Egone ut tibi interpellam? C., Tusc., ii. 18, 42; I interrupt you?

Di magni, ut qui ovem Romanum ocelisset, impunitatem aciperet,
Sen., Ben., v. 16, 8; Great Gods! that one who had slain a Roman
citizen, should escape unpunished!

TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

559. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause
may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of
three relations:

I. It may be antecedent.

Conjunctions: Postquam (Poste quam), after that, after; ut, as;
ubi, when (literally, where); simulac, as soon as; ut primum, cum primum,
the first moment that.

II. It may be contemporaneous.

Conjunctions: Dum donec, while, until; quoad, up to (the time)
that; quamdidit, as long as; cum, when.

III. It may be subsequent.

Conjunctions: Antequam, praequam, before that, before.
A special chapter is required by

IV. Cum (quom), when.
I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

(560) 561. Ut, ut primum, ubi, ubi primum, cum, cum primum, simul ac, simul atque, and postquam (posteāquam), in the sense of after, as soon as, take the (Historical) Perfect, rarely the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

Postquam Caesar pervénit, obsidés popúscit, CAES., B.G., I. 27, 3; after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.

Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulum vídit, aciē exússit, CAES., B.C., III. 94, 5; as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.

Pelopidēs nōn dubitāvit, simul ac obsperit hostem, cōnfigere (555 2, R. 2), NEP., XVI. 5, 3; as soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage him.

Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum cópisēs vicerit (ū. R. vixit), superbē imperāre, CAES., B.G., I. 31, 12; “that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.”

562. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

Ubi nāmē obvius ībat, ad castra hostium tendunt, L., IX. 45, 14; when (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.

Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Scirpisēstī sum posteāquam nōn audēret (ū. R. nōn audēbat) reprehendere, landāre coepisse, C., ATī., I. 13, 4; you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.

563. 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause; often of the Resulting Condition.

Posteāquam multitūdinem collēgerat emblēmatum, instituit officinam, C., Verr., IV. 24, 54; after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.

2. The Pluperfect is used with postquam when a definite interval is mentioned.

Post and quam are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, post may be omitted. Notice posterō diē quam, the day after.

Post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat, C., Mil., 16, 44; the matter was accomplished three days after he said it would be.
Hamilcar nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerat occisus est, Nep., xxii. 4, 2; Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.

Subjunctive in Óratió Obliqua.

Scriptum quod Posidonió est triginti annis vivisse Panaceiium posteaquam libros de officiis edisset, C., Off., iii. 2, 8; it is recorded by Posidonius that Panaceius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties. The attraction is sometimes neglected.

564. Postquam and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causal signification (compare quoniam, now that = since).

Cúria minor mihi vidéatur posteaquam est máior, C., Fin., v. 1, 2; the senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.

Iterative Action.

(565) 566. Rule I.—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

Humilé labrant ubi potens dissident, Phaed., i. 30, 1; the lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.

Ubi frumentó opus erat, cohortés praebèdim agitabant, S., Iug., 55, 4; when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

Bonus sánior sit ubi neglegás, S., Iug., 31, 38; a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.

567. Rule II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, r. 2.

Quoties cessit, surgit, As often as he falls, he rises.

Quoties cessiderat, surgēbat, As often as he fell, he rose.

Quoties cessiderit, surget, As often as he falls (shall have fallen), he will rise.

Simul inflavit tibiōcem & perlītī carmen ágnōscitur, C., Ac., ii. 27, 86; as soon as the flutter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.

Docíliōra sunt ingenia pruasquam obdúruant, Quint., i. 12, 9; minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.

Cum pālām sāns snap ad palmam convertērat Gyges & nāllō vidēbatur, C., Off., iii. 9, 38; when(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.
Si péa condoluit, si dēns, ferre nōn possimus, C., Tusc., ii. 22, 52; if a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.

Stomachābētur senex, si quid asperius dixeram, C., N.D., i. 33, 98; the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

ubi ċonsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est, S., C., i. 6; when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.

The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Cato mīrāri sē sēstet quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspicio cum vidisset, C., Div., ii. 24, 51; Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)

The Subjunctive by Attraction.

Quārē sēstet, ut omnium oculōs, quaūtēscunque in pūblicum prōdīset, ad sē converteret, Nēp., vii. 3, 5; whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public (quaūtēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat).

Remark.—The Subjunctive in Iterative sentences instead of the Indicative becomes increasingly common from Livy on.

II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

568. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are:

Dum, dōnec, while, so long as, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiū, as long as; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—so long as, while.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—until.


(So long as, while.)

569. Complete Coextension.—Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Vita dum superest, bene est, MAECENAS (Sen., E.M., ioi, 11); while (so long as) life remains, 'tis well.

Tiberius Gracchus tam dīd laudābitur dum memoria rārum Rōmānārum manēbit, C., Off., ii. 12, 43; Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).
Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycurgi lex est vigebant, C., Tusc., I. 42, 101; this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.

Dónece grátus eram tibi, Persárum vigil róga beátor, H., O., III. 9, 1; while I was pleasing in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.

Quoad potuit, restíttit, Caes., B.G., IV. 12, 5; as long as he could, he withstood.

Subjunctive in Οράτιο Obliqua.

Régulus dixit quam diá fúre iúrandób hostium tenéretur nóna esse sē senátorem, C., Off., III. 27, 100; Regulus said that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator. (Quamdiú teneor nóna sum senátor.)

Subjunctive by Attraction.

Faciam ut mei meminerís dum vitam vívás, Pl., Pers., 494; I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.

570. Partial Coextension.—Dum, while, while yet, during, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibí vírium aliquid superest, L., XXII. 49, 7; take this horse, while you have yet some strength left.

Dum haece Rómae aguntur, ónsulés ambó in Liguribus geróebant bellum, L., XXXIX. 1, 1; while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.

2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

571. Dum, dónece, quoad, up to (the time) that, until, have the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative.

Tityre, dum redeó, brevis est via, pásce capellás, V., Ec., 9, 23; Tityrus, while I am returning (=till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.

Exspectábo dum venit, Ter., Eun., 206; I will wait until he comes.

Epaminóndás ferrum in corpore úsque sē retinuit, quoad renúntiásum est vicissé Boeōtías, Cf. Nep., XV. 9, 3; Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.

Haud déscinam dónece perfécseró hoc, Ter., Ph., 420; I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished it.
Subjunctive in ōrātiō Obliqua.

Scipioē Silānōque dōnec revocāti ab senātū forent prūrogātum imperium est, L., xxvii. 7, 17; Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until “they should have been recalled by the senate.”

572. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.

Verginius dum collegam cōnsulāret mātrūtus est, L., iv. 21, 10; Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague.

At tantī tībi sīt nōn indulgēre theātrīs, dum bene dē vacuō pectore ēsdat amor, Ov., Rem. Am., 751; but let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.

Often with verba exspectandi, especially exspectō, I wait.

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfuit amnis, H., Ep., i. 2, 42; the clown waits for the river to run off (dry).

Remark.—Verba exspectandi have also other constructions, as ut, si, quin, but not the Infinitive.

573. Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only, only, are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes. The other tenses are very rare.

The negative is nē (dum nē = nē interim).

Ōderint dum metuant, Accius (C., Off., i. 28, 97); let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear).

Quō lūbeat nūbant, dum dōn nē fiat comes, Pl., Aul., 491; let them marry where (= whom) they please, if but the dowry do not go with them.

Dummodō mūrātā réctō veniat, dōtāta est satis, Pl., Aul., 239; provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough.

III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

574. Antequam and priusquam, before, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

Remark.—The elements ante, anteās, prius, and quam are often separated.
575. The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

Antequam ad sententiam redeo, de me panae dicam, C., Cat., iv. 10, 20; before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.

Omnia experiri certum est prius quam perespi, Ter., And., 311; I am determined to try everything before I perish. (Priors quam perespi = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

576. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

Observe that non priusquam = non dum.

Herakles, aliquanto ante quam est mortuus, omnia trididerat, C., Verr., ii. 18, 46; some time before he died he had handed over everything to Herakles.

Lègātī non ante protégéti quam impositis in naves militēs vidērunt, L., xxxiv. 12, 8; the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.

Subjunctive in Òrātiō Obliqua.

Themistocles suē praedixit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniorum légātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus, Nēp., ii. 7, 3; Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he had been sent back. (Nē prius dimittētis quam ego erē remissus.)

Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

577. Antequam and priusquam are used with the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or deprecated.

The translation is often before, and the verbal in -ing; the limit in these sentences is said to be ideal.

Ante vidēmus fulgūrem quam sonum audiēmus, Sen., N.Q., ii. 12, 6; we see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it).

In omnibus negōtīs prius quam aggregiō adhibenda est praeeparātiō diligēns, C., Off., i. 21, 73; in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make careful preparation (Ideal Second Person).

Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversāriōs sentiātur communīt, Caes., B.C., i. 54, 4; he speedily fortified the hill before he was (too soon to be) perceived by the enemy (prius quam = prius quam ut).

Hannibal omnis priusquam exèderet pūgnā erat expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4; Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight).
IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM).

(578) 579. There are two great uses of cum:

I. Temporal cum (when, then), with the Indicative, to give the date.

II. Circumstantial cum (as, whereas), with the Subjunctive, to give the situation.

Of the latter there are three varieties:

(a) Historical cum, as, giving the circumstances under which an action took place.

(b) Causal cum, as, whereas, since, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.

(c) Concessive cum, whereas, although, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.

I. Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis movent, when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.

II. (a) Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.

(b) Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis movendum est, as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.

(c) Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōvērunt, whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.


580. Cum, when, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret, C., Cat. M., 22, 80; the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.

Sex librōs dē rē público tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rei públicae tenēbamus, C., Div., II. 1, 3; I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.

Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maersēs iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45; remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.

Iam dūlceōsēbat cum signum cōnsul dedit, L., XXXVI. 24, 6; by this time day was beginning to dawn, when (581) the consul gave the signal.

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:

Infāmīa etiam tum vīvit quom esse crēdēs mortuam, Pl., Pers., 355; ill-fame lives on even when you think that it is dead.
Remarks.—1. Fuit cum commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (631), and takes usually the Subjunctive:

Fuit tempus cum (= fuit cum) rura calerent hominés, Varro, R. R., III. 1, 1; there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen.

2. Memini cum, I remember the time when, takes the Indic., but audire cum takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle:

Memini cum mihi désipere vidésiér, C., Fam., VII. 28, 1; I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste.

Audivi Mèstrodròsum cum de its ipse rébus disputâtaret, C., Or., II. 90, 365; I have heard Metrodorus discussing these very matters.

3. Peculiar is the use of cum with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative:

Multi anni sunt cum (= multós annós) in aere moé est, C., Fam., XV. 14, 1; (it is) many years (that) he has been (230) in my debt.

Nonum contum et décem anni sunt cum (= ex quó = abhine annós) de pecúinis repetundís látæ lex est, C., Off., II. 21, 75; it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.

581. Cum Inversum. When the two actions are independent, cum is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

Iam diéésinébat cum signum cónsul dédit, L., XXXVI. 24, 6; by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.

(582–3) 584. Iterative cum.—Cum in the sense of quiénas, as often as, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action. See 566.

Solet cum sǽ púrgat in mǽ cômferre omnem culpam, C., Att., IX. 2A, 1; he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.

2. Circumstantial Cum.

585. Historical cum.—Cum, when, as, is used in narrative with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances of a past action.

The Imperfect is used if the action of the cum-clause occurs at the same time as that of the leading verb; the Pluperfect if it precedes it.

Agésiláus cum ex Aegyptó revertéretur décórsit, Nep., XVII. 8, 6; Agésiláus died as he was returning from Egypt.

Zénònom cum Athéniés essem audísbam frequenter, C., N.D., I. 21, 59; when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.

Cum Caesar Anócanam occupávisset, urbem reliquimus, C., Fam., XVI. 12, 2; when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Atalans moritur altere et septuagesimo anno, cum quattuor et quadragesimae anno rei gestae, L., XXXIII. 21, 1; Atalans died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.

586. Causal cum.—Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that, is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to denote the reason of an action.

Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe non sit, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.

Dolio erat pugnandum, cum parum esset armis, Nep., XXIII. 10, 4; he had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.

587. Concessive and Adversative cum.—Cum, whereas, although, is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to express concession or opposition.

Nihil me adiuvit, cum posset, C., Att., IX. 13, 3; he gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.

Perire artem putamus nisi appareat, cum densus ars esse, si appareat, Quint., IV. 2, 137; we think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases if it shows.

588. Cum—tum. When cum, when, tum, then, have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. Cum—tum then has the force of both—and especially.

Pausanias consilia cum petris tum sibi inimicas capebat, Nep., IV. 3, 3; Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.

Remark.—When they have different verbs, the verb with cum may be in the Subjunctive, especially if there is an idea of concession.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

589. In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the Protasis, that which contains the consequence is called the Apodosis.

Logically, Protasis is Premiss; and Apodosis, Conclusion.

Grammatically, the Apodosis is the Principal, the Protasis the Dependent, clause.

590. Sign of the Conditional.—The common conditional particle is si, if.
591. Negative of si.—The negative of si is si nōn or nisi.

(a) Si nōn means if not, and is the rule:

1. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

Si feceris, māgnam habēbo grātiam; si nōn feceris, ignōscam, C., Fam., v. 19; if you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).

2. When the Condition is concessive; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

Si mihi bona re públicē frui non licuerit, at carōbō male, C., Mil., 34, 98; if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.

(b) Nisi means unless, and is used when an exception or restriction is made to the leading statement. Compare the general use of nisi, except (B.).

Nisi molestumet, paucis percontāriō (130, 6) volō ego ex tā, Pl., Rud., 120; if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.

So especially after negatives.

Nōn possem vīvere nisi in litteris vivērem, C., Fam., ix. 26, 1; I could not live unless I lived in study.

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās, C., Cat. M., 7, 21; memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Si nōn exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.)

Remark.—Nisi, after negative sentences or equivalents, has often the signification of but, except, besides, only:

Nīhil hic nisi tristē vidēbis, Ov., Tr., iii. 1, 9; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.

Falsus honor iuvat et mendēs infamia terret, quam nisi mendēs et medicandum? H., Ep. i. 16, 39; “false honor charms and lying slander scares,” whom but the faulty and the fit for physic?

592. Two Conditions excluding each the other.—When two conditions exclude each the other, si is used for the first; sin, if not (but if), for the second.

Sin is further strengthened by autem, vērō (rare), but; minus, less (not); secus (rare), otherwise; aliter, else.

Meroctāra, si tenēris est, sordida putanda est; sin māgna et cōpiōsa, nōn est vituperanda, C., Off. i. 42, 151; mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

REMARK.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, si minus, if less (not), sin minus, sin aliter, if otherwise, are commonly used, rarely si non:

Édúc tócum omnés tuós; si minus, quam plúrimós, C., Cat., i. 5, 10; take with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.

Ódero si potéris; si non, invités amásás, Ov., Am., iii. 11, 35; I will hate if I can, if not I shall love against my will.

593. Other Forms of the Protasis.—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

Quí vidéret, urbem captam diceret, C., Verr., iv. 23, 52; who so had seen it, had said that the city was taken.

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

Si latet ars, pród'est; auffert dépránsa pudérem, Ov., A.A., ii. 313; art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame.

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

Psecúnt id servi Miloáis quod suós quisque servós in tálí ré facere volú-
isset, C., Mil., 10, 29; the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tálé occidisset).

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

Immatē verbórum colloquiónum, perierit tótá ré, C., Or., 70, 283; (if you) change the order of the words, the whole thing falls dead.

Classification of Conditional Sentences.

594. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: si, with the Indicative.

II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: si, chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.

III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: si, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

595. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the matter, according to the formula: if this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.

The Protasis is in the Indicative: the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used:
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

PROTASIS.  
Si id crēdis,  
If you believe that,  
Si id crēdēbas,  
If you believed that,  
Si id crēdidisti,  
If you (have) believed that,  
Si id crēdēs,  
If you (shall) believe that,  
Si id crēdideris,  
If you (shall have) believed that,  
Si quid crēdideris,  
If you had believed anything  
Si quid crēdideris (= when you believed anything),  
Si spiritum dūcit vivit, C., Inv., i. 46, 86; if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.
Si occidit, rētō fact; sed nōn occidit, Quint., IV. 5, 13; if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.
Nātūram sī sequāmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, C., Off., i. 28, 100; if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.
Flectere sī nequeō supervō, Ἀθηρώντα moverō, V., A., vii. 312; if I can’t bend the gods above, I’ll rouse (all) hell below.
Dēsinē timēre, sī spērāre dēseris, Sen., E.M., i. 5, 7; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.
Peream male, sī nōn optimum erat, H., S., ii. 1, 6; may I die the death if it was not best.

APODOsis.  
errēs,  
you are going wrong.  
errēbas,  
you were going wrong.  
errēstī,  
you went (have gone) wrong.  
errēbas,  
you will (be) going(ing) wrong (542).  
errēverīs,  
you will have gone (will go) wrong.  
errēs,  
you go wrong. Comp. 569.
errēbas,  
you went wrong.

Si spiritum dūcit vivit, C., Inv., i. 46, 86; if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.
Si occidit, rētō fact; sed nōn occidit, Quint., IV. 5, 13; if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.
Nātūram sī sequāmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, C., Off., i. 28, 100; if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.
Flectere sī nequeō supervō, Ἀθηρώντα moverō, V., A., vii. 312; if I can’t bend the gods above, I’ll rouse (all) hell below.
Dēsinē timēre, sī spērāre dēseris, Sen., E.M., i. 5, 7; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.
Peream male, sī nōn optimum erat, H., S., ii. 1, 6; may I die the death if it was not best.

REMARKS.—1. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (Örētū Obliqua), the Protasis must be put in the Subjv., according to the rule.

(Si id crēdis, errēs.)
Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdēs, errēre.
Dīxi, tē, sī id crēdēre, errēre.

(Si id crēdēs, errēbas.)
Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdēs, errētūrum esse.
Dīxi, tē, sī id crēdēre, errētūrum esse.

(Si id crēdidisti, errēstī.)
Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdideris, errēsse.
Dīxi, tē, sī id crēdīdīssēs, errēsse.

For examples, see Örētū Obliqua, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction:
Araneolae rēte texunt ut sī quid inhaeserit ināscent, C., N.D., ii. 48, 123; spiders weave webs (667) to despatch anything that gets caught.
(Si quid inhaeserit ināscent.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present:
Senectūs plēna est voluptātis sī illā scīas sīti, Sen., E.M., 12, 4; old age is full of pleasure if you know (if one knows) how to enjoy it.
4. *Sive—sive* (seu—seu) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.)

Seu victat, ferociter instat victis; seu victus est, instaurat cum victōribus certāmen, L., xxvii. 14, 1; *if he vanquishes* (567), *he presses the vanquished furiously; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

**II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.**

596. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense, according to the formula: *if this should be so, then that would be so.*

Nothing is indicated as to the reality of the actions. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, r. 3).

**Protasis.**

*Si id crēdās,*
*If you should (were to) believe that,*

*Si id crēdās,*
*If you should (were to) believe that,*

*Si id crēdideris,*
*If you should (prove to) have believed that (Perfect; Action Past or Future),*

1. *Si id crēdideris,* *(you should have) believed (that),* *(Perfect; Action Past or Future),*

2. *Si id crēdideris,* *(you should have) believed (that),* *(Aor.; Action Future),*

**Apodosis.**

*Errēs,*
*you would be going wrong.*

*Errēvas,*
*you would go wrong.*

*Errēs,*
*you would be going wrong.*

*Errēvēras (rare), you would (have) go(ne) wrong.*

_Hanc viam si asperam esse negem, mentiar, C., Sest., 46, 100; if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie._

_Si gladium quis dūpud tē sēnē mente deposerit, repetat insāniēs, red- dere pecōtum sit, officium nōn reddre, C., Off., III. 25, 95; if a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it._

_Si valēsant hominēs, ars tua, Phoebæ, iacet, Ov., Tr., iv., 3, 78; should men keep well,ting your art; Phoebus, is naught._

_Nulla est excūsatiō pecōtī, si amīd causē pecōvēras, C., Lael., 11, 37; it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend._
2. The Point of View is occasionally the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms.

Si Alfenum tum iudicium accepereret, quid ageret? C., Quinct., 26, 83; in case Alfenum was willing then to undertake the trial, what were you to do? (Present: si nunc vellet . . . agas!)

Remark.—The lively fancy of the Roman sometimes employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. This is more common in early Latin.

Tu si hic sis, alter sentias, Ten., And., 310; if you were I (put yourself in my place), you would think differently.

III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Unreal Conditional Sentence is used of that which is not or was not true, according to the formula: if this were so, then that would be so; if this had been so, then that would have been so.

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; the Pluperfect Subjunctive, to express completed action—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

Protasis. Apodosis.
Si id crederes, errare.
If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not.] you would be going wrong.
Si id credisseis, erraveisse.
If you had believed that, [you did not.] you would have gone wrong.

Sapientia non expeteretur, si nihil officeret, C., Fin., i. 13, 42; wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.

Caedercem tæ, nisi Iraeceret, Sen., Ira., i. 15, 8; I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.

Si ibi tæ esse soisset, ad tæ ipse venisset, C., Fin., i. 8; if had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.

Ego nisi peperisset, Roma non oppugnaretur; nisi filium haberem, libera in liberta patriae mortua esset, L., i. 40, 8; had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.

Remarks.—(1) 2. After a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic. when the action is represented as interrupted (283).

Labebar longius, nisi me retinuisset, C., Leg., i. 19, 52; I was letting (should have let) myself go on too far, had I not checked myself.
3. The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—vix, paene, scarcely, hardly, and the like.

Consul esse qui potui, nisi cum vitae cursum tenuissem? C., Rep., i. 6, 10; how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?

Émendáturnus, si licisset, eram, Ov., Tr., i. 7, 40; I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).

4. In Črótio Obliqua the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, futúrum (fore) ut, futúrum fuisset ut for passive and Supineless verbs.

A. Dio (dixii), tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.
B. Dio (dixii), tē, si id crēdissēs, errātūrum fuisset.
A. Dio (dixii), si id crēderēs, fore ut desciperēris.
B. Dio (dixii), si id crēdissēs, futūrum fuisset ut desciperēris.

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv.; the Impf. form is unchanged.

The passive form is unchanged.

Nōn dubitā, quin, si id crēderēs, errārēs,
I do not doubt, that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.
Nōn dubitābam, quin, si id crēdissēs, errātūrus fuerīs,
I did not doubt, that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.

Honestum tāle est ut, vel si ignōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile, Cf. C., Fin., ii. 15, 49; virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.

Dio quidnam factūrūs, fuerūs, si eō tempore censor fuisset? L., ix. 33, 7; tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?

Similarly potui (r. 8) becomes potuerim, and fut with the Periphrastic passive in -dus becomes fuerim after all tenses.

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. Omission of the Conditional Sign.—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

Pāscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est, C., Parad., 5, 2; she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come.
Unum ognēris, omnis nōris, Ter., Ph., 265; you know one, you know all.
599. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

Sì quisquam (= sì quisquam fuit), Catò sapis fuit, Cf. C., Lael., 2, 9; if any one was wise, Cato was.

Edò tòum omnès tuus; sì minus, quam plàrimès, C., Cat., 1, 5, 10; take out with you all your (followers); if not (take out) as many as possible.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

(600–1) 602. Ut sì, àc sì, quasi, quam sì, tamquam, tamquam sì, velut, and velut sì, meaning as if, take the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary course of the conditional.

Nullì timére quasi [ = quam timesès sì] assem elephanto dè, Quint., vni. 3, 59: don’t be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.

Mè invat, velut ipse in parte labiès sì perfidì fœrum, ad fines bellì Pùnicì pervénisse, L., xxxi. 1; I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).

Tantùs patrès metus cèpit velut sì iam ad portès hostìs esset, L., xxvi. 10, 2; a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.

Remarks.—1. Quasi is used to soften or apologize for a single word (= ut ita dicam).

Mors est quædam quasi migratìo commutatìo vîtæ, Cf. C., Tusc., 1, 12, 27; death is as if it were a shifting of life’s quarters.

2. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a participle:

Tamquam occìsus relíctus est, Cf. C., Verr., v. xi, 28; he was left for (as if) slain (dead).

CONCESSION SENTENCES.

(603) 604. Etì, etiamè, and tametì, even if, although, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of sì, if. The Indicative is more common, especially with etì.

De futúris rébus etì semper difficìle est dicere, tamen interdùm con-
jecturâ possís acédere, C., Fam., vi. 4, 1; although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.
Inops ille etiam si referre gratiam non potest, habere certe potest, C., Off., ii. 20, 69; the needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.

605. Quamquam (to what extent soever), although, is a generic relative (254, n. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

Medici quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegrīs disunt, illō morbō esse esse moriturō, C., Div., ii. 25, 54; although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that (particular) disease.

Remark.—The Potential Subjv. (257) is sometimes found with quamquam.

Quamquam exercitum qui in Volsci erat mālet, nihil recusāvit, L., vi. 9, 6; although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.
So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

606. Quamvis (as much as you will), although, is construed with the Subjunctive.

Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere temptant, Ov., M., vi. 376; although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candīdus essēs, V., Ec., ii. 16; although he was black, although you were fair.

Remark.—Quamvis is sometimes found with the Indicative in the poets and later prose.

607. Licet (it is permitted) retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

Licet irrideat sī qui vult, C., Parad., i. 1, 8; let any one laugh who will.

Ārdeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis, Juv., vi. 209; though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.

608. Ut, granted that, and nē, granted that (not), are also used concessively for the sake of argument.

Ut désint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, Ov., Pont., iii. 4, 79; granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.

Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, C., Tusc., ii. 5, 14; granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.
609. Other forms of the Concessive Sentence.—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

Multōrum tē oculī et aurēs nōn sentīentem custōdient, C., Cat., 1. 2, 6; the eyes and ears of many will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (without your perceiving it).

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

610. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

Remarks.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract substantive:

Quae cum ita sint, now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).

Futura modo expectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, confidentur et angōre et mettī, C., Fin., 1. 18, 60; they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.

Epicurus nōn satis politus fīs artibus quae qui tenent, sūditī appellantur, C., Fin., 1. 7, 26; Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated.

2. Notice especially quod in combination with si, nisi, and ut, with ubi, quia, quoniam, and the like, in which quod means and as for that, and is sometimes translated by and, but, therefore, whereas, sometimes not at all. At the beginning of a sentence it is often convenient to translate quod "as for the fact that." See 525, 2.

Quod nī fuissem inoūgtāns ita sum expectārem ut pār fuit, Ter., Ph., 155; whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in proper mood.

Quod magnām dolōrem brevem esse dīcitās, id nōn intellegō, quāle sīt, C., Fin., 11. 29, 94; as for your saying that great grief is short, I do not understand what that means.

(611) 612. Position of Relatives.—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).

613. Antecedent.—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.
CONCORD.

614. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

Uxor contenta est quae bona est anō virō, Pl., Merc., 812; a wife who
is good is contented with one husband.

Hoc ills narrō qui mā nōn intelligunt, Phaedr., 3, 128; I tell this
tale for those who understand me not.

Ego qui tē confirmō, ipse mā nōn possum, C., Fam., xiv. 4, 5; I who
reassure you, cannot reassure myself.

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecendent, even when a predicate intervenes; exceptions are very rare:

Tū es is, qui mā summīs laudibus ad caelum extulisti, C., Fam., xv. 4,
11; you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.

(2) 3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

(a) By the sense, and not by the form;

Caesa sunt ad sex milia qui Pydnam perfigerant, L., xliv. 42, 7; there
were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna.

Equitātum omnem praemittit, qui videant, Caes., B.G., i. 15; he sent
all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).

(b) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent;

Thēbæ, quod Boeoticæ caput est, L., xlii. 44, 3; Thebes, which is the
capital of Boeotia.

Fītum Scaldī, quod infuit in Mosam, Caes., B.G., vi. 33, 3; the
river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.

(4) 5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of dif-
f erent gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 286 :

ōtium atque divitiæ, quae prima mortāles putant, S., C., 36, 4; leisure
and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

Eae frūgēs atque frūctūs quà terra gignit, C., N.D., ii. 14, 37; those
fruits of field and tree which earth bears.

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

615. Repetition of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent of the Relative may be repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quō diē frumentum militibus mētiri opertē-
ret, Caes., B.G., i. 16, 5; Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on
which day it behooved to measure corn (corn was to be measured out)
to the soldiers.
616. Incorporation of the Antecedent.—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

In quem primum agressi sunt locum Trōia vocātur, L., i. 1, 3; the first place they landed at was called Troy.

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

Amānus Syriam & Cilikia dividit, quàe mōns erat hostium plēnus, C., Att., v. 20, 3; Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

Themistocles dē serviis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem misit, Nep., ii. 4, 3; Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king.

617. Attraction of the Relative.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

Hōc ōnfirmāmus illō augūriō quō dīximus, C., Att., x. 8, 7; we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.

618. Correlative of the Relative.—The usual Correlative of quī is is, more rarely hīc, ille.

In minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupid, Syrus, 286 (Fr.); that mortal lacketh least, who wanteth least.

Hīc sapīēns, de quō loquor, C., Ac., ii. 33, 105; this wise man of whom I am speaking.

Illa dīē veniet, mea quā lagūbría pōnam, Ov., Tr., iv. 2, 73; the day will come when I shall lay aside my mournful strains.

619. Absorption of the Correlative.—The Correlative is is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative.

Postume, nūn bene olet, quī bene semper olet, Mart., ii. 12, 4; Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.

Quem di diligunt adulēscēns moritur, Pl., B., 816; (he) whom the gods love dies young.
620. **Position of the Correlative clause.**—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes; absorption also is common.

Malis sē rés habet cum quod virtūte effici debet id temptātur pecūnīā, C., Off., II. 6, 22; it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.

Quod nōn dēdit fortūna, nōn sīripit, Sen., E.M., 59, 18; what fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.

621. **Indefinite Antecedent.**—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

ELige cui diōsē: tū mihi sōla placēs, Ov., A.A., i. 42; choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.

**TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.**

622. **Future and Future Perfect.**—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

Sit liber, dominus quī volet esse meus, Mart., ii. 32, 8; he must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master.

Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, sīus victōriā erit, L., xxiv. 38, 5; who first draws (shall have drawn) the sword, his shall be the victory.

623. **Iterative Action.**—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

I. Contemporaneous action:

Ōre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit aërvō, H., S., i. 1, 34; drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap).

Quācumque inōdébat āgmen, lēgātī occurrēbant, L., xxxiv. 16, 6; in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.

II. Prior action:

Terra numquam sīne tīsūrā reddīt, quod accēptīt, C., Cat. M., i5, 51; the earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives).

Haerēbant in memorīā quaeconquē audierat et viderat Themistioclēs, C., Ac., ii. 1, 2; whatever Themistocles heard and saw (had heard and seen), remained fixed in his memory.

Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia, Sen., E.M., 28, 1; vices will follow you whithersoever you go.

**Remark.**—On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, r.
MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

624. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

Uxor quae bona est, PL., Merc., 812; a wife who is good (a good wife).

625. Indefinite and Generic Relatives.—Quicumque, quis-quis, and the like, are Iterative in their nature and take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action; see 623.

REMARK.—The Subjv. is used:
(1) In Öratiō Obliqua (Total or Partial):
Mārtī Gallī quae bellō cēperint (Pl. Subjv.) dēvovent (= sē daturēs vovent), CF. CAES., B.G., VI. 17, 3; the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war (ū. R., Quae cēperimus, dabimus).
(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):
Quis cum diligit quem metuēt? C., Lael., 15, 58; who could love a man whom he fears?
(3) In the Ideal Second Person:
Bonus sēgular fit ubi negleges, S., Iug., 31, 28; a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.

(626) 627. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL: Habeō quae velim, C., Fin., i. 8, 28; I have what I should like.

OPTATIVE: Quod fuit tum sit, rēgem creāte, L., i. 17, 10; blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.

REMARK.—Notice the Subjunctive in restrictive phrases like quod sciam, so far as I know.

628. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the statement or opinion of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. So especially in Öratiō Obliqua and Final Sentences.

Rōtē Graeci praeceptīunt, nōn temptātīs quae effici nōn possint, QUINT., IV. 5, 17; right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished.

Senātus cēnsuit uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, Haeduīs defenderet, CAES., B.G., I. 35; the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haeduī.
Remarks.—Even in Ὄρθριῳ Ὀμίλῳ the Indic. is retained:
(a) In explanations of the narrator:

Nuntiātur Afrānīnō magnōs commēsātus qui iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad
flēmen constitisse, Caes., B.C., i. 51, 1; it is (was) announced to Afrānius that large supplies of provisions (which were on their way to
Caesar) had halted at the river.
(b) In mere circumlocutions:

Prōvidēntur est nā quae diciuntur ab eō qui dīcit dissentiant, Quint.,
iii. 8, 48; we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with
the speaker.

629. Attraction of Mood.—Relative sentences which
depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form a necessary
part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive.

Pigri est ingenii contentum esse ita quae sint ab aliis inventa, Quint.,
x. 2, 4; it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been
found out by others.

Si sōls eō dicēret misericōrdia quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum qui
viverent excipēret; moriendum est enim omnibus, C., Tusc., i. 5; 9; if
you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except
none who lived (live); for all have to die.

Remarks.—The Indic. is used:
(a) In mere circumlocutions; so, often in Consecutive Sentences:

Efficitur ab ēōsīōre, ut si quid audīant ut addīciantur ut ēōsīōr velīt, Cf.
C., Br., 49, 185; it is brought about by the orator that those who hear
him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).
(b) Of individual facts:

Et quod videās perīsitum dēōs, Cat., viii. 2; and what you see
(definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod
videās, anybody, anything.)

630. Relative Sentences of Design.—Relative sentences
are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when qui = ut is,
in order that he.

Sunt multi qui scribunt alīs quod alīs largiāntur, C., Off., i. 14, 43;
many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.

631. Relative Sentences of Tendency.—Relative sentences
are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when qui = ut is,
so that he (Subjunctive of Characteristic).

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation,
and we distinguish three varieties:

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is
emphasized; regularly after idōnēus, suitable; aptus, fit;
dignus, worthy; indignus, unworthy; after is, tālis, sōusmodi, tam, tantus, and the like; after unus and sōlus.

Est innocentia affectū tālis animi, quae neceat nāmini, C., Tusc., iii. 8, 16; harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one).

Sōlus es, Caesar, sūs in victūs occidērit nāmō, C., Dei., 12, 34; thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen.

2. With indefinite antecedents such as:

Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who; nāmō est qui, there is none to; nihil est quod, there is nothing to; multi, nōnnullī sunt qui, there are many, some to; habēs quod, I have to; reperīuntur qui, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est qui? who is there who (to) . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, etc. So, also, fuit cūm, there was a time when (558, B. 1).

Sunt qui discessum animī & corpore potent esse mortem, C., Tusc., i. 9, 18; there are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali, Pl., Capt., 741; after death there is no ill in death for me to dread.

Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condant eīt, Ov., Her., 10, 120; and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.

Miserrimus est qui quem esse cupit quod edat nōn habet, Pl., Capt., 463; he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat (nōn habet quid edat would mean does not know what to eat).

Remark.—The Indicative may be used in affirmative statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

Multi sunt qui ēripiunt, Multi sunt qui ēripiunt,
There are many to snatch away. Many are they who snatch away.

Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dicere, C., Off., i. 24, 84; some dare not say what they think.

Sunt-quibus ingrātē tīmida indulgentia servit, Ov., A.A., ii. 435; to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.

3. After comparatives with quam as an object clause.

Midēra in dēfectōne dēliquērant, quam quibus ignōsēt posset, L., xxvi. 12, 6; (in that revolt) they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness).

632. Quin in Sentences of Character.—After negative clauses, quin is often used (556) for qui nōn.

Sunt certa vitia quae nāmō est quin effugere cupiat, C., Or., iii. 11, 41; there are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape.
633. Relative in a Causal Sense.—When qui = cum is, as he, the Subjunctive is employed.

Caninius fuit mirificus vigilantiss qui suō tōtō oūnstrātū somnum nōn viderit, C., Fam., vii. 30, 1; Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.

634. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.—When qui = cum is, although, whereas he, the Subjunctive is employed.

Ego qui leviter Graecōs litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athenās complūrēs ibi dīēs sum commorātus, C., Or., i. 18, 82; although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.

(635–6) 637. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.
—The Relative sentence may be represented by a Participle.

Omnēs alīud agentēs, alīud simulantēs perfidī sunt, C., Off., iii. 14, 60; all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.

COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

638. Comparative Sentences which are introduced in English by as or than, are introduced in Latin:
(a) By correlativels; (b) by atque or ac; (c) by quam.

639. Moods in Comparative Sentences.—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

Remark.—On potius quam with the Subj., see below, 644, n. 3.

640. The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

Servī mōribus idem erant quibus dominus, Cf. C., Verr., iii. 25, 62; the servants had the same character as the master.

641. When both clauses have the same verb and are both dependent upon a verb of Saying or Thinking, they have the same construction.

Ita sentiō Latīnam linguam locupletissēm esse quam Graecam, C., Fin., i. 3, 10; it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.
Ego Gaium Cassarem non eadem dem re públicè sentit quae me scilè, C., Pis., 32, 79; I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political views that I (have).

I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

642. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:

1. Adjective correlatives:

| tot, totidem | quot, | (so) as many
| tantus | quantus, | (so) as great
| tælis | quælis, | such
| idem | qui, | the same

\[
\text{as.}
\]

2. Adverbial correlatives:

| tam | quam, | (so) as much
| tantopere | quantopere, | (so) as much
| totiès | quotiès, | as often
| tamðďă | quantit cupidit, | as long
| ita, sic | ut, uti, sicut, | so (as) = as.
| item, itidem | quemadmodum, | quocmodo,

\[
\text{so (as) = as.}
\]

Quot hominès, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds, Ter., Ph., 454.

Frumentum tantī fuit quanti iste aestimavit, C., Verr., iii. 84, 194; corn was worth as much as he valued it.

Plèrique habère amicum tālem volunt, quālēs ipsi esse non possunt, C., Lael., 22, 82; most people wish to have a friend of a character such as they themselves cannot possess.

Nihil est tam populäre quam bonitās, C., Lig., 12, 37; nothing is so winning as kindness.

Sic dē ambitiōne quōmodo dē amicō queruntur, Sen., E.M., 22, 10; they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.

Tamidū requīscō quamdīū ad tē scribō, C., Att., ix. 4, 1; I rest as long as I am writing to you.

3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

Homē, nōn quam īstī sunt, glōriōsus, L., xxxv. 49, 7; a man, not (so) vainglorious as they are.

Disce quamdīū volēs, C., Off., i. 1, 2; you shall learn (as long) as you wish.
II. Comparative Sentences with ATQUE (ÄC).

643. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take atque or äc.

Virtūs eadem in homine äc deō est, C., Leg., i. 8, 25; virtue is the same in man as in god.

Dissimulātiō est cum alia dicuntur äc sentiäs, C., Or., ii. 67, 269; dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean).

Non dixi secus äc sentiäsbam, C., Or., ii. 6, 24; I did not speak otherwise than I thought.

III. Comparative Sentences with QUAM.

644. Comparative Sentences with quam follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences quam takes the same case after it as before it.

Melior est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria, L., xxx. 30, 19; better is certain peace than hoped-for victory.

Potius amicūm quam dictum perdidi, QUINT., vi. 3, 20; I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.

Remarks.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member must be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb esse, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:

Victimus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est, Cf. C., Inv., i. 31, 52; your neighbor has a better horse than yours.

Ego hominem calldiōrem vidī nōminem quam Phormiōnem, TER., Ph., 591; I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormiō est).

2. On quam prō, and quam quī, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.

3. (a) When two clauses are compared by potius, rather, prius, before, cūtius, quicker, sooner, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. (512), with or without ut.

Dépugnā potius quam servīäs, C., Att., vii. 7, 7; fight it out rather than be a slave.

(b) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise.

Sē ab omnibus désertōs potius quam abs tē défēnsōs esse mālunt, C., Div. in Caec., 6, 21; they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you.
THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

645. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

646. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered:

Infinitive after Auxiliary Verbs: 423.
Supine: 434–436.
Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526–531.
Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532, 546, R. 3.
Infinitive in Relative Sentences: (635), 655, R. 1.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

647. The Present Infinitive is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

Verrēs militāri Diodōrō, vōciferāri palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre, C., Verr., iv. 18, 39; Verres threatened (was for threatening) Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.

ĪRĀTIĪ OBLĪQUA.

648. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called Īrātiī Rēcta, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or Īrātiī Obliqua, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

Remarks.—1. Under the general head of Īrātiī Obliqua are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. Inquam, quotō I, is used in citing the Īrātiī Rēcta; sīō, I say, generally in Īrātiī Obliqua.

Inquam never precedes the Īrātiī Obliqua, but is always parenthetic; sīō may or may not be parenthetic.
649. Ὑποτιμὸς Ὀβλίκα differs from Ὑποτιμὸς Ῥεκτά, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

Moods in Ὑποτιμὸς Ὀβλίκα.

650. In Ὑποτιμὸς Ὀβλίκα the principal clauses (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

نَاclaims Becta: Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,(213,280),(487,321)

牒. Ὀβλίκα: Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait

牒. Ὀ.: βίοτικα quædam nascuntur,

牒. Ὀ.: βίοτικα quædam nasci,

牒. Ὀ.: quæ sum diem vivunt,

牒. Ὀ.: quæ sum diem vivant, C., Tusc., i. 39, 94.

牒. Ὀ.—On the river Bog, says Aristotle, little creatures are born, that live

牒. Ὀ.—Aristotle says that on the river Bog, (but) one day.

Socrates dixerat: Ὀ. Ὀ. Omnēs in eo quod scirent satias sunt eloquentīs,

牒. Ὀ. Omnēs in eo quod scirent satias esse eloquentīs, C., Or., i. 14, 68.

牒. Ὀ. Ὀ. Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."

牒. Ὀ. Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656). Otherwise, Subjv. in Ὀ. Ὀ. continues to be Subjv. in Ὀ. Ὀ.

651. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

Arivistus respondit sē prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Rōmēnum: quid sibi vellet cur in sua possessiones veniret, Caes., B.G., i. 44, 7; Arivistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people; what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibi vis?)

REMARKS.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (484), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of Ὀ. Ὀ. to the Acc. and Inf. of Ὀ. Ὀ. when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

牒. Ὀ. Num possum? Can I? [No.] Ὀ. Ὀ. Num posse?

Caes., B.G., i. 14, Could he? Could est turpius? What is baser? [Nothing.] Quid esse turpius?

Caes., B.G., v. 28, 6; What was baser?
THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

Quō sē repulserē ab Rōmanēs itūrō? L., xxxiv. ii, 6; whether should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō fēmus?)

Cui nōn appārēre ab sē qui prior arma intulisset initium ortam essē? L., xxxii. 10, 6; to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Cui nōn appārēt?)

Sī bonum déscent, quid prō nōxiō damnēssent? L., xxvii. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Sī bonum déscentis, quid prō nōxiō damnēssis?)

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.

Quis sībī persuāsēret sine certō ré Ambiorigem ad iūnīum ómnium désconom? Cæs., B.G., v. 29, 5; who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without having made a sure thing (of it)? (Quis sībī persuāsēt?)

652. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, ut; the Negative is, of course, nē (never ut nē).

Redditur responsōnum: nōndūm temporīs pāgnās esse; castrīs sē tenārent, L., ii. 45, 8; there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp. (O. R., castrīs vēnē tenēta.)

Vercingetorix cohōrīstās est: nē perturbārentur incommodō, Cæs., B.G., vii. 29, 1; Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not be disconcerted by the disaster. (O. R., nōlit perturbāri.)

Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

653. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

Remark.—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in O. O., and hence loses its idea of continuance.

654. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.*

Point of View of the Reporter:

Lēgātīōni Ariovistus respondēt: sībī mistrum vidērī quid in suā Gallliō quam bellō vicisset, Cæsār negōtī esset, Cæs., B.G., i. 34, 4; to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.

* This is technically called repraesentātiō, representation.
Point of View of the Speaker:

Légatis Helvétiorum Caesar respondit: consuèse deos immortáles, quò gravius homínès ex committístione rurum doloant, quòs pró scelere eorum ulciscì velint, his secundiorès interírum rès concedère, Caes., B. G., i. 14, 5; to the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the Gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.

Point of View shifted:

Ad haec Március respondit: Æ quid ab senáti petere vellent, ab armis discédant, S., C., 34, 1; thereto Március replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.

655. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in Óratió Obliqua.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525; for Causal, see 541; for Temporal, see 561-564, 569-577; for Relative, see 628.

Remarks.—1. Coordinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive occasionally, especially in Cicero.

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: (a) In mere circumlocations. (b) In explanations of the narrator (628, R.).

3. Dum, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution:

Dico, hospes, Spártae nōs tē hic vidisse inceptis, dum sánctis patriae légibus obsequimur, C., Tusc., i. 42, 101; tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country’s hallowed laws.

656. Conditional Sentences in Óratió Obliqua, Total and Partial.

1. The Protasis follows the rule for subordinate clauses (650).

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with futūrum fuisset ut . . . . 248.

Remark.—Posse needs no Fut. (248 R.), and potuisse no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.
3. Identical Forms.—In the transfer of Conditions to ō, 0., the difference between many forms disappears. For instance,

I. 1. Si id crēdis, errābis. 2. Si id crēdēs, errābis. 3. Si id crēdēs, errēs. 4. Dīxī tē, si id crēdēs, errātūrum esse.

II. 1. Si id crēdis, errābis. 2. Si id crēdēs, errābis. 3. Si id crēdēs, errēs. 4. Dīxī tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

III. 1. Si id crēdistēs, errābis. 2. Si id crēdistēs, errēs. 3. Si id crēdistēs, errāverēs. 4. Dīxī tē, si id crēdistēssēs, errātūrum esse.

657. Logical Conditions in Ὅρατιο Obliqua.

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescerēret quamadmodum suō fūre āterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē s populō Rōmānō in suō fūre impedīrī, Caes., B.C., I. 36, 2; to this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (Ō. R.: si ego nōn praescerībō, nōn oportet mē impedīrī.)

Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? Si noxiōm compersent, quid alterum cōnsulātum crēderent? L., xxvii. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if, on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they trust him with a second consulship? (Ō. R.: si—dūcitis, quid damnāsitis? si—comperītis, quid crēditis?)

Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimābant si hostem Hiberī intercedēre potuissent, Caes., B.C., I. 68, 3; they thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro. (Ō. R.: is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem intercedēre potuissent.)

Nōn multō ante urbem captam exandita vôx est . . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur, C., Div., I. 45, 101; not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken. (Ō. R.: nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma caperētur.)

Ariovistus respondit nisi dēēdat Caesar sēsē illum prō hoste habētūrum; quod si eum interfēcerit, multōs sēsē nōbilībus principibus populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, Caes., B.C., I. 44, 12; Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people. (Ō. R.: nisi dēēdet tē prō hoste habētū . . . si tē interfēcerī grātum fœcerū; 244, r. 4.)
THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).
Negārun dīrimī bellum posse nisi Messēnis Achaēs Pylum redderent, L., XXVII. 30, 13; they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaecn restored Pylos to the Messenians. (O. B.: bellum dīrimī non potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent, si turris concidisset, nōn posse militēs continēri quin spē praedae in urbem irrumperent, Caes., B.C., II. 12, 4; they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty. (O. B.: si considerit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continēri.)

658. Ideal Conditions in Ēratiō Obliqua.

Ait sē si ūrātur “Quam hōc suāve” dictārum, C., Fīn., II. 27, 88; he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, “How sweet this is.” (O. B.: si ūrā, dīcam, same form as Logical.)

Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquātur concēsūram arbitror Dignitāti, C., Fīn., III. 1, 1; I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue. (Si loquātur, concēsāt.)

659. Unreal Conditions in Ēratiō Obliqua.

Titurius sēmitābat Eburōnēs, sī [Caesar] ad esset, ad castra ventūrōs nōn esset, Caes., B.G., v. 29, 2; Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp. (O. B.: si Caesar ad esset, Eburōnēs nōn venīrent.)

Appārēbat sī diūtius virīsset, Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae inlātūres fuisset, L., XXI. 2, 2; it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar’s conduct. (O. B.: sī . . . virīsset . . . intulissent.)

Nisi sē ipse tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victūris esset allēti exīstimābant plārque futūrum fuisset ut oppidum ēmitterētūr, Caes., B.C., III. 101, 3; had not news of Caesar’s victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost. (O. B.: nisi nūntiī allēti essent, oppidum ēmissum esset.)

Pronouns in Ēratiō Obliqua.

660. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.
2. The person addressed is usually ille; less often is.


Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.
3. *Hic and iste* are commonly changed into *ille or is*, *nunc* is changed into *tum* and *tunc*, except when already contrasted with *tunc*, when it is retained.

Diodorus respondit illud argentum sē paulīs illīs diēbus missēs Līlābēum, C., Verr., iv. 18, 39 (388, n. 4).

4. *Nos* is used when the narrator’s party is referred to; compare Caes., B.G., i. 44, below.

**661. Specimens of the conversion of Oratio Obliqua into Oratio Recta.**

Oratio Obliqua.

1. *Ariovistus respondit:*  
Transisse Rhēnum sēdē non sed sponte sed rogatūm et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere īrē bellī, quod victorēs victis impōnere consuerint. Nōn sēsā Gallīs sed Gallōs sībī bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum venisse et contra sē castra habuisse; etsi omnēs copiās sē ānō proelīo pulssē sēc superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velit, sē iterum parā tum esse dēcertāre; si pāce uīt velint, inquām esse sēdē stipendio rectūsāre, quod sū voluntāte ad īd īmpetus pependērunt. Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sībī ornāmentō et prae sīdīo, non dētrimentō esse operēre idquē sē ē spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē rectūsāturum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetērunt. Quod multitūdimen Germanōrum in Galliam trādēcat, id sē suī munīendi, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere; ēius rei tēstimonīo esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnērit et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfendērit.

Caes., B.G., i. 44.

Trānsī Rhēnum nōn med sponte sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemīs domum propinquōsque reliquīt; sēdēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capō īrē bellī, quod victorēs victis im pōnere consuerunt. Nōn ego Gallīs sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppūgnandum venērunt et contra mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs copiās sē mē ānō proelīo pulssē sēc superātās sunt. Si iterum experiri volūnt, iterum parā tum sūm dēcertāre, si pāce uīt volunt, inquām est ē stipendio rectūsāre, quod sū voluntāte ad īc īmpetus pependērunt. Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ornāmentō et prae sīdīo, nōn dētrimentō esse operēt idquē sē ē spē petīti. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditicii subtrahentur, nōn mīnus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetīti. Quod multitūdimēn Germanōrum in Galliam trādēcam,* id mē munīendi, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facēre; ēius rei tēstimonīo est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnēt et quod bellum nōn intulē bellī dēfendē.

* Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise trādēcam.
2. **His Caesar ita respondit:**

*Eo sibi minus dubitazioneis dari quod eae res quas legatii Helvetii commississem, memoriae tenere atque eo gravius ferre quem minus merito populis Romanis acciderint; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisse non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptive quod neque commissum ade se intellegaret quare timearet neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris continentiae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invitò iter per provinciam per vim tempitassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarrus, quod Allobrogas vexasset memoriam depenere posset? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarunt, quodque tam diù se impune tulisse iniurias admiraretur eodem pertinente. Consuèsse enim desìs immortales que gravius hominex ex committitioe rerum doleant, quod pro scelere eorum ulciscit velit, his secundiores interdum res et diurniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidès ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicentur facturus intellegat, et si Aeduus de iniurias quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, esse cum iis pacem esse facturum.*

**Cæs., B. G., I. 14.**

3. **Sulla regi patefacti:**

*Quod pollicéatur, senatum et populum Romanum, quoniam amplius armis valorunt, non in gratiam habebunt; faciendum aliquid, quod illorum magis quam sua rerum videatur; id ideò in præmptio esse, quoniam Iugurthae copiam habebat, quum si Romanis tradiderit, foedus, Numidiae partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ullò adventurum.*

**S., Jug., III.**

---

*Hoc mihi minus dubitatiovis datur quod eae res quas vos, legati Helvetii, commississis, memoriae teneo atque hoc gravius ferò quem minus merito populis Romanis acciderunt; qui si alicuus iniuriae sibi conscius fuisse non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptive quod neque commissum ade se intellegabat quare timearet neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris continentiae obliviscit voluit, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invitò iter per provinciam per vim tempitassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarrus, quod Allobrogas vexassit, memoriam depenere posset? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriaris, quodque tam diù se impune tulisse iniurias admiraretis eodem pertinet. Consueverunt enim di immortales que gravius hominex ex committitioe rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulciscit volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diurniorem impunitatem conceder. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vos mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicemini, facturus intellegatis et si Aeduus de iniurias quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulissetis, item si Allobrogibus satisfacietis, ego vos discum pacem faciam.*
PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

(662-3) 664. Particiles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance. Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

Remarks.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents.

Manlius Gallum caesum torque spoliavit, L., vi. 42, 5; Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).

Miltiadés capitis absolutus, pecuniarum multitudinés est, Nep., i. 7, 6; Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted).

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive; see 325, n. 8.

Ne terra mutatis mutavit mœrae, L., xxxvii. 54, 18; nor hath the change of land changed the character.
Teneor Ulixēn reum facit Āikēs oculis, Quint., iv. 2, 13; Teneor indica Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 586.

665. Participles may represent Time When.

Alexander moriēns ōnūm suum dederat Perdīccae, Nep., xvii. 2, 1; Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Dionysus tyrannus Syrācūsae expulsus Corinthī puero docebat, C., Tus., iii. 12, 27; Dionysus the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boy(s) (school) at Corinth.

Ablative Absolute.

· Solōn et Pīsiāstratō Servīo Tulliō rēgnante viguērunt, C., Br., 10, 39; Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).

· Sōle ortō Volsciē sē circumvāllātōs vidērunt, Cf. L., iv. 9, 13; when the sun was risen (after sunrise) the Volsciens saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.

666. Participles may represent Cause Why.

Arūspagytae damnāvērunt puerum coturnicōm oculōs ārventem, Cf. Quint., v. 9, 13; the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out (because he plucked out) the eyes of quails.

Athēnīēsēs Alcibīadem corruptum & rēge Persārum capere nūlisse Cēmēn argūbant, Cf. Nep., vii. 7, 2; the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.

Ablative Absolute.

· Rōmānī veterēs rēgnāri omnēs volsēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōnārum expertēs, L., i. 17, 3; the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

667. Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

For Condition, see 593, 2; for Concession, 609.

Ablative Absolute.

· Māximēs virtūtēs iacere omnēs necessē est volūptāte dominante, C., Fin., ii. 35, 117; all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate if pleasure is mistress.

668. Participles may represent Relative Clauses; see 637.

Remark.—So-called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem anteē, supra diximus.
(669) 670. In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (488, n. 2):

1. Time When.

Tiberius trāiectūrus (= cum trāiectūrus esset) Rhēnum commēxitum nōn trānsmissit, Suet., Tib., 18; when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.

2. Cause Why.

Dērūdiculō fuit senex foedissimae adulōtīonis tantum infāmiā essūrus, Tac., Ann., III. 57, 3; a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

Maroboduus mōsī lægōsī ad Tiberium őrūtrōs auxillā, Tac., Ann., II. 46; Marobod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.


Quatiunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dācantur, Tac., H., III. 19, 3; they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.

Librum mīnī exigentī tibī, missūrus est nōn exāgīssēs, Plin., Ep., III. 13, 1; I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

671. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement: Grammar and Rhetoric.

672. 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness.

2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. Emphasis is usually produced by reversing the ordinary position; rhythm often governs the order of words at the close of a sentence.

(673) 674. The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.

2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.

1. Dionysius tyrannus, Syrēcōsis expulsus, 2. Corinthī puĕrōs docebat, C., Tusc., III. 12, 27; 1. Dionysius the tyrant (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse, 2. taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.

Rhetorical position:

Potentēs sequitur invidiā, Quint., IV. 1, 14; it's the powerful that envy follows.
675. Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative; subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

676. An adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs; see 291.
A dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word; so too does a word in Apposition.

Remarks.—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede; the possessives regularly follow.
2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.
3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: so titles, proper names, and the like; see 288.
4. The titles rex, imperator, etc., frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.

677. Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb; see 440.

Remarks.—1. Fert, paene, prope, usually follow.
2. Negatives always precede; see 448.

678. Prepositions regularly precede their case (413).

679. Particles vary.

Enim commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; nam and namque are regularly prepositive. See 498.

Ergo in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; igitur is commonly second or third; itaque regularly first. See 500, 501.
Tamen is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.
Etiam usually precedes, quoque always follows. See 478, 479.
Quidam and dum tum (at length) follow the word to which they belong.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

(680–7) 688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective, the copula of the predicate, the verb of the adverb.
Unde domo V., A., VIII. 114.

689. Brachylogy (breviloquentia) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.
Tam felix esse quam formosissima (= es) vellam, Ov., Am., i. 8, 27; would thou were fortunate as (thou art) fair.
690. *Zeugma* or *Syllēpsis* is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

*Manēs tē supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendēns, Tac., Ann., ii. 29, 2; stretching out hands and (uttering) supplicant cries to Tiberius.*

691. *Aposiopēsis* is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian *Quōs ego . . . . . . . . . . . . .

692. *Pleonasm* is the use of superfluous words.

693. *Enallagē* is a shift from one form to another: *vōs 5 Calliopē precōr*, V., A., ix. 525.

*Hypallagē* is an interchange in the relations of words: *dare classibus australēs*, V., A., iii. 61.

694. *Oxymōron* is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other: *cum tacet clāmant*, C., Cat., i. 8, 21.

695. *Synecdochē* is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse: *tāctum for domum, puppis for nāvis, muco for gladius, etc.*

696. *Hypérbaton, Trajection,* is a violent displacement of words. *Lydiā dio per omnēs tē deōs ōrū, H., O., i. 8, 1.*

697. *Anacolūthon,* or *want of sequence,* occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

698. *Hendiadys* (*ἐν δὲ διον*) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

*Vulgaris et multitūdō, the common herd.* *Via et ratiō (C., Vern., i. 16, 47), scientific method.* *Vi et armīs, by force of arms.*

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb: *fundi fugāriqve, to be utterly routed.*

699. *Construētio* Praegnāns. So-called *construētio praegnāns* is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

*Exitium inritat, Cf. Tac., Ann., xiii. i, 1; he provokes destruction (ad exitum inritat).*

700. *Litotēs,* or *Understatement,* is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

*Nōn indecorē pulvere sordidī, H., O., ii. 1, 23.*
Prosody.

701. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification

Quantity.

702. A syllable is said to be long by nature when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: \( e, uae, l\theta g\theta, sae\theta e. \)

Remarks.—1. (a) A vowel before -gm, -gu, -nt, -ns, and 1 consonant (j) is long by nature; (b) a vowel before -nt, -nd is short by nature.

Exceptions: Contio (for conventio), assembly; \( n\eta n\eta s, message\; r; qu\nu t\si s, f\si t h; \) also \( n\au d\au n\au s (n\au v\au e n-d\au), market day; n\au d\au n, n o t y e t; \)
pr\\\darr\darr, I seize; quindecim, fifteen; v\au n\au d\au \darr, I sell; undecim, eleven; \( v\au n\au d\au m\au l\au r, v\au n\au g\au v\au t\au n\au g e, \) and some Greek words. Compounds of -jugum have preceding vowel short.

2. Inchoative verbs have vowel before -so long by nature: disc\au, I learn.

3. Noteworthy are the following: qu\\\darr\darr\darr, fourth; \( q\nu i n\au k\au, f\au i v e; \) and its derivatives; viginti, twenty; mille, thousand, and its derivatives.

703. A syllable is said to be long by position (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ara, collum, castra.

704. A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by \( p, t, \) is common (13): ten\au-e-brae, darkness. In early Latin it is regularly short; so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

Remark.—The syllable must end in a short vowel: n\au v\au l-fragus, ship-wrecking; mell\au-flus, flowing with honey; but in ab-rump\au the a is long by position.

705. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14): sae\\\darr\darr, cruel; conclu\darr\darr, I shut up (from cl\au d\au d\au); in\ku\\darr\darr, unfair (from aequus); o\\darr\darr\darr\darr, I drive together (from o\\darr\darr\darr = con + ag\darr).

Exception.—Prae in composition is shortened before a vowel; praef\au-t\au-t\au-stus, burnt at the point (V., A., vii. 524).
706. One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or h, makes a short syllable: dēns, God; pīter, boy; nīhil, nothing.

Exceptions:
1. ë in the old Gen. of the First Declension: aurīl.
2. ë in -ēf of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: disē, but ëdēm (63).
3. a and ë before i in proper names in -īus: Gāl, Pompēl. 
4. ë in the Gen. form -īus (76, n. 2). Alterīus is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: antīus, nullīus, nūllīus, tōtīus, are found in poetry. In altīus the i is never shortened.
5. i in ëī is long, except before er: ëī, but fierēt and fierēt.
6. ëēn, ëγn, ëhē, ëmē (= divēm).
7. Many Greek words: ër, Mēneīlēs, mūsēum, Mēdēs.

Quantity of Final Syllables.

707. In Latin words of more than one syllable, final ë, a, and ù are short; i, o, and u are long. Greek words follow usually their original quantity.

1. a is short: except in
i. The Abl. of the First Declension: terrī.
ii. (2) 3. The Impv. of First Conjugation: amā.
4. Most uninflected words: trīgentā, ëxtū, but ëtā, quiā, ësā.

2. ë is short: except in
i. The Abl. of the Fifth Declension: ëīē.
ii. 2. The Impv. of Second Conjugation: mónē.
3. Most adverbs of Second Declension: rēctē; but bēnē, mālē.
(3) 4. i is long: except in
i. quāsī, nīsī, cāī (when a disyllable).
4. i is common in mīhī, tībī, sībī, ëbī, ëbī.
Observe the compounds: ibīdēm, ibīque, ubīque, ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīcunque, nēcūbī, utīnām, utīque, aścutī; (but utī).

5. û is long: bēnē, tūtū; except that it is
i. Common in many substantives of the Third Declension in û.
ii. 2. Common in the first person Pr. Indic. active of many verbs.
3. Usually short in mōdē, cītē, ëctē, egē, ëlīcē, immē, dūē, and in many other words in later poetry.

6. u is always long: cordū, frāctū, audītū.

708. In Latin all final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than s are short. Greek words have often their original quantity.

Exceptions:
1. ëllēc, lēn.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of ëllē, ëllēc, istic, istic.
4. ët, petītī, and their compounds.
709. In Latin, of final syllables in s: as, os, cs, are long; is, us, ys, short.

Exceptions:

1. -as is short in anas, anatis.
2. -es is short in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has este, itis, idis: seges, milles, obses; but abies, ariæs, paries.
   os, be (and its compounds): ades, potes.
   penes (Preposition).
3. Os is short in compes, impes, exes; and old Nom. in os in the Second Declension.
4. is is long in Dat. and Abl. Plural: terris, bonis.
   Also in the Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension: omnis = omnês.
   In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive: Quiris, Quiritis.
   In the 2nd Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation: audis.
   In the verbal forms vis, sis, fis, and velis and their compounds.
   In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pf. Subjv., is is common: vidis.
   Also in the Nom. Sing. Third Declension, when the Gen. has u: virtus, virtutis; incus, incudis; tellus, telluris.

Quantity of Monosyllables.

710. All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long: æ, ðæ, mæ, dæ, hi, ai, ðæ, ðu.
   (Except the enclitics: -quæ, -væ, -næ, -sæ, -tæ, -psæ, -ptæ.)

711. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given for final syllables: ðæs, ðæs, scis, dæt, ðæt, ðæs, ðæ, ðis, ðæs, ðæs, ðæs.
   But hic, this one; ðisc and ðisc have the quantity of their verbs.

712. Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives ending in a consonant are always long: ðæs, mœs, vœr, sœl, fœr, plœs; lœr (lœris), pœs (pœdis), bœs (bœvis), pœr (pœрис).
   Exceptions: vir and lac, os (ossis), mel;
   Also cor, vas (vadis), fel. Also quot, tot.

713. Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short: ðæn, ðis, ðæn, ðær, ðær, ðær.
   Excepting ðæn and ðær and quæn;
   And also ærs and ðær and ðín;
   Also the Adverbs in e: hic, huæ, hœc, séc; and ðæ (atque).
Quantity in Compounds.

(714) 715. Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdū), ante-cēdū, de-cēdū, prō-cēdū; (caēdū), oceādū; (caēdū), oceādū.

Remarks.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, di, se, and ve are long, re short: didūnō, sēdūnō, vēscors, réfūnō; di, in disertus, is shortened for dis, and in dirimo, dir stands for dis.

2. Nē is short, except in nēdum, nēmē (ne-hemē), nēquam, nēquīquam, nēquāquam, nēquītia, nēve.

3. Prō is shortened before vowels, and in many words before consonants, especially before f: prōvocās, prōhibēs, prōānde, prōfugīē, prōfundus, prōāteor, prōcēlla, prōcul, prōnepta. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words pro (πρό) is generally short: prōphēta; but prōlogus.

FIGURES OF PROSYODY.

(716–8) 719. 1.√Elision.—When one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or h, the first vowel is elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation, similar to Grace notes in music.

Ö felix in(a) ant(e) alīs Prīamīā virgū.—V., A., iii. 321.

√ 2. (Echiōpsia)—In like manner m final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or h.

Mōnstr(um), horrend(um), in form(e) ingēns cui mimen adōmptum.—V., A., iii. 658.

√ Remark.—After a vowel or m final, the word est, is, drops its e and joins the preceding syllable (Aphaeresis).

Si rixast ubi tā pulsās ego vāpulō tantum.—Juv., iii. 289.

Aesternās quoniam pōnēs in morte timendumust.—Lurcr., i. 111.

√ 720. Hiatus.—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. It is found most commonly in the principal caesura (750) after a monosyllabic interjection, or in a resolved Thesis where a long vowel is shortened (semihiatus).

Ö pater, Ö (h) hominum rērumque asterna potestās.—V., A., x. 18.
Crēdīmus f an qui (h) amant ipsū sibi somnīa flingunt ?—V., Ec., viii. 108.
Prōmissam ēripī generū. (h) Arma impia sūmpsl.—V., A., xii. 31.

721. Diastolē.—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Thesis.

Omnia vincit Amōr; et nōs cēlāmus Amōrī.—V., Ec., x. 69.
Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation); so particularly que.

Désine plâtra puér—et quod nunc nunc instat agámus.—V., Ec., ix. 66.
Terráque tractáisque maris caelumque profundum.—V., A., iv. 222.

722. Systolé.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

Obstupit stetéruntque comae vōx fœculbus haecit.—V., A., ii. 774.
E terrā màgn(um) alterius spectāre labōrem.—Lucr., ii. 2.

723. Hardening.—The vowels i and u assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): abiētē (abiētē), genuā (genuā), tēnūlā (tēnūlā).
Flāvīōrum rōx Ėridanus compactaque per omnēs.—V., G., i. 482.
Quam quae tēnūla sunt hiscendīst nulla potestās.—Lucr., iv. 66.

724. Dialysis.—The consonants i and v assert their half-vowel nature: dissolvō (dissolvō), Gāius (Gāius, from Gāvius).

Adulterātur et columba mīlū.—Hor., Epod., 16, 32.
Stāmina non tullī dissolvenda deō.—Tib., i. 7, 2.

725. Syncopé.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose: calificātī for calificātī.

Templōrum positor templōrum sāncte reposter.—Ov., Fast., ii. 63.
Quiddam màgnum addēns ūnum mē surpīte ( = surripite) morti.—Hor.,
S., ii. 3, 283.

726. Tmēsis.—Compound words are separated into their parts.
Quae mē cumque (= quae cumque mē) vocant terrae; sic fētus amicum.
—V., A., i. 610.

727. Synizesis.—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language: deinde, deinceps.

Nec tantum Rhodōpē mārētūr et Ismarus Orpēs.—V., Ec., vi. 30.
So even when ħ intervenes, as dehino:

Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehīne tālia fātūr.—V., A., i. 131.

Remark.—Synizesis (setting together) is also called Synaeresis (taking together), as opposed to Diaeresis (5).

728. Synapheia.—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, i. e., the two lines are joined together.

Iamque iter ëmēnai turris ët tēctà Latinōr(um)
Lābitur rīpē Iove nōn probante u-
xōrius amnis.—Hor., O., i. 2, 19.
VERSIFICATION.

729. *Rhythm.*—Rhythm means harmonious movement; and is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*).

The accented part is called the Thesis; the unaccented, the Arsis.

✓ The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (*blow, beat*).

730. *Metre.*—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (*Measure*).

A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

731. *Unit of Measure.*—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable, ( ), and is called *Mora, Tempus* (*Time*).

The long ( ) is the double of the short.

**Remark**.—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

732. *Resolution and Contraction.*—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, ; Contraction, 

✓ 733 (734). *Feet.*—When Metres are combined to form verses they are called feet.

The feet in most common use are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feet of Three Times.</th>
<th>Feet of Four Times.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trochee,</td>
<td>Dactyl,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iambus,</td>
<td>Anapaest,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribrach,</td>
<td>Spondee,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remark**.—In verses beginning with an Arsis, it is often convenient to cut this off and regard the verse as beginning with a Thesis; the short syllable is then called Anacrusis (*upward stroke, signal-beat*) and is marked :

(735–7) 736. *Rhythmical Series.*—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Dipody = two feet. Pentapody = five feet.

Tripody = three feet. Hexapody = six feet.

Tetrapody = four feet.

**Remarks**.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.
2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, Tetrameter; of five, a Pentamer; of six, a Hexameter.

(739) 740. Equality of the Feet.—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

1. Syllaba Anceps.
2. Catalexis.
3. Protraction.
4. Correction.

741. Syllaba Anceps.—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

742. Catalexis and Pause.—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic in syllabam, in disyllabam, in trisyllabum, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

\[ \text{Trimeter dactylicus catalepticus in syllabam.} \]
\[ \text{Trimeter dactylicus catalepticus in disyllabum.} \]

The time is made up by Pause.

This is marked \( \wedge \) if one mora is omitted; \( \bar{\wedge} \) if two.

743. Protraction and Syncopé.—Protraction (τορή) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more Arses, which omission is called Syncopé.

\( \sim = 3 \) (triseme long); \( \sim = 4 \) (tetraseme long).

744. Correction.—Correction is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked \( > \); similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked \( \sim \).

2. When a Dactyl is used as a substitute for a Trochee, the approximate value is often \( 1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 3 \); which may be indicated by \( \sim \sim \) (cyclic Dactyl).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

\[ a \quad b \quad c \quad b \quad c \quad b \quad d \quad e \]
\[ \sim \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \quad \sim \]  

\[ N\text{ullam \ V\textae \ sa-} \ | \ c\text{r\textae} \ | \ v\textit{i}t\text{-} \ | \ u\text{m} \ | \ s\text{e}v\text{e}r\text{i}s \ | \ a\text{r}b\text{o} \ | \text{-} \text{r}em.- \text{H}o\text{r.}, \]

\[ O., \ 1. \ 18. \ 1. \]

(a) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (b) Cyclic dactyl. (c) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (d) Syllaba anceps. (e) Catalexis.
749. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

750. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse. The most important pause in the verse is called the Great or Principal Caesura.

So in the Heroic Hexameter the Principal Caesura falls before the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first Arsis of the second half.

\[
\text{Una salūs victīs † nūllum spērāre salūtem.} - \text{V., A., II. 353.}
\]

It does not occur at the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

751. Varieties of Caesura.—Caesurae have different names to show their position in the verse, as follows:

*Sēmiternāria* after the third half foot, i.e., in the second foot.
*Sēmīquīnāria*, after the fifth half foot, i.e., in the third foot.
*Sēmīseptēnāria*, after the seventh half foot, i.e., in the fourth foot.
*Sēmīnovēnāria*, after the ninth half foot, i.e., in the fifth foot.

**Remark.**—These Caesurae are frequently called after their Greek names, thus: *trihe̔mimēral*, *penthe̔mimēral*, *hephhe̔mimēral*, etc.

752. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

\[
\text{Una sa} | \overset{a}{\text{lus}} | \overset{b}{\text{vi}} | \overset{c}{\text{otis}} | \overset{d}{\text{nul}} | \overset{e}{\text{lam}} | \overset{f}{\text{spē}} | \overset{g}{\text{rēre}} | \overset{h}{\text{sa}} | \overset{i}{\text{lūtem}}.
\]

a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; d, a Feminine Caesura.

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochee.

753. Diaeresis.—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked ‖.

\*
\[\text{Ite domum saturas ‖ venit | Hesperus | Ite capellae.} - \text{V., Ecl., ro, 77.}
\]

**Remark.**—Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect.
Iambic Rhythms.

(754–6) 757. The Iambic Rhythm is a rhythm in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented

By the Iambus: \( \odot \); 
By the Dactyl: \( \odot \odot \); 
By the Tribrach: \( \odot \odot \odot \); 
By the Anapaest: \( \odot \odot \); 
By the Spondee: \( \odot \odot \).

Remark.—The Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleusmaticus are all irrational, and are consequently marked on the schemes thus: 
\( >, > \odot, \odot >, \odot \odot \); see 744.

(758–61) 762. Iambic Trimeter.—The most common Iambic measure is the Trimeter (738, n. 1), composed of six feet, the last of which must always be an Iambus.

Suis et ipsa † Róma viribus ruit.
—Hor., Epod., xvi. 2. 
\[ \odot \odot \odot | \odot \odot \odot \odot \]

Heu mé per urbem † nám pudet
tantí malí.—Hor., Epod., xi. 7. 
\[ > \odot > | > \odot > | > \odot \]

Dérpere itnam † vóctibus possim
metús.—Hor., Epod., xvii. 78. 
\[ > \odot \odot \odot > | > \odot > | > \odot \]

Infímis Helénæ † Cástor offensús
vicoem.—Hor., Epod., xvii. 42. 
\[ > \odot \odot \odot \odot > | > \odot > | > \odot \]

Anacrustic Scheme:
\[ \odot : \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \odot \]

Remarks.—1. The Iambic Trimeter, when kept pure, has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last, the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character.

2. Diaeresis at the middle of the verse is avoided. The Caesura is usually the semiquinaria, but the semiseptenaria is found also, but either with the semiquinaria or with Diaeresis after the second foot.

Dactylic Rhythms.

(763–82) 783. The Dactylic Rhythm is a rhythm in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis (2 = 2).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: \( \odot \odot \).

Often, also, by the Spondee: \( \odot \odot \).

: 784. Dactylic (Heroic) Hexamer.—The Heroic Hexamer is composed of two Dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a Spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the Dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest Hexamer contains five Dactyls and one Spondee (or Trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables; the
shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

Scheme: \(\overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-}\) 

Ut fugiunt aquilæ | timidissima | turba columbae, Ov., A.A., I. 117, 5 Dactyls.

Cum mediū celerēs | revolant | ex sequore mergi, V., G., I. 361, 4 Dactyls.
Nē turbēs volent | rapidēs | lādēbris ventis, V., A., VI. 75, 3 Dactyls.
Versae(s) in omnīs | urgentur | cornua vēstī, V., G., III. 222, 2 Dactyls.
Ant levēs oreōs | lentō | dūcunt argentō, V., A., VII. 634, Spondaic.

Remarks.—1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the Thesis.

2. The Principal Caesura is the ōmēquānāria or penthemimal, i.e., after the Thesis of the third foot, or Masculine Caesura of the third foot; the next is the ōmēseptēnāria or hepthemimal, after the Thesis of the fourth foot.

In verses with several Caesurae, the ōmēseptēnāria outranks the ōmēquānāria, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (i.e., formed by tmesis or by elision); it also as a masculine Caesura outranks the Third Trochee.

785 (786–9). Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).

The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Penthemimers, the first of which admits Spondees, the second does not. There is a fixed Diaeresis in the middle of the verse, as marked below, which is commonly supplemented by the ōmētiernāria Caesura. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement: \(\overline{-} \overline{\ldots} \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} \overline{-} \overline{\ldots};\) and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of \(2\frac{1}{4} + 2\frac{3}{4}\) Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, anatory, epigrammatic poetry.

Scheme: \(\overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-} \overline{\ldots} | \overline{-}\)

Neither Syllaba Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diaeresis, and a syllable long by nature is preferred at that point.

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare):

Pār erat inferior versus: risisse Cupidō

Dicktur atque fūnum | surripuisses pedem, Ov.

Cum pulchre domine nostre placueris libellis,

Quō licius librīs | nōn liciet ire mihi, Ov., Am., III. 8, 5.
APPENDICES.

1. Roman Calendar.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive mēnCORR scho, mōnCORR ih, may or may not be expressed: (mēnCORR scho) January, February, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not Iūlius and Augustus, but Quintilius and Sextilius.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (kalendars), Nones (nōnse), and Ides (īda), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: kalendars January, Nones February, Ides March. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides") the Romans used for "the day before" pridē with the Acc.: pridē kalendars January, Dec. 31; pridē nōnse Jan. = Jan. 4; pridē īda Jan. = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by ante diem tertium, quartum, etc., before the Accusative, so that ante diem tertiam Kal. Jan. means "two days before the Calends of January;" ante diem quārtum, or a. d. iv., or iv. Kal. Jan., "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions ex and in: ex ante diem iii. Nōnse January or ante diem kalendars September, from June 3 to August 31; differet aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov., to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

Leap Year.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. Kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. Kal. Mart. It was called a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mart., so that a. d. vii. Kal. Mart. corresponded to our February 28, just as in the ordinary year.

To turn Roman Dates into English.

For Nones and Ides.—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.
For Calends.—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.


Year.—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, anno urbis condita). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus: Cicero was born 648, a. u. c. = 106 B.C.
Augustus died 767, a. u. c. = 14 A.D.

2. Roman Long and Square Measure.

1 pēs = 11.65 Eng. in.

2½ pedēs = 1 gradus. The īgerum (acre) contains 28,800 sq. ft. Rom.;

5 pedēs = 1 passus. Eng. acre = 43,560 sq. ft.

125 passus = 1 stadium.

8 stadia = 1 mille passuum (mile).

3. Roman Money.

The unit was originally the as (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a sēstertius, which was nominally 2½ assās.

2½ assās = 1 sēstertius (about 25 denārii = 1 aureus (nummus).

4 cts.). 1000 sēstertii = 1 sēstertium

4 sēstertii = 1 denārius. ($42.94 to Augustus’s time). Observe that decēs sēstertium = 1,000,000 sēstertii (96, B. 6).

4. Roman Names.

The Roman usually had three names; a nōmen, indicating the gēnas, a cognōmen, indicating the familia in the gēnas, and the praenōmen, indicating the individual in the familia.

The nōmina all end in īus. The cognōmina have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example: Q. Mācius Scævola (from scævus, left hand).

The praenōmina are as follows, with their abbreviations:

Aulus, A. Lūcius, L. Quintus, Q.
Gāius, C. Mānius, M’. Sextus, Sex.
Decimus, D. Numerius, Num. Titus, T.
Caesās, K. Pūblius, P. Tiberius, Ti., Tib.
5. General Rules for Gender (19, 20).

1. Names of Males are masculine; names of Females feminine.
2. Names of Months and Mountains, Rivers and Winds are masculine.
3. Names of Countries, Islands, Cities, Plants, and Trees are feminine.
4. Indeclinable words are neuter.

6. Special Rules for Gender.

5. Substantives of the First Declension are feminine (30);
   except Hadria.
6. Substantives in -us (Second Declension) are masculine (34);
   except albus, colus, humus, vannus (fem.); pelagus, virus, vulgus
   (neut.); Substantives in -um are neuter.
7. Substantives in -1 are masculine (39);
   except fel, mel, stil.
8. Masculine are nouns in -i,
   Save those in -dē, -gō and -ī,
   With carō, flesh; but cardō, frēdō,
   Are masculine with ligō, margō;
   So harpago and in -īo
   All concrete nouns like pūgā (43).
9. Substantives in -er and -or are masculine; those in -ar and -ur
   are neuter (46).

Observe: Feminine are linter, arbor.
   Neuters are: fēr, nectar, marmor,
   Aequor, iter, aequer, piper,
   Verbēr, ūber, vēr, cadēver,
   Ador, ūber and pēpēver.

10. Substantives in -is (-eris) and -ōs (-ōris) are masculine;
    except ōs, mouth (neuter).
    Substantives in -us (-eris, -oris) and -ās (-āris) are neuter;
    except tellūs (f.) and lepus and mūs (m.) (49).
11. Substantives in -a from mute stems are feminine.

Observe: Masculine: -unx, -ix, and ex,
   Saving forfex, forpex, nex,
   Lāx, vibōx, fāex, and forms of [prex].
   Masculine are:
   Lapis, parīs, pēs, and substantives in -es (-ītis);
   except mergēs.
   Also: dēns, ōnus, mōns, pōns, rudēns, torrēns.
   Neuters are: cor, lac, caput.
12. Vowel stems with nominative in -a are feminine, except those in -is, which are partly masculine, partly feminine (58).

Vowel stems with nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

Observe:

**Masculini generis**

are these words that end in -is:

- amnis, axis, bûris, cellis,
- caulis, crínis, õcasis, mollis,
- fúnis, fústis, ignis, torris,
- orbis, pânis, postis, õalis,
- vectis, vermis, unguis, ménis,

—antès, cassès, mânès (plural)—

Add to these the mullet, mûgl,
also certain animals.

13. Substantives in -âs are feminine.

14. Substantives in -us (Fourth Declension) are masculine (62),

Except aus, domus, manus, îdûs,
penus, porticus, and tribus.

Substantives in -â are neuter.

15. Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine (64),

Except diûs (common in Sing.) and meridûs.

7. Irregular Forms.

**Irregular Substantives (71).**

- âs, assis.
- anœps, anœcupis.
- bûs, bovis.
- Pl. G. boum, D. Ab. bûbus, bûbus.
- caput, capitîs.
- anœps, anœdipitis,
- præœps, præœdipitis.
- Cerès, Ceresis.
- fâr, fârîs.
- fel, fellis.
- femur, femoris, or feminis.
- iter, itineris.

- iecur, iecoris, iecineris, iecîneris, ioci-nîneris.
- Itúpiter, Iovîs.
- nâmâ, G. nullûs, Ab. nullûs.
- nix, nîvîs.
- os, ossis.
- ôs, Ôris.
- pollis, pollînis.
- sanguis, sanguînis.
- senex, senis.
- supellêx, supellêctîlis.
- Venus, Veneris.

**Pronominal Adjectives (76).**

17. With Gen. in -îus, Dat. in -i:

- Alîus, alter, alterutûr;
- uter and neuter;
- nullus and nûlûs;
- sûlûs, sûtûs, and ûnûs.
Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (87-90).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>18. Dexter, vetus,</th>
<th>dexterior, veterior, vetustior,</th>
<th>dextimus, veterrimus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>citerior, exterior, inferior, interior, posterior, prior, superior,</td>
<td></td>
<td>opimus, extimus, intimus, postrimus, postumus, primus, suprōmus, summus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17. Superlative in -imus (87, 3):

| facilis, difficultis, similis, dissimilis, | gracilis, humilis, | |

18. [iuvenis] [senex]

| iunior, senior, | minimus nātū, maximus nātū, | |

19. bonus, parvus, multus, malus, māgnus, frugt,

| mellior, minor, plūs, pēior, māior, frūgālior, | optimus (90), minimus, plurimus, pessimus, maximus, frūgālissimus, | |

Irregular Comparison of Adverbs (98).

| bene, melius, optimē, | male, pēius, pessimē, | |
| [parvus], minus, minimē, [māgnus], mēius, māximē, multum, plūs, plurimum, satis, satius. | | |
INDEX OF VERBS.

Ab-do, ere, -did, -ditum, 138, i.
ab-igô, ere, -âgi, -actum, 153.
ab-iciô, ere, -iéc, -iectum, 155.
ab-ilô, ere, -iul, -îatum, 156.
ab-nô, ere, -nul (-nuitôrus), 156.
ab-oîlo, ère, ève, itum, 124.
ab-oîlôso, ère, -ôlv, -oltum, 157.
ab-ripîo, ère, -ripul, -reptum, 158.
ab-scondô (nô), ere, -cô, -côsum, 154.
ab-sistô, ère, -stit, 149.
ab-sum, -esse, ab-fûl, â-fûl, 117.
ac-cendô, -ere, -cendi, -côsum, 154.
ac-cidô, ere, -cidi, 148.
ac-ciîlo, ère, -côp, -ceptum, 155.
ac-colô, ère, -colul, -cultum, 158.
ac-cumbô, ère, -cubul, -cubitum, 158.
ac-currô, ère, ac-currî, -cursum, 148.
ac-quirô, ère, -quisvî, -quisîtum, 157.
acuô, ere, acul, acûtum, 156.
ad-do, ere, -did, -ditum, 138, i.
ad-imô, ère, âml, âemptum, 158.
ad-ipôcôr, 1, ad-emptus sum, 165.
ad-invô, ère, -îvul, -îtum, 139.
ad-oîlôscô, ère, -ôlv, -ultum, 157.
ad-oriôr, -orîr, -ortus sum, 166.
ad-scîscô, ère, -scîvî, -scitum, 157.
ad-sistô, ère, -stit, 149.
ad-spîcîo, ère, -spexî, -spectum 147.
ad-stô, -stûre, -stit, 128, 2.
ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fûl (af-ful), 117.
ad-vesperasôcô, ère, âvi, 157.
af-ferô, -ferre, at-tûl, al-lätum, 171.
af-fiçô, ère -fîxî, -fiktum, 144.
ag-redôr, -redî, -gressus, 165.
ag-nsôscô, ère, â-nsôvî, â-ceatôm (ânoûtûrus), 157.
ago, ere, âgl, âctum, 153.
âôs, 175, 1.
alô, âre, âlsî, 141.
al-lico, ère, -lexi -lectum, 147.
al-so, ere, -sul -sûlum, 156.
alô, ère, alul, al(itum), 158.
amb-igô, ere, 153.

amb-iô, ître, ivi (ii), itum, 169, 2, v. 1.
amiciô, ître, (amicul, amixî, amictum, 160.
ampector, 1, amplexus, 165.
angô, ere, anxi, 146.
an-nô, ere, annul (annûtum), 156.
ant-cellô, ere, 158.
ante-stô, -stûre, -stî, 156.
ap-erîô, -ire, aperul, apertum, 160.
ap-petô, ère, ivi, itum, 157, ç.
ap-ponceo, âre, -plicî, -plicitum, (-plicvî, -plicitum), 187.
ap-pôndô, ere, -posul, -positum, 157.
areçô, âre, arcu (arcus, artus (adj.).
arecô (accessô), ère, arcessivî, -itum, 157.
ardeô, âre, ârsî, ârum, 141.
arguô, ere, argul (argûtum), 156.
ar-riçô, ère, ul, -reptum, 158.
as-scondô, ère, 1, sçûsum, 154.
as-spîcîo, ère, â-spexî, â-spectum, 147.
as-sentôr, 1r, assûsum sum, 166.
as-sideô, âre, -sôdi, -sessum, 148.
as-suôscô, ère, -suôvi, -suûtum, 157.
at-tendô, ere, -tendî, -tentum, 150.
at-textô, ere, -textul, -textum, 158.
at-tingô, âre, ut, -tentum, 155, ç. 2.
au-ferô, -ferre, abstuli, ablâtum, 171.
augeô, âre, auxî, auctum, 141.
avê, âv, 175, 4.

Bateô, ere, ul, 156.
bô, ere, bibî, (bibiîtum), 149.

Cadô, ere, cecîdî, çàsum, 148.
caedô, ere, cecîdî, cæsum, 148.
calefâcîo, ere, -fécl, -factum, 155 ; 173, 2.
canô, ere, cecînî, cantum, 148.
capessô, ere, ivi, itum, 157.
capiô, ere, cêpî, captum, 126 ; 155.
carpô, ere, carpsî, carptum, 144.
caveô, âre, câvî, cautum, 149.
INDEX OF VERBS.

cedo, 175, 6.

cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, 144.

cēsō, ere, ut, (cēnisus), 185, i. a.

cernē, ere, crēvi, (crētum), 157.

cētō) cière, ciēvi, ciētum, 140.

cīō ī ērē, 158.

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 146.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 158.

circum-sistō, ere, stetti, 148.

circum-stō, stāre, stetit, 188, 2.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, 144.

cō-alēscō, ere, -alūi, (-alītum), 157, 158.

cō-arūgō, ere, uf, 156.

cō-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmp(t)um, 158.

cōepī, coepisse, 175, 5, a.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōsvī, -gnitum, 157.

cō-gō, ere, co-gēt, co-ctum, 158.

cō-līdō, ere, -līst, lisum, 144.

cō-ligō, ere, -ligī, -lectum, 158.

cō-līscō, ēre, -lāxi, 141.

cōlō, ere, colui, cultum, 158.

cō-mītrō, ere, -mūst, -mūtum, 144.

cō-medō, ere, -medī, -medum (ēstum), 172.

cōminiscor, i, commentus sum, 165.

cō-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, 148.

cō-mō, ere, cómpsi, cómpsum, 144.

cō-parcō, ere, -parī, -parsum, 148.

cō-pellō, ere, compuli, -pulum, 150.

cō-perīō, irre, comperti, compertum, 162.

cō-pescō, ere, uf, 158.

cō-pingō, ere, -pēgī, -pēctum, 154.

cō-plector, i, compexus, 165.

cō-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, 144.

cō-pungō, ere, -puni, -punctum, 150.

cō-cidō, ere, -cidī, 148.

cō-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 148.

cō-cinō, ere, -cinui, 158.

cō-clādō, ere, -clāst, -clāsum, 144.

cō-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 158.

cō-cupiscō, ere, -cupīvi, cupitum, 157.

cō-cutō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, 144.

cō-dō, ere, -didī, -dītum, 188, i.

cō-dormiscō, ere, -dīvi, -ditum, 157.

cōn-fercō, ire (ferst), fertum, 161.

cōn-fērō, -ferre, -tuil, collātum, 171.

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fictum, 155.

cōn-fiteor, ērī, -fessus, 164.

cōn-fligō, ere, -flixi, -fictum, 144.

cōn-fringō, ere, -frāgī, -frāctum, 154.

cōn-gruō, ere, congrui, 156.

cōn-iiciō, ere, -iici, -iictum, 155.

cōn-quitō, ere, -quīsvi, -quīstum, 157.

cōn-serō, ere, -serī, -sētum, 158.

cōn-sedō, ere, -sedī, -sessum, 158.

cōn-sistō, ere, -stīt, -stītum, 149.

cōn-spergō, ere, -sperī, -spersum, 144.

cōn-spicīō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 147.

cōn-stituō, ere, uf, -stittātum, 156.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stītī, (constātus), 188, 2.

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi, suētum, 157; 175, 5.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsulū, -sultum, 158.

cōn-temnō, ere, -tem(p)st, -tem(p)-
tum, 146.

cōn-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 150.

cōn-texō, ere, -texi, -textum, 158.

cōn-tineō, ēre, uf, -tentum, 135, i, a.

cōn-tingō, ere, contigī, contāctum, 150.

cōnvalēscō, ere, -valui, -valitum, 158.

cōquō, ere, coxi, coctum, 147, 2; 144.

cor-ripiō, ere, ripui, -reptum, 158.

cor-ruō, ere, corrui, 156.

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -dītum, 188, i.

crēpō, ēre, crepul, crepitum, 157.

crēscō, ere, crēsvi, crētum, 157.

cubō, ēre, cubul, cubitum, 187.

cūdō, ere, cūdī, cūsum, 158.

cupiō, ere, cupīvi, cupītum, 157.

currō, ere, cūrri, cursum, 148.

cō-dērō, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, 157.

cōserpō, ere, sī, tum, 144.

cō-sō, dēdere, dēdīt, dēditum, 188, i.
INDEX OF VERBS.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 154.
dē-gō, ere, 153.
dē-lībuō, uere, ul, ātum, 156.
dē-līgō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 153.
dē-mō, ere, dēmpsi, dēmpsum, 144.
dē-pellō, ere, dēpulf, dēpulsum, 150.
dē-primō, ere, -prestī, -pressum, 144.
dē-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēnsum, 154.
dē-serō, ere, -serul, -serutum, 157.
dē-siliō, Ire, (Il), (dēsultum), 160.
dē-sinō, ere, dēsivi, dēsitum, 157.
dē-sipō, ere, 157.
dē-sistō, ere, -stitt, -stitum, 149.
dē-spicīō, ere, -spextī, -spectum, 147.
dē-suæscō, -ere, -svī, -ṣtum, 157.
dē-sum, -esse, -ful, 117.
dē-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 150.
dē-tineō, ēre, -ul, -tentum, 185, 1 a.
dicō, ere, dixī, dictum, 144.
dif-ferō, -ferre, distult, dīlātum, 171.
di-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, 157.
di-līgō, ere, -lixī, -lēctum, 144.
di-rigō, ere, -rexī, -rēctum, 144.
dir-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, 158.
discō, ere, didici, 151.
dīs-crepō, ēre, -crepul (svī), 137.
dīs-cumbō, ere, -cubul, -cubitum, 158.
dīs-pāscō, ere, -pāscui, 158.
dīs-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, 148.
dīs-stinguō, ēre, -stīnxtī, -stinctum, 146.
di-stō, -stāre, 188, 2.
dividō, ere, divisī, divisum, 144.
dō, dare, dedi, datum, 138.
doceō, ere, docui, doctum, 185, 1 a.
domō, ēre, ul, ātum, 187.
dūcō, ere, duxī, ductum, 144.

Esō, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 163, 172.
ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum, 138, 1.
ē-dormiscō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, 157.
eferō, -ferre, extuli, ālātum, 171.
e-licēō, ere, -licui, -licitum, 147.
e-līgō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 153.
e-mico, ēre, ul (āturus), 127.
emo, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, 153.
ēmungō, ēre, ēmunitī, ēmunctum.
ē-necō, ēre, ēnecui, ēnectum, 137.
ēhō, ire, īvi, ātum, 160, 2.
ē-vādō, ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum, 144.
ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānut, 158.
ex-ārēsco, ere, exārī, exārum, 141.
ex-cellō, ere, ul (exculus), 158.
ex-clūdō, ere, -sl, -sum, 144.
ex-currō, ere, ex(cu)curri, -cursum, 148.
ex-cutiō, ere, cussi, cussum, 144.
ex-imō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, 153.
ex-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 157.
ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, 150.
ex-pergīscor, I, experrēctus sum, 165.
ex-perior, Irī, -pertus sum, 166.
ex-ploeō, ēre, ēvī, ātum, 124.
ex-plicō, ēre, ul (svī), ātum (ātum), 187.
ex-plōdō, ere, -sl, -sum, 144.
ex-stinguō, ere, -stīnxtī, -stinctum, 146.
ex-sistō, ere, -stitt, -stitum, 149.
ex-stō, ere (exstāturus), 188, 2.
ex-tendō, ere, dl, -sum (-tum), 150.
ex-tollō, ere, 150.
ex-uō, ere, -ul, ātum, 156.

Facesō, ere, īvi (-i), ātum, 157.
faciō, ere, feci, factum, 155.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, 150.
farcīō, Ire, farši, faratum, 161.
fārī, 163 ; 175, 3.
fateor, fari, fassus sum, 164.
fattiscor, I (fassus, adj.).
faveō, ere, fāvī, fautum, 143.
fereō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 171.
ferveō, ēre, fervī (ferbul), 149.
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum, 167.
fīgō, ēre, fixī, fixum, 144.
flīdō, ere, fīlī, fīssum, 155.
fingō, ēre, finxī, fīctum, 146.
fīō, fier, factus sum, 173.
fillō, ere, fīxi, fīctum, 146.
frangō, ere, frōgī, frōctum, 148.
frangō, ere, frōgī, frōctum, 144.
fruō, ere, fluxī (fluxus, adj.), 144.
frōdō, ere, fōdī, fōssum, 155.
frōveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtum, 148.
frōveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtum, 148.
frōveō, ēre, ul, ātum, 158.
frondō (eo), ere (ul), frōsum, frōsum, 158.
frōveō, ēre, ul, frōctum (ātum), 187.
INDEX OF VERBS. 301

frigeō, ēre (frīxi), 141.
frigō, ēre, frīxi, frīctum, 141.
fruor, ī, frūctus (fruītus) sum, 165.
fugiō, ēre, fūgiō, fugītum, 155.
fulciō, īre, fulsī, fultum, 161.
fulgo, ēre, fulsi, 141.
fundo, ēre, fundai, funsum, 154.
fungor, ī, functus sum, 165.

Gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum, 167.
gemō, ēre, ul, 158.
gerō, ēre, gessī, gestum, 144.

gignō, ēre, genuī, genitum, 158.
gradiō, ī, gressus sum, 165.

Hæreō, ēre, hæsē, (haesum), 141.
haerō, īre, haust, haustum (hau-
stūrus, hausturus), 161.

hæve, 175, 4.
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, 128.

laceō, ēre, lacuī, to lie.

ciacō, ēre, iēci, iactum, 155.

tōcō, ēre, tacō, tacum, 153.
t-gnōscō, ēre,-gnōvī, gnōtum, 157.

illiciō, ēre, -lexī, -lectum, 147.

illūdō, ēre, -lisī, -līsum, 144.

imbusō, ēre, ul, ītum, 156.
im-pingō, ēre, pāgī, pāctum, 146.
im-calēscō, ēre, -calū, 158.
im-cendō, ēre, -cendī, -cēsum, 154.
imcessō, ēre, īvi (ī), 157.
im-cidō, ēre, -cidī, -cēsum, 148.
imcidō, ēre, -cidī, cīsum, 148.
im-cipō, ēre, -cēptī, -ceptum, 155.
im-crēpō, ēre, ul, ītum, 187.
im-cumbō, ēre, -cubulī, -cubītum, 158.

ind-plōscor, ī, indeptus sum, 165.
im-dō, ēre, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.
indulgo, ēre, indulgī (indultum), 141.
imduō, ēre, -duī, -dūtum, 156.
imfitō, ēre, -fitī, -fitum, 144.
imgēscō, ēre, ingemulī, 158.

in-grūō, ēre, ul. See congruo, 156.
in-nōtēsco, ēre, nōtī, 158.
inolēscō, ēre, -olēvī, 157.
inquam, 175, 2.
in-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 148.
in-stīō, ēre, -stītī, 148.
in-spiciō, ēre, -spektī, -spectum, 147.
in-stō, ēre, -stītī (instītūrus), 138, 2.
in-sum, -esse, -fuli, 117.

intel-legō, ēre, -lēxi, -lēctum, 144.
inter-fiōcō, ēre, -fēctī, -fectum, 155 ;

176, 2.
inter-imō, ēre, -īmī, -īmpūtum, 158.
inter-pungō, ēre, -punci, -punctum, 150.

inter-stō, ēre, -stetī, 138.
inter-sum, -esse, -fūli, 117.
invenierāscō, ēre, -āvī, 157.
in-vādō, ēre, invāsi, -vāsum, 144.
iubō, ēre, iūsī, iūsum, 141.
iungō, ēre, iūnīxi, iūntum, 146.
iuviō, ēre, iūvi, iūtum (iuviātūrus), 139.

Lābō, ī, lāpsus sum, 165.
lacessō, ēre, lacessivī, -ītum, 157.
lāedō, ēre, lāesē, lāesum, 146.
lambō, ēre, ī, 154.
langueō, ēre, ī.
largō, Īrī, ītus sum, 166.
lavō, ēre (ere), īavī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 139.
lego, ēre, lēgī, lēctum, 153.
libet, libērē, libuit (libītum est).
līceor, ārī, ītus sum, 164.
līcet, līcēre, līcuit (līcitum est).
līngō, ēre, līnīxi, līntum.
līnō, ēre, līvī (līvī), lītum, 157.
ilquō, ēre, īquit, 154.
loquor, ī, locūtus sum, 128, 2 ; 165.
laceō, ēre, īlāxi, 141.
lūdō, ēre, īlūsi, īlusum, 144.
lugeo, ēre, īnāxi, 141.

{lītum, to wash,
luō, ēre, īluī, \{ luitum, to alone for,

156.

Mālo, mālle, māluī, 142, 3 ; 174.
mandō, ēre, mandī, mānsum, 154.
maneo, ēre, māneātī, mānsum, 141.
mānsuēscī, -ere, -āvī, -ātum.
memini, 175, 5, 6.
mentior, īrī, ītus, 128, 2 ; 166.
mereor, ērī, mēritus sum, 164.
mergō, ēre, mersī, mersum, 144.
mētor, īrī, mēnsus sum, 166.
mētō, ēre, messulī (rare), messum,

158.
metuō, ēre, ul, 156.
micō, ēre, ul, 157.
mīngō, ēre, minxi, mictum.
minuō, ēre, minui, minūtum, 156.
mīscō, ēre, ul, mixtum (mixtum),
misererō, ērī, miseritus (misertus)
sum, 164.
mittē, ere, mīsī, missum, 144.
molē, ere, molūi, molitum, 158.
morēō, ēre, momordī, morsum, 142.
morior, morī, mortuus sum (morti-
tūrus), 165.
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 143.
mulcēō, ēre, mulī, mulsum, 141.
mulgēō, ēre, mulstī, mulsum (ctūm), 141.
mungō, ēre, munstī, munctum.

Nanciscor, I, nactus (nancitus), 165.
nāscor, I, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), 165.
nectō, ēre, nexit (nexūl), nexusum, 145.
neg-legō, ēre, -lēxi, -lectum, 144.
negqueō, ēre, 170.
ningō, ēre, ninxi.
nitor, ī, nīxus (nīsus) sum, 165.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, 142, 3 ; 174.
nocēō, ēre, ui (nōcitūrus).
nōsecīō, ēre, nōvī, nōtum, 157 ; 175, 5, d.
nōtāscīō, ēre, nōtūl, 158.
nūbō, ēre, nūpsī, nūptum, 144.

Ob-dō, ēre, -didī, -ditum, 138, 2.
ob-dormiscō, ēre, -dormīvi, -dormi-
tūtum, 157.
obliviscor, I, oblitus sum, 165.
ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, 143.
ob-sistō, ēre, -stī, -stītum, 149.
ob-olāscīō, ēre, -olāvi, -olātum, 157.
ob-stō, stāre, stītī (obstātūrus), 138.
obtineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 135, 1, a.
occīdō, ēre, -cidī, -cāsum, 148.
occidō, ēre, -cidī, -cisum, 148.
occinō, ēre, -cinuī, 148, 158.
occipiō, ēre, -cepī, -ceptum, 155.
occūlō, ēre, occulūi, occultum, 158.
ōdi, def., 175, 5, a.
öffendō, ēre, -fendī, -fensus, 154.
öfferō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, 171.
operiō, 1re, operul, oper tum, 160.
opperior, Irī, oppertos (or itus), 166.
ordior, Irī, orses sum, 166.
orior, Irī, ortus sum (oritūrus), 166.
ọstendō, ēre, -tendi, -tensus (-tentus), 150.

Paciscor, I, pactus sum, 165, 167, n. 2.
pandō, ēre, pandī, passum (pān-
sum), 154.
pangō, ēre, { pepigt, 150, } pāc-
pani, 146, tum.
pargō, ēre, pargī (parsi), parsī-
rus, 148.
pariō, ēre, pereīrī, partum (paritū-
rus), 152.
partior, Irī, itus, 166.
pāscō, ēre, pāvi, pāstum, 157.
pate-facio, ēre, -fēci, -factum, 178, 3.
patiō, I, passissum, 165.
paveō, ēre, pāvi, 143.
pectō, ēre, pexī, pexum, 145.
pelliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, 147.
pellō, ēre, pepullī, pulsum, 150.
pendo, ēre, pependī, 142.
pendō, ēre, pependī, pōnsum, 150.
per-cellō, ēre, perculī, perculsum, 158.
per-cênsēō, ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum, 183, 1, a.
per-cutiō, ēre, cussī, cussum, 144.
pér-dō, ēre, -didī, -ditum, 138, 2.
pér-eō, ēre, perī, itum, 169, 2, a, 1.
pér-ficiō, ēre, -fēci, -fectum, 155.
pér-fringō, ēre, -frēgi, -frāctum, 154.
pergō, ēre, perrīxi, perrēctum, 144.
per-petior, I, perpassissum, 165.
per-spicīō, ēre, -spectum, 147.
per-stō, -stāre, -stī, 138, 2.
per-tineō, ēre, ui, 135, 7, a.
pessment-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 188.
pētō, ēre, Ivi (it), itum, 157.
piget, pigere, piguit, pigitum est.
pingō, ēre, pinxi, pictum, 146.
pinsō, ēre, ui (i), pintsim (pistum,
pinsum), 188.
plangō, ēre, planxi, planctum, 148.
plaudō, ēre, plausi, plausum, 144.
plectō, ēre, (plexī), plexum, 145.
plicō, ēre, ui (i), itum (stum), 187.
pluō, ēre, pluit, 156.
polliceor, Irī, itus sum, 164.
INDEX OF VERBS.

pōnō, ere, poīsi, positiūm.
pōscō, ere, popōsci, 151.
pos-sideō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum, 148.
pos-sum, posse, potui, 119.
potior, Irī, itus sum, 166.
pōtō, āre, āvi, pōtum, pōtātum.
prae-cello, ere, -cellui, 158.
prae-cinō, ere, -cinuit, 158.
prae-currō, ere, -curri, -cursum, 148.
prae-sideō, āre, -sēdi, 148.
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.
prae-stō, -stāre, -stīti (-stātūrus), 138, 2.
prandeō, ēre, prandi, prānsum, 143.
prehendō, ere, prehendi, prehēn-
sum, 154.
premō, ere, pressī, pressum, 144.
prōd-igō, ere, -iģi, 158.
prō-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.
proficiscor, ī, profectus sum, 165.
prō-ōteor, ērī, -essus sum, 164.
prōmō, ere, prōmēsi, prōmptum, 144.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, 118.
prō-tendo, ere, -tendi, -tentum,
tēnsum, 150.
psallō, ēre, ī, 154.
pudēt, ēre, puduit, pudītum est.
pungō, ere, pupugī, punctum, 150.
pūnior, Irī, ītus sum, 166.
Quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 157.
quaessō, 175, 6.
quattīō, ere, (quassī), quassum, 144.
queō, quiēre, 170.
quoror, querī, questus sum, 167.
quiēsō, ere, quiēvi, quietum, 157.
Rādo, ere, rāst, rāsum, 144.
rāpiō, ere, rapiūt, raptum, 158.
rāuciō, īre, rauśt, raum, 150, 2.
re-cēnseō (cēnseō), ēre, -cēsiui,
-cēsum (recēnsitum), 185, 1, 2.
re-cidō, ere, reciddi, recēssum, 148.
re-cumbō, ere, -cubui, 158.
red-arguō, ēre, -argui, 156.
red-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.
red-īgō, ere, -īgi, -actum, 158.
red-imō, ēre, 158.
re-fellō, ere, refelli, 150.
re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -tum, 171.
rego, ere, rēxi, rēctum, 144.
re-linquo, ere, -liqui, -licitum, 154.
reor, rēxi, ratus sum, 164.
re-pellō, ere, repuli, pulsum, 150.
re-perīō, īre, reperīi, repertum,
152, 162.
rēpō, ēre, rēpsi, rōptum, 144.
re-sipisēō, ēre, -sipīvi (sipui), 157.
re-sistō, ēre, -stīti, -stītum, 149.
re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum,
142.
re-stō, stāre, -stīti, 138, 2.
re-tinguō, ēre, -stirxi, stinctum,
146.
re-tīneō, ēre, uti, -tento, 185, 1, a.
re-vertor, Ĩ, revertī, reversum,
153, 167.
rīdeo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, 141.
rōdō, ēre, rōst, rōsum, 147, 2.
rūdo, ēre, rūdīvi, itum, 157.
rumpō, ēre, rūmpi, ruptum, 154.
rūs, ēre, rūti, rutum (ruitūrus), 156.

Saepiō, īre, saepsi, saeptum, 161.
saliō, īre, (salīf), salutum, 160.
sallō, ēre, (sallī), salsum.
salvē, def., 175, 4.
sanciō, īre, sānxi, sāctum, 161.
sapiō, ēre, (sapiī), sapul, 157.
sarcīō, īre, sarsi, sartum, 161.
satis-dō, -dare, -dēdi, -datum, 138.
scabō, ēre, scābi, 158.
scalpō, ēre, scalpsi, scalptum, 144.
scandō, ēre, scendi, scānsum, 154.
scindō, ēre, scidi, scissum, 155.
scīsēō, ēre, scivi, scītum, 157.
scribō, ēre, scripsi, scriptum, 144.
sculpō, ēre, sculpti, sculptum, 144.
sectō, āre, seculī, sectum, 137.
sectō, āre, sectūrūs, 137.
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 148.
sēligō, ēre, -lēgi, -lēctum, 159.
sentō, īre, sānsum, sēnsum, 161.
sepeliō, īre, iva, sepultum, 159.
sequor, īre, secūtum sum, 165.
serō, ēre, 158.
sērō, ēre, sēvī, satum, 157.
serpō, ēre, serpsi, serptum, 144.
serō, ēre, stīdi, 159.
sinō, ēre, sīvi, situm, 157.
sistō, ēre, (stīti), statum, 148.
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 167.
solvō, ēre, solvi, solūtum, 158.
sonō, āre, sonui, soñiturum, 187.
sorbeō, īre (sorpsī), sorbutī, 140.
INDEX OF VERBS.

sortior, Irī, sortitus sum, 166.
spargō, ere, sparsi, sparsum, 144.
spernō, ere, sprevī, sprectum, 157.
-spiciō, 147.
spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, 142.
spuō, ere, spuī, spūtum, 158.
statuō, ere, statūī, statūtum, 156.
sterīnō, ere, strāvī, strātum, 157.
sternuō, ere, sternūī, sternūtum, 156.
sterīō, ere, sterītū, 158.
-stinguō, ere, 146.
stō, stāre, stētī, stātum, 188.
strepō, ere, strepūī, strepītum, 158.
strīdeo, ēre (ere), strīdī, 148.
stringō, ere, strīnīctum, strīctum, 146.
struō, erro, struāctum, strāctum, 144.
-suādeo, ēre, suāsuī, suāsum, 141.
sub-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138.
sub-igō, erō, -igitum, 153.
suceōdō, ēre, -cessī, -cessum, 144.
succendō, ēre, -cendi, -cēnsum, 154.
-succēnseō, ēre, ulī, -cēnsum, 185.

Vēdō, ere, 144.
valē, 175, 4.
vehō, ere, vexī, vectūm, 144.
vellō, ere, vellī (vulsti), vulsum, 154.
vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.
vēn-eō, ire, Ivi (ii), 169, 2, n. 1.
veniō, ire, venī, ventum, 162.
vēnnum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 138.
vereor, ēri, veritus sum, 164.
verrō, ere, verrī, versum, 153.
vertō, ere, vertī, versum, 153.
vescor, i, 165.
vesperāscō, ere, āvi, 157.
vētō, ēre, vetulī, vetitum, 137.
video, ēre, vidī, visum, 149.
vinciō, ire, vinxi, vincītum, 161.
vincō, ere, vici, victum, 154.
visō, ēre, visī, 153.
vivō, ere, vivī, victum, 144.
volo, velle, volūtūm, 158; 174.
volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, 158.
vomō, ere, vomulī, vomitum, 158.
voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, 149.
PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).

2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).

3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).

4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).

5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).

6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (321).

7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (614).

8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with quam prò, quam ut, quam quò (298).

9. In comparing two qualities, use either magis quam with the positive, or a double comparative (299).

10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantive (291, r. 2).

11. The Genitive forms mei, tu, suli, nostri, vestri, are used mainly as objective genitives; nostrum and vestrum as partitive (304, 2).

12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).

13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in Órātiō Obliqua (521).

14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).

15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, r. 2).

16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, r. 6).

17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, r. 1).
18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (357); the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (358).

19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).

20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfillment (263).

21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly null with the Infinitive; sometimes null with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, n. 2), or caveat with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.

22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).

23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, etc. (423).

24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (582).

25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (583).

26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (594).

27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).

28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (423).

29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).

30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, etc., to indicate Design (480).

31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431).

32. The Supine in -num is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (485).

33. The Supine in -a is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (486).

34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (382).

35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (486, n.).
36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).

37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment (537).

38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (208).

39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).

40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (538).

41. The Appositional Genitive is used after vox, nomen, verbum, res, etc. (361, 1).

42. The Epexegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after genus, vitium, culpa, etc. (361, 2).

43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).

44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the objective Genitive, of the object of that action (363, 2).

45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.

46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).

47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).

48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in -ex (375).

49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting usually take the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, n.).

50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).

51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).

52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.
53. **Interest** and **Desire** take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).

54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).

55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).

56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super* may take a Dative; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347).

57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).

58. The Dative is used with *esse* to denote possession (349).

59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).

60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).

61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).

62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).

63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person to Whom (355).

64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).

65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (380).

66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *præter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, and *trans*, take the Accusative; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (381).

67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).

68. The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (334–6).

69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither; so also *domus* and *rūs* (337). See No. 74 and 92.

70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).

71. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).

72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).

73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (349).

74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with *in* (385);
PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

Place Whence by the Ablative, usually with ex, de, or ab (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (386, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with cum (392).
76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).
77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without ex and de (395).
78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with ex (396).
79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).
80. Comparatives without quam are followed by the Ablative (398).
81. Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or cum (399).
82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400); essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.
83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).
84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with in (ab) (401).
85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (402).
86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).
87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404); General Price in the Genitive (379). See No. 52.
88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).
89. The Ablative is used with opus and sumus (406).
90. Uter, abuttor, fruir, fungor, potior, vescor, take the Ablative (407).
91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence: Ablative Absolute (409).
92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.
93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).
94. A question for information merely is introduced by -ne (454).
95. A question that expects the answer yes is introduced by nonne (455).
96. A question that expects the answer no is introduced by num (456).
97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (365).
98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).
99. **Sequence of Tenses.** Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).

100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).

101. In *Gratian* Obliqua all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).

102. *Quod, the fact that,* *in that,* is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).

103. *Quod, quia, quoniam,* and *quando* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).

104. *Quod* is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).

105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (545).

106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).

107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take *ne* with the Subjunctive (548).

108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quaerimus* with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.

109. Verbs of Fear are followed by *ne* or *ut (ne non)* and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).

110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *ut non* (552).

111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *ne,* or *ut non* (558).

112. Negatived or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, *etc.*, of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with *quia* (555). See No. 108.

113. A Consecutive Clause with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).

114. *Ut, ut primum, cum, cum primum, ubi, ubi primum, simul, simul atque, and postquam* take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of *as soon as;* but the Imperfect is used of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).

115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).
116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).

117. Dum, dōnec, quod, quamdiu, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all tenses (569).
   • 118. Dum, while, while yet, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).

119. Dum, dōnec, quod, until, take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).

120. Dum, dōnec, quod, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).

121. Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only, take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).

122. Antequam and priusquam take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).

123. Temporal cum, when, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).

124. Historical cum, when, is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place (585).

125. Causal and Concessive cum, when, whereas, although, are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).

126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).

127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (595).

128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).

129. Ut si, sī si, quæsi, quam si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, and velut si, introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).

130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by etsi, etiam si, tamet si, with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604); by quamquam, with the Indicative (605); by quamvis, with the Subjunctive (606).

131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625); so explanatory quī, when equivalent to quod (626).

132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part
of the utterance of another; so in ὅρατιο Obliqua and Final Clauses (628).

133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by Attraction (629).

134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when quæ = ut (final) is (680).

135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when quæ = ut (consecutive) is; so after dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus, etc.; after an indefinite antecedent; after comparatives with quam (631).

136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeliness may be introduced by atque or se (643).

137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by quam (644).

138. In ὅρατιο Obliqua, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).
GENERAL INDEX.

A—length of final, 707, 1.
ab (E)—Syntax of as prep., 417, 1; position of, 413, n. 1; Dat. after vbs. cdp. with, 247, n. 5; with Abl. of Separation, 200; with Towns, 391, n. 1; with Abl. of Origin, 305; with Abl. of Agent, 401; with Abl. Ger., 433.
abesse—with Acc. of Extent, or & and Abl., 336, n. 2; with Dat., 340, n. 4; tantum abest ut,—ut, 663, n. 1.
ability—adj. of, with Inf., 433, n. 2.
ablative—defined, 33, 6; Pl. in εκ, 29, n. 4; mute stems in I, 54; vowel stems in I, 57, n. 2; 4th decl. in ubus, 61, n. 1; Pl. in Is (for IEs), 72, 2; adj. of three endings in σ, 79, n. 1; adj and part. in I and e, 32; adj. in e and I, 33; of Comp., 89, n. 1; forms adv., 61.

With abesse and distare, 336, n. 2; with Acc. after vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with prep. instead of Part. Gen., 372, n. 2; of Place where, 395; of Towns, 396; of Place whence, 390; with vbs. of Abstaining, 390, 2; with Adjs., 390, 2; of Towns, 391; prep. with Towns, ib. n. 1; of Attendance, 393; of Time, 393; of Time with in, 394; of Origin, 396; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397; with Comp., 396, 398; of Manner, 399; of Quality, 400; of Instrument, 401; of Agent, 314, 401; with verbs of Sacrificing, 401, n. 4; with nitor, fidō, etc., 401, n. 6; of Standard, 402; of Difference, 403; of Price, 404; with vbs. of Plenty and Want, 405; with opin and illus, 408; with utor, frōt, etc., 407; of Cause, 408 and rr.; of Ger., 431, 432; of Sup., 436.

ablative absolute—syntax of, 409, 10; of part, 665; 666.
abstaining—vbs. of, with Abl., 390, 2.
abstract—relations expressed by Indic., 254, n. 1; substa. become concrete in Pl., 294, n. 5; formation of, 181, 2, 5.
abstrī—with Abl., 407.

So—see atque; So si with Subj. of Comparison, 602.
accentuation—15; effect of enclitics, ib. n. 1; in cpds., ib. n. 2; in Voc., ib. n. 3.
accidit—sequence after, 513, n. 2; with quod, 525, n.; with ut, 553, 3.
accusative—definition, 23, 4. 3d decl. 36; in im, of vowel stems, 57, n. 1; Pl. in is and es, 57, n. 4; in is, 83, n. 2; of Comp. in is, 89, n. 2; forms adv., 81.

Becomes subj. of pass., 216; Direct obj., 330; with cdp. vbs., 331; Inner obj., 332, 333; neut. pron. and adj., 333, 1; Cognate, ib. 2. Double Acc., 333, 1; of Extent, in Degree, Space, Time, 334-336; with abesse and distare, 336, n. 2; with abhinc, 336, n. 3; of Local Object, 337; of Respect, 338. Double Acc., 339-348; with vbs. of Inquiring, etc., 339; with vbs. of Naming, Making, etc., 340; with Interjections, 343, 1; and Dat. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with prep. for Part. Gen., 372, n. 2; subj. of Inf., 393, n. 1; 430; of Ger., 430, 432; of Sup., 435; with Inf. as object clause, 536-538; with Inf. as subj., 538; with Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 545, n.; with Inf. in dependent comparative clause, 641.

accusing—vbs. of, with Gen., 378.
acquitting—vbs. of, with Gen., 378.
active voice—112, 2; 213; of something caused to be done, 219; periphrastic, 347.
ad—vbs. cdp. with, take Acc., 331; with Towns and Countries, 337, rr. 1 and 2; with Acc. of End after vbs. of Taking, etc., 340, n. 2; with Acc. for Dat., 346, n. 2; vbs. cdp. with, take Dat., 347; in the neighborhood of, 396, n. 2; position of, 413, n. 1; as prep., 416, 1; with Acc. Ger., 429; 433, n.

adding—vbs. of, with quod, 525, 1; with ut, 553, 4.
adjective—16, 2; decl. of, 17; defined, 72; 1st and 2d decl., 73; stems in ro, 74; with Nom. wanting, 74, n. 2; Pronominal,
anacrusis—723, n.
anasectic—foot, 723.
animi as Loc., 374, n.
antissa—vbs. cpd. will take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Standard or Acc. of Extent, 403, n.; as prep., 414, 8, with Acc. Ger., 432, 1.
antiquam—see antequam.
anecdote—action, 561–567: of Rel., 613; repetition of, 615; incorporation of, 616; indefinite, 621; def. or indef. with Indic. or Subjv., 631, 1 and 2.
anthology—with Indic., 574–578; with Pr., 578; with Pf. and Fut. Pf., 578; with Subjv., 577.
ascend—definition, 224; Hist. Pf., 239.
aspiration—714, n.
apoidosis—569; omission of, 601; in comparative sentences, 603; in Indic. in Unreal Conditions, 597, n.4; after vb. requiring Subjv., id. n.5.
apothesis—601.
appellation—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 308.
aposition—330; concord in, 331; Partitive, 323, 333; Restrictive, 323; Distributive, 323; to sentence, 324; Predicate, 323; Gen. of, 321; to names of Towns, 308, n.1; to Loc., 411, n.2; pron., incorporated, 614, n.4; subst. incorporated, 616, 2.
apud—414, 4.
arrangement—of words, 671–683; grammatical or rhetorical, 672; of simple sentences, 674; of interrog. sentences, 675; of adj. and Gen., 676; of advs., 677; of preps., 678; of particles, 679.
as—decl. of, 43, n.
asking—vbs. of, with two Accs., 239 and n.1; with ut, 548.
asseverations—in Subjv., 362.
at—use of, 488.
atque—syntax of, 477; with adj.s. of Likeness, etc., 643.
atqui—489.
attendance—Abl. of, 352; with cum, id. n.1; instrumental, id. n.2.
attraction—in Gender, 311, n.5; in mood, 506, 4, 629, 632, 633; of Rel., 617.
attributives—588; concord of adj., 239; with two or more subs., 390; position of, 231; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 231, 1, n.2; pred., 325; with part., 437, n.
ant—use of, 493; ant—ant, 445.

antem—position of, 436, n.; syntax of, 434.

auxiliary—vbs. with Inf., 290, 1, 3.

becoming—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.

beginning—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and n. 8.

believing—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 587; with Nom., 588.

bellum—in Abl. of Time, 206, n.; bellum as Loc., 411, n. 1.

beseeching—vbs. of, with ut, 545.

bewailing—vbs. of, with n. 8, 548.

bidding—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

bini—for duo, 96, n. 3.

bós—decl. of, 83.

brachylogy—589.

buying—vbs. of, with Gen. or Abl., 371, 320.

causa—causa—defined, 750—753.

calling—vbs. of, with two Accs., 349; with two Noms., 206.

causal numbers—adjs. of, with Inf., 421, n. 3.

cardinal numbers—n. 4; Gen. Pl. of n. 6, n. 2; position of, 674, n. 3.

carı—decl. of, 43; gender of, 43, 1.

cases—defined, 23; recti and obliqui, 24; case-forms, 25; endings, 55, 2.

catalexia—428.

causa—with Gen., 372; with Gen. Ger., 428, n. 2.

causal sentences—coordinate, 498; subordinated, 526—543; with quod, etc., and Indic. or Subjv., 546, 541; rejected reason, t. b.; with vbs. of Emotion, 542; with cum, 586; relative, 624; clauses in O. O., 655.

causation—vbs. of, with part., 537; with ut, 553, 1; pass. with ut, t. b. 3.

cause—Abl. of, 498; represented by part., 660, 670, n.

caváre—with Subjv. for Impv., 371, 2; with Dat., 346, n. 2; constructions with, 548, n.

cedo—defective, 175, 6.

cellare—with two Accs., or d., 339 and n. 1 and 3.

(cetera)—Nom. masc. wanting, 74, n. 2, 86, 5; use of ceterum, 491; cetera used partitively, 281, n. 2.

charge—in Gen. with Judicial verbs, 378; with nómine, t. b. n. 1; in Abl., t. b. n. 3.

choosing—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 349.

circa—position of, 412, n. 1; as prep., 410, 5; with Acc. Ger., 493.

circular—as prep., 410, 6.

circular—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; never repeated, t. b. n. 5; as prep., 410, 5.

cis—as prep., 410, 7.

citius quam—constr. after 644, n. 3.

citrix—as prep., 410, 7.

coepli—175, 5, 6; with Inf., 423, n. 3.

cogere—with ut, 553, 2; conclude, with Inf., 546, n. 1.

Cognate Accusative—333, 2; similar phrases, t. b.; with second Acc., 421.

cognatus—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n. 1.

cognomen case—with Dat., 346, n. 5.

colus—decl. of, 68, 4.

communicate—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n. 1.

comparative—with 86, 87; with quam or Abl., 296; omission of quam, t. b. 4; age with natura, t. b. 5; of Disproportion, 296; doubled, 296; with Part. Gen., 372; with Abl. of Respect, 372; with quam qui, 331, 3.

comparative sentences—333—444; moods in, 659; vb. omitted in, 660; in dependent clauses, 641; correlatives in, 643; with atque, 642; with quam, 644.

comparisons—of adjectives, 86, 87; of participles, 86, 87; of adv., 83; irregular, 90; standard of, omitted, 377; of qualities, 390; conditional sentences of, 602.

compelling—vbs. of, with ut, 553, 2.

composition of words, 193—200; of subjets., 194—195; of vbs., 199, 200.

compounds—107, 108; quantity in, 715.

conceiving—vbs. of, with obj. clause, 522.

concessive sentences—303—400; with etal, etc., 604; with quamquam, 605; with quamvis, 606; with hicet, 607; with ut, 608; representatives of, 600.

concord—210; pred. with subj., 211; of multiplied subj. and pred., 338—337; of app., 331; of rel., 614.

condemning—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constra., t. b. 2.

conditional sentences—589—602; negatives, 591; two excluding, 592; equivalents of Protasis, 593. Logical, 595; alve—alve, t. b. 4. Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Indic. in Apodosis, t. b. 8; in O. O., t. b. 4; Incomplect, 599—601; of Comparison, 602; in O. O., 654; Logical, 657; Ideal, 655; Unreal, 650.

considere—with Abl., 401, n. 6.
conjunctio—defined, 17; systems of, 120; first, 123; second, 123; irregular second, 124; third, 125; third in it, 126; fourth, 127; deponent, 123; periphrastic, 128; notes on, 120, 121; change in, 128.

consecutive sentences—exceptional sequence in, 613; syntax of, 563-568; Pure, 563; with dignitas, etc., in n., 62; with idea of Design, in n., 63; ut non, without, in n.; Complementary, 563; vbs. of Effecting, 563; vbs. of Hindering, 564-566; quia with vbs. of Preventing, 565; with vbs. of Doubt, in n.; quia = ut non, 566; Explanatory ut, 567; Exclamatory question, 569; rel. sentences, 561; with quia, 562.

constrakukan prosagnosia, 600.

consilere—with Dat., 544, n.2.

contemporaneous action—530-573; in Ext., 569-570; in Limit, 571-576; contentus, with Abl. 561, n.6.

continuita—with ut, 553; contiguous, sequence after, 513, n.

continuance—vbs. of, with Inf., 623.

contr—position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 418, 9.

contracting—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 499.

contrarius—with Gen. or Dat., 368, n.1.

contrasts—with hi—ille, 307, n.2, 2; with ipsa, 311, n.1; alter—alter, etc., 223.

convicting—vbs. of, with Gen., 376, other constr., in n.2.

coordinatio—defined, 473; syntax of, 479-503; copulative, 482-493; adverbative, 482-491; disjunctive, 492-497; causal and illative, 498-503.

copula—with Pred., 305; itself a pred., in n.; omitted, 309; agrees with pred., 311, n.1, n.2, c.

copulative—vbs., 308; with nom. and Inf., in n.1. Particles, 474, 461. Sentences 474-475; use of neg. to connect, 460.

cor—decl. of, 53.

coram—as prep., 417, 3.

correlatives—109-111; coordinating particles, as tum—tum, alius—alis, etc., 462; of Rel., 518; absorption of, 619, 621; position of, 620; in comparative sentences, 643; omitted, 643, 3.

correction—744.

countries—in Acc., with prep., 337, n.1; without, in n.1.

crēdere—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 306.

cum—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Attendance, 303; with Abl. of Manner, 303; with unnatural productions, 400, n.2; as prep., 417, 4; position of, 413, n.1; with Abl. Ger., 431.

Primum, as soon as, 561-565; with Iterative action, 565, 567; with Subjv., in n.; Temporal, 580; quia cum, in n.; memini cum, in n.2; with Lapse of Time, in n.3; inverse, 561; Iterative, 564; Circumstantial, 566-568; Historical, 565; Causal, 566; Concessive and Adversative, 597; cum—tum, 566.

Dactylic—foot, 783; rhythms, 783-789.

dativus—defined, 23, 3; 1st decl. in ubras, 20, n.4; 4th decl. in ubus, 61, n.1; 5th decl., uncommon, 63, n.1; in adjs. in is (for ils), 75, 2; in I of pron. adjs., 74, 9.

With act. vbs. unchanged in pass., 217, 344, n.1; of Indirect Obj., 348; with trans. vbs., 344; with vbs. of Taking Away, in n.; with intrans. vbs., 345; with copd. vbs., 347; with vbs. cpd. with de, ex, ab, in n.5; and Acc. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; of Possessor, 349; of Personal Interest, 350, Ethical, 361; of Reference, 353, 353; with participles, 353; of Agent, 315, 344, Double, 346; with subst., 357; Local, 358; with adjs., 359; of Ger., 400.

dē—with Abl. for second Acc., 330, n.1, 3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347, n.5; with Abl. of Separation, 200, 1 and 2; of Origin, 395; of Respect, 397, n.; of Cause, 400, n.3; position of, 413, n.1; as prep., 418, 5, with Abl. Ger., 433.

dēesse—with Dat., 346, n.3.

decennia—defined, 17; varieties of, 27; rules for, 29; 1st, 29, 30; 2d, 31-33; 3d, 35-36; 4th, 61, 62; 5th, 66, 64; vary between 5th and 3d, 66, n.2; of Greek subst., 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 73; of pron. adjs., 76; of parts, 80.

dēesse—with Dat., 346, n.4.

déferre—with Acc., 346, n.3.

deliberative questions—305; Subjv. in O.O., 651, n.2.

dēligere—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 306.

demanding—vbs. of, with ut, 568.

demonstratives—106; attracted in Gender, 511, n.5; syntax of, 305-307; hic,
306; iste, 306; illa, 307; followed by quod, 305, 3; position of, 677, n.1.
deponent—112; conjunction, 128; list of, 166-166; semil., 167; how used, 320.
depriving—vbs. of, with Abl., 405, n.
desire—adj. of, with Gen., 377; vbs. of, with Inf., 331, c, 403, 2, n. 4.
determinative pronouns—103, 306.
dev—decl. of, 33, n. 6.
deyster—76, n. 1; Comp. of, 87, 1, 3 and 7.
discasia—8, 783.
dialysis—754.
distolit—781.
discere—with two Nomes. in pass., 306.
difference—measure of, 463.
difficile—comparison of, 67, 3.
difficile—with Dat., 401, n. 4.
dignus—constr. after, 583, n. 9; qui or ut, with Subjv., 631, 1.
diphthongs—length, 14; quantity, 706.
disjunctive—particles, 482; sentences, 482-487; questions, 482; forms of, 482; indirect, 480, 2.
disproportion—by quam prs., qui, ut, etc., 398.
dissimilis—Comp. of, 67, 3.
distise—with Acc., or S, and Abl., 335, n. 2.
distributives—77; with pluralis tantum, id. n. 3; for cardinals, syntax of, 305; distributive apposition, 332.
doeere—with two Accs., or S, 330, and n. 1; doetis, id. n. 2; doeere as pass., id. n. 4; constr. after, 423, n. 6.
dole—with vbs. of, take obj. clause, 582, 585, 1.
domus—decl., 61, n. 2, 88, 4; dūnum, 337;
domn, 390, 2; domn, 411, n. 2; with Gen. of poss. pron., 411, n. 3.
dōne—while, 589; until, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572.
doubt—vbs. of, with quin, 555, 3.
dropping—vbs. of, with quod clause, 535.
dubitare—an, 457, 2; a quo dubitāt, with quin, 555, 9; with Interrog., id. n. 1; with Inf., id. n. 2.
dum—while, 590, 570; until, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 573; provided that, 573; retained, with Indic. in Œ.O., 486, n. 3.
dummodo—provided that, 573.
due—66; and amblo, 153.
E—length of Æl, 707, 2; see ex.
ecce—with Acc. and Nom., 343, 1, n.
ecquis—104.
ecthlisae—719, 3.
effecting—constr. of vbs. of, 553.
eflorae—with Subjv. and ut, 553, 1 and 3.
egère—with Gen. or Acc., 405, n. 1.
ego—decl. of, 100; Gen. Pl., 304, 3 and 3; na in Œ.O., 609, 4.
elision—719, 1.
ellipsis—689.
emere—with Gen., 379.
emotion—vbs. of, with Acc., 330, n.; with Abl., 409; with Acc. and Inf., 633; Causal sentences after, 548 and n.
em—in exclamations, 343, 1, n.
enallage—693.
enclitics—effect of, on pronunciation, 15, n. 1.
endavor—vbs. of, with ut, 548, 1.
ending—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, 2.
emn—position of, and use of, 403.
epicene substantives—92, 3.
ergo—use of, 418, 10; with Acc. Ger., 482.
ergo—with Gen., 377; with Gen. Ger., 423, n. 3; usage of, 502.
esse—conjugation of, 116; cpds., 117; as copula, 206; omitted, 206, 200, 2; with Fut. part. to form periphrastic, 547; cpd. tenses with fut., etc., id. n. 1; futūrum esse ut, 243; in eo est ut, 243; with Ger., 451, 1; with Gen. of Price, 370; with Dat. Ger., 459; est, it is the case, with ut, 583, 3; fuit cum, with Subjv., 580, n. 1; sunt qui, with Subjv., 631, 1.
et—in numerals, 96, 4, 97, 4; et—et, usage of, 478; omitted, 462, 2 and 3.
etan—use of, 469.
Ethical Dative—531.
etiam—strengthens comparative, 301; syntax of, 478; yes, 671, 1; and quiique, 479, n.; after sed, varium, 482, 5.
etiam— with Indic. or Subjv., 604.
eti—with Indic. or Subjv., 604.
ex—vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 447, n. 5; with Abl. of Separation, 300, 1 and 2; with Towns, 301, n. 1; with Abl. of Origin, 300; of Material, 300; of Respect, 307, n.; Measure, 403, n.; of Cause, 409, n. 2; use as prep., 417, 6; with Abl. Ger., 422.
exclamations—in Acc., 343, 1; in Acc. and Inf., 554; exclamatory questions, 555.
exstitit— with Gen., 379; with ex and Abl., 402, n.
exspectare—constr. of, 757.
extent—in Degree, 334; in Space, 335; in Time, 206.
extr—as prep., 416, 11.

fæere—fæc (ut) for Imp., 371, 1; with pred. Gen., 306, n. 1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with consequent clause, 553, 1.

fæces (fæx5) ut as periphrasis, 60, 1; non possum (fæcre) quin, 544, n. 1.

fear—sequence after vbs. of, 516, n. 3; clauses of, and Final Clauses, 543, n. 3; syntax of clause of, 550.

fere—position of, 677, n. 1.

fere—conj. of, 171.

fide—fide with Abl., 401, n. 6.

fieri—conjugation of, 173; with two Noms., 306; with Gen. of Price, 379; with ex or dē, 306, n. 1; with ut, 553, 3.

Figures—of Syntax and Rhetoric, 686-700; of Prosody, 710-721.

filling—vbs. of, with Abl., 405.

final sentences—543-550; Pure, 545; Complementary, 544-549; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546; Inf. instead, 60, n. 1; Subjv. without ut, 60, n. 2; with vbs. of Hindering, 547-549; nē with vbs. of Preventing, 546; quōminus, 543; with vbs. of Fear, 550; eight circumlocutions for, 544, n.; sequence in, 612.

final syllables—quantity of, 711-712.

fitness—adj. of, with Dat., 350; with Dat. Ger., 400.

figitāre—with Abl. or s, 306, n. 1.

following—vbs. of, with ut, 553, 3.

foot—in Metre, 733, 734; equality of, 740; conflict of Word and Verse, 750.

forbidding—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; with nē, 548.

forgetting—vbs. of, with Gen. or Acc., 376.

formation of words—170-200; simple words, 170-182; suffixes, 180; formation of subs., 181; of adjs., 182; without suffixes, 183; formation of vbs., 180-182; cfd. words, 193-200; subs., 191-198; vbs., 198, 200.

frestus—with Abl., 401, n. 6.

frat—with Abl., 407; personal Ger., 427, n. 5.

fulness—adj. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Gen., 383, 1.

fungi—with Abl., 406; personal Ger., 427, n. 5.

future—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; definition of, 223; usage of, 223; of volf and possum, 65, n. 2; in Imp. sense, 263; periphrastic act., 247; part. act., 283; representation of in O. O., 516, 515; periphrastic in Unreal Cond., 516, n. 1; Inf., 630; in rel. sentences, 622; syntax of part., 690, 670.

futūre perfect—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; defined, 223; syntax of, 264; as Fut., 60, n. 1; with nōtō, volf, possum, etc., 60, n. 3; as Impv., 245; representation of, in O. O., 514, 515; Pr. and Plupl. periphrastic in Unreal Condition, 515, n. 1; in rel. sentences, 622.

Gender—19; common, 21, 1; epicene, 213; substantiva mobilia, 60, 2; of 1st Decl., 30; of 2d Decl., 34; of 3d Decl., 38, 48, 68, 56, 58; of 4th Decl., 62; of 5th Decl., 64; concord in, 206; neut. Pl. with feminines, 60, 3.

genitive—defined, 22, 2; of 1st Decl. in 73, 74, um, 23, n. 2; of 2d Decl. in 1 (from stems in io), in um, 23, n. 1 and 2; of 3d Decl. in um, 2um, 54, 57, n. 3; of Greek subs. in ἐκ, εἰς, 66, n. 1; of adj., 73; in um, 75; of pron. adj. in 72, 76; of adj. of three endings in um, 70, 92, 83, 83, n. 3 and 4; of Comp. of part., 80, n. 3; of Cardinals, 86, n. 2; of Distributives, 97, n. 1.

With mille, 353; mei, etc., as objective, 204, 2; nostrum as Part., 60, 3; poss. pron. for Gen., 204, n.; in app. to poss. pron., 321, n. 2; Part. Gen. for Part. App., 321, n.; Adnominal, Appositive, 321; Exegetical, 321; Possessive, 323; Subjective and Objective, 323; 1st and 2d persons as possessive, 324; of Quality, 365; as Pred., 366; with fæCre, 60, n. 1; genetis, 366, n.; with prepositional subst, 373; with adj., 374; with participles and verbs, 375; with vbs. of Memory, 376; with vbs. of Emotion, 377; with Judicial vbs., 378; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 379, 380; with interest and refert, 381; with vbs. of Fulness, 383; Ger., 426; with case, causā, etc., 60, n. 2; position of, 678.

genus—decl. of, 49.

gerund and gerundive—112, 5; formation of, 115, 5; Agent of, in Dat., 215, 9; with case to form periphrasis, 251; syntax of, 433-433; Acc. of, with preps., 433; Abl. of, with preps., 433.
GENERAL INDEX.

319

giving—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 345; with Acc. Ger., 430.

gratis—with Gen., 373; with Gen. Ger., 438, n.2.

Greek substantives—65; Greek Acc., 338.

habēre—with two Noms. in pass., 206; with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of the Result, 236; first Impv. wanting, 267, n.; with two Accs., 340, n.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; be able, with Inf., 423.

happening—sequence after vbs. of, 513, n.2; vbs. of, with quod clause, 525, 1; ut instead, id. n.; vbs. of, with consecutive clause, 553, 3.

hands—441 and 443; scīt an, 457, 2.

havēre—175, 4.

hendiadys—686.

heteroclites—68.

heterogeneous substantives—67.

hiatus—720.

hīo—104, 1; syntax of, 305; and ille, 307, rr, 1, 2; with Abl. of Time, 363, n.4; in O.O., 660, 3.

hindering—vbs. of, with nō, 648; with quin, 554-556; and vbs. of Preventing, 555; and vbs. of Doubt, id. 2.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE—syntax of, 647.

HISTORICAL PERFECT—224; force of, 229; and Pure Pf., 235; and Impf., 231, 240.

HISTORICAL PRESENT—224 and 226; with dum, 670.

HISTORICAL TENSES—225.

hōpes—constr. of, vbs. of, 423, n.5; sequence after, vbs. of, 515, n.3; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 557, n.4.

humī, as Loc., 411, n.2.

hypallage—686.

hyperbaton—696.

hypotaxis—472.

I—and J., n.2; sound of, 2; effect of, on preceding vowel, 12, n.2; I-class of vb. stems, 133, v.; length of final, 707, 4.

iām—with Pr. Indic., 230; with Impf. Indic., 234; iam—iam, 482, 1.

Imblic—foot, 734; rhythms, 757-757.

IDEAL CONDITION—606; = Unreal, id. r.1; in O.O., id. n.5, 668.

Item—decl. of, 103, 3; syntax of, 310; the same as, with quī, ut, atque, cum, or Dat., 310, n.2; not used with in, 310, n.3.

idōnus—constr. with, 553, n.2; with quī and Subjv., 631, 1.

igitor—position of, 504, n.; usage of, 501.

ille—decl. of, 104, 3; Syntax of, 307; and hic, id. rr, 1, 2; et ille, id. r.2; with Abl. of Time, 363, n.4; in O.O., 660, 2.

immū—use of, 471, c.

IMPERATIVE—112, 4; Subjv. for, 253; usage, 260-275; negative of, 270; periphrases of, 571; representatives of, 572; of Past, 272, 3; tenses of, 278; for Pro- tasis, 533, 4; in Subjv. with O. O., 652.

IMPERFECT—112, 3; force of, 223, 231; and Hist. Pf., 232; of Endeavor, Disappointment, and Resistance to Pressure, 233; overlapping, id. r.1, 562; of Awakening, 333, n.2; with iam, etc., 234; of opposition to Present, 254, n.2; as Potential of Past, 258; in Wish, 260; Subjv. as Concessive, 264; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272, 3; tense relations of Subjv., 277; in Sequence, 510, n.

Impersonal verbs—206, 1 and 2; vbs. of Saying, etc., 528; in Ger. constr., 457, n.4; with ut, 553, 4.

in—vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Countries and Towns, 337, n.1; with Acc. for Dat., 345, n.2; with app. to Towns, 366, n.1; with books, 367; with Abl. of Time, 394, n.; as prep., 418, 1; with Acc. Ger., 432; with Abl. Ger., 433.

incorporation—of antecedent, 616; of correlative, 619.

Indefinite pronouns—107; syntax of, 312-319; rel. with Indic., 254, n.4, 652.

INDICATIVE—112, 4; meaning of, 254, with indef. rel., id. r.4; tense relations of, 276; neg. of, 257; in questions, 463, 464; after nessō quis, etc., 457, n.1; in Relative Sentences, id. r.2.

indīgēre—with Gen., 406, n.

indignus—with quī, ut, or Inf., 553, n.2; with quī and Subjv., 631, 1.

INFINITIVE—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; usage of, 270, as subst., 230; after dēbō, id. 2, b.; as representative of Indic., 231; after memini, etc., id. 2, n.; Syntax of, 419-424; with Acc. as subj., 420; as subst., 421; as subj., 422; as obj., 423; ut instead, id. r.4; as pred. with esse, 655; Fut. pass., 435, n.; sequence after, 518; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 557; part. instead, id. n. 5; tenses after these vbs., 530-531; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; with vbs. of Emotion, 533; in Exclamations, 534;
Acc. and Inf. as subj., 336; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 448; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546, n. 1; with dignus, etc., 545, n. 2; after potius, etc., 614, n. 8, 9; in O. O., 650. See Hist. Inf.

Infār— as prep., 416, 19.

Inner Object—Acc. of, 336, 339, 342.

inquam—175, 2; inquit, in citing Ī. R., 648, n. 2.

inquiring—vbs. of, with two Acs., 330, and n. 1.

Instar—70, B; with Īn. 373.

instrument—in Abl., 314, 461; with ab, 314, n. 2; Abl. of, contrasted with Abl. of Attendance, 362, n. 1.

inter—with reflexive to express reciprocal action, 343; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 231, 247; position of, 412, n. 1; as prep., 416, 18; with Acc. Ger., 432.

interest—with Gen. and Abl., 361; constr. of Degree of Concern, 262, 1 and 2.

Interest—Dat. of Person, 350.

interjection—in, n. 2; no syntax, 301, n. 1.

interrogāre—with two Acs., or dat. 330, n. 1.

interrogative pronouns—in, 106; distinguished from rel., 457, n. 2.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES—490—470;
simple and cpd., 458; particles in, 454—457; moods in, 462—467; Indic., 463, 464; Subj., 465, 466; in O. O., 461.

intrā—position, 412, n. 1; as prep., 416, 18.

intraverbs—used impersonally, 206, 2; used transitively, 212, n. 5; construed as pass., 214, n. 1; with neut. subj. in pass., 317; impersonal Gerund, 362, 2.

invidēre—with Dat., 345, n. 2.

ocus—heterogeneous, 67, 2.

ipse—decl. of, 103, 3; syntax of, 311; et ipse, 10, n. 2; emphasizes reflexive, 10, 2.

is—decl. of, 103, 3; syntax of, 306; =ipsō, 10, n. 1; with et, atque, que, 10, n. 2, id temporis, metāstā, 336, n. 5; with qui and Subj., 331, 1; in O. O., 600, 3.

islands—in Local Acc., 337; with in, 10, n. 1; prep. omitted, 10, n. 7.

iste—decl. of, 104, II.; syntax of, 306; in O. O., 600, 3.

ita—with ut, 455, 4.

itāque—usage of, 500.

Iterative action—563, 567; with cum, 564; in Relative Sentences, 633.

ivūrē—with Acc., 346, n. 3.

īπērē—as prep., 416, 15.

Judgment—vbs. of, with Abl. of Standard, 430.

Knowledge—adj. of, in pred. attrib., 325, n. 6; adj. of, with Gen., 374.

laeder—with Acc., 346, n. 3.

lētus—with Acc. of Extent, 336, n. 1.

leaving—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

length—by nature, 18, 1, and n.; by position, 10, 2.

letters—tenses in, 263; advs. in, 10; dated from a place, 301, n. 3.

letting—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.

libet—added to rels., 113, 3; exact use of liburēt, 244, n. 3; libēns, in pred. attrib., 322, n. 6.

licēre—exact use of Fut. Pf., 244, n. 3; with Gen., 379; licet, although, 603—607.

līkeness—adj. of, with Dat., 340; with atque(e), 643.

litotes—700.

Local Dative—388.

Locative—23, n.; of 1st Decl., 39, n. 2; of 2d Decl., 33, n. 3, 5; syntax of, 411; app. to, in Abl., 10, n. 9; domi, with poss. pron., 10, n. 3.

locus—67, 3; Abl. without in, 365, n. 3.

LOGICAL CONDITION—506; with Subj. by Attraction, 10, n. 2; with Ideal 2d Person, 10, n. 3; alīus—alīve, 10, n. 4; in O. O., 657, 566, n. 1.

longum—with est for Subj., 254, n. 1; longē strengthens Comp. or Superlative, 301, 303; with Acc., 336, n. 1.

macta—95, C, 335, n. 1.

magnus—comparison of, 50; age with major, 296, n. 5; magis, in comparison of Qualities, 293, magis, Gen. of Price, 300, māximī, Gen. of Price, 300, 1.

making—vbs. of, with two Noma., 306; with two Acs., 340.

mālle—conj. of, 174; mālim, māllem, as Potential, 257, 2, 265; in Unreal Wish, 261, n.

mālus—comparison of, 99.

Manner—Abl. of, 300.

Material—Abl. of, 300; indicated by adj., 10.

Means—Abl. of, 402.

measure—vbs. of, take Abl., 403.
Measure—Abl. of, 403; of Difference, 403; with ante and post, id. r.
medius—used partitively, 281, r.3; Abl. used without, 388.
memini—175, b.5; First Impv. wanting, 287, r.; with Pr. Inf., 281, r.2; with Acc., 376, r.2; with cum and Indic., 560, r.3.
metre—726; unit of, 731.
meus—76; Voc. of, 100, n.1; mei with Gen., Ger., 482, r.1.
milles—a subst. in Pl., 95, r.3; miliis, with masc. vb., 211, n.1, Ex. b. n.on, of, in Sg. and Pl., 323.
minor—quam omitted with, 293, n.4; minöris, minimi, as Gen. of Price, 380, r.1; minus, no, 471, b.1; minima, no, id.; sin minus, 582; uf minus, 168.
 miseret, miserere—with Gen., 377.
modo—modo, 488, n.1; nón modo—sed etiam, 488, 5; nón modo nón, sed né—quidem, id. r.1; provided only, 573.
monère—with Inf., or ut, 546, n.1.
mood—12.4, 253; Indic., 224; Subjv., 255—265; Impv., 266—275; Inf., 279—281; attraction of, 508, 4; in Temporal Clauses, 500; in Relatives Sentences, 624—635; in Comparative Sentences, 639; in O. O., 660—682.
motion—vb. of, with Inf., 421, n.1; vb. of, with Sup., 435; vb. of, with Fut. part., 438, r.2.
movere—synecope in Pf., 121, 3.
nam—usage of, 488; position of, id.; yes for, 471, r.
naming—vbs. of, with two Accs., 360.
namque—498; position of, id.
nasci—with two Noms., 206; náttus, constr. of, 296, n.5; with Acc., 338, n.4.
né—neg. of Opt. Subjv., 260; of Impv., 270; continued by neque, 200; by nève, 270, 444, 2; with Pr. Inf., 270, r.2; syntax of, 441, 444, né—quidem, 445, 448, 452, and n.1; in Final Sentences, 543, 4; after vbs. of Hindering, 548; after vbs. of Fear, 550; with dum, 572; as Concessive, 608.
ne—as interrogative, 454; to introduce double questions, 458; necne or annón, 450; to introduce second member of an indirect question, 450, 3.
necerness—adj.s. of, with Dat., 350.
nec—see neque.
necessa—85, C.; with est instead of Subjv., 254, n.1; with Inf., or ut, 536, r.2, 553, r.1.
necessity—adj.s. of, with Inf., 421, n.2; expressed by Indic., 254, n.1, 255, r.
nédum—482, 5, 6, 2.
negative—of Potential, 267; of Opt., 260; of Impv., 270; nón with Impv., 270, r.1; nólī with Inf., 270, r.2; advs., 441—449; nón, 442; hau, 443; né, 444; subdivision of, 445; combinations, 446; position of, 448, 449; two, 449; in Copulative Sentences, 490; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4.
némö—decl. of, 70, D.; and nállus, 108; and quisquam, 317, 3.
nequam—85, C.; comparison of, 90.
néque—subdivides a general neg., or negū, 446; for et nón, 480 and r.1.
néqure—conj. of, 170, b.
nescio—an, 447, 2; quis, 447, r.1.
néu, nève—444, 2; adds Final Clause, 543, 4.
néuter—decl. of, 78, 108.
néuter—adj. with masc. subjv., 211, r.4; demonstrative when subst. is expected, Pl. pred. to two fems., 286, 3.
nève—see néu.
nihil—and nálnus, 108; neg. of quisquam, 317, 2; no, 471, b.1; nihil as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.
nihilominus—490, n.
nisi—with quod, and si nón, 591, b.; but, except, id. r.
níti—with Abl., 401, r.6.
no—how translated, 470, b. and c.
núre—conj. of, 174; exact use of númerit, 244, r.3; nihil, númeram, as Potential, 257, 2, 258; nólī, with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2; with Inf. or ut, 538 and 546, r.2.
ñomem—with esse and Dat., 349, n.5; with Gen. of Charge, 373, r.2.
nomiNative—defined, 23, 1; of 1st Decl., 29; of 3d Decl., 31; of 3d Decl., 36; for Voc., 201, r.2; syntax of, 202; two Noms., 206; with en, or exce, 243, 1, r.; after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 533.
nón—neg. of Potential, 287; neg. of Wish, 290; with Impv., 270, r.1; syntax of, 441, 442; nón possit nón, 449, n.1; no, 471, b.1; nón modo—sed etiam, 482, 5; nón modo—sed né—quidem, id. r.1.
núne—syntax of, 455.
GENERAL INDEX.

nūcantillus—188.
nūsco—syncope in P., 131, 3; 175, 5, d.
nūlius—decl. of, 76, 96; and nūmī, 108; and nūlus, 217, 2.
num—464; in indirect questions, 460, 1, a.
number—Sg. and Pl., 22; concord of, 235; violation of Concord in app., 231, n. 1; substa. of, with Gen., 306; definite numbers in Abl. of Time, 308, n. 2.
numerals—cardinals, 96; ordinals, 95 and 304; cpd., 96; omission of centena milia, ib. 6; distributives, 97 and 236; multiplicatives, 97; proportionals, 97; advs., 98; with Part. Gen., 370.

O—as interjection, 301, n. 2; 343; 5 at in Wishes, 361; 707, 5.

ob—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 231, 247; to give the Cause, 408, n. 2; as prep., 418, 16; with Acc. Ger., 432.

object—indirect retained in pass., 327; direct, 320; inner, 320, 323, 323; outer, 328; indirect, 344; of Ger., 427; after Abl. Sup., 436.

OBJECT SENTENCES—533-537; with quod, 515; with Acc. and Inf., 535, 537; with Nom. and Inf., 538; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 533; after vbs. of Emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; as subj., 535; in part., 536, 537; in Ó. O., 655.

Objective Genitive—363, 2.

ōdī—conjugation of, 175, 5, c.

omission—of subj., 307; of copula, 306; of conjunction, 493; of nōm, 488, n. 1; of vb. with an, 502, n. 1; of ã, 506; of vb. of Protaisia, 509; of vb. of comparative clause, 640.

omitting—vbs. of, with quod, 555, 1; vbs. of, with Inf., 523, 2.

ominis—in Abl., without in, 388; omnia, as Acc. of Respect, 338, 2.

opertī—Indic. for Subjv., 254, n. 1; with Inf. or Subjv., 535, n. 2; 553, 4, n.

oppidīum—requires prep., 337, n. 2; in app. to Town in Abl., 301, n. 1; in app. to Loc., 411, n. 2.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE—260—265; in Wishes, 260; in Baeberations, 263; as Impv., 263; as concessive, 264; in Deliberative Questions, 265.

opus—with Abl., 406; with part., 46.

ōrātiō oblīqua—508, 2; partial, ib. 3; sequence in, 518; in Relative Sentences, 625, n. 2; 625, r.; 646, 648; moods in, 660—668; interrogative in, 651; Impv. in, 652; tenses in, 652—655; in Causal Sentences, 655; Conditional Sentences in, 655—660; Logical, 595, n. 1, 607; Ideal, 596, n. 5, 660; Unreal, 587, n. 4, 669; pronouns in, 660; by Attraction, 508, 4, 663; partial, 506, 3, 663; Representation, 654 and n. ordinals—64; alter for secundus, 46, 5; in dates, 394; for cardinals, ib. 336, n. 1; with quinque, 313, 2; position of, 670, n. 3.

Origin—Abl. of, 365.

oxymoron—464.

paene—with Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, n. 3; position of, 677, n. 1.

paenitet—with Gen., 377.

palam—as prep., 417, 8.

pex—with est instead of Subjv., 254, n. 1; with Gen. or Dat., 360, n. 1.

parataxis—472.

parenthetical ut and nē—515, n.

pars—with Pl. vb., 311, n. 1, Ex. a.; in Abl. without in, 386, n. 3; magnam partem, 334, n. 2.

Part Affected—in Acc., 336, 1.

partial obliquity—506, 3, 561, 568.

PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES—664—670; to express Time, 668; Cause, 666; Condition and Concession, 667; relative clauses, 668; Future similarly used, 669, 670.

PARTICIPLE—decl. of, 30, 52; Abl. of, 83, n. 1; Nom. and Acc. Pl. of, ã, n. 2; comparison of, 82, 52; defined, 112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; 116, 1; Pf. pass. of Deponents as act., 167, n. 1.

Pf. with habēo and teneō, 238; Fut. periphrastic, 247; Pf. with fui, 250; usage of Pr. and Pt., 282; usage of Fut. act., 283; Pr. with Gen., 375; of Birth with Abl., 395; Pf. pass. with opus and fæsus, 406; in Abl. Abs., 406, 410; as subj., 437; as adj., 438; sequence after, 518; after vbs. of Perception, etc., 537, n. 5, 539; after vbs. of Causation, etc., 537; for Prot., 553, 2, 602, n. 3; Concessive, 609; for rel., 367.

particles—copulative, 474; adverbial, 483; disjunctive, 482; causal, 488; illative, 490; position of, 670.

Partitive Genitive—367—372; with subst. of Quantity, etc., 368; with neut. Sg., 369; with numerals, 370; with pronouns, 371; with comparatives and superlatives, 372; partitive apposition, 382.
parvus—Comp. of, 96; in Gen. of Price, 306.1.

passive—voice, 112; vbs. with two Noma, 206; vb. agrees with pred., 311; n.1, Ex. b.; defined, 216; Pf. with Dat. of Agent, 215.1; as reflexive, 216; of something endured, 219; periphrastic forms of, 242-243; impersonal, 344.n.1.

pause—in Verse, 742.

peculiarity—with Gen. or Dat., 309.n.1.

des—position of, 413.n.1; use of, as prep., 416.10.

tautometer—elegiac, 785.

per—vbs. cdp. with take Acc., 331; with Acc. of Extent, 336, 338; to Express Time Within Which, 40. n.3, 288.n.1; with Person Through Whom, 401; position of, 413.n.1; use as prep., 416.18.

persuading—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; with Acc. and Inf., 536, 557; with Nom., 536; with part., 537.n.5, 538.

perfect—defined, 112.3; System, 114.9; and 3.9; formation of, 114, 115, 121.2; syncopated forms of, 121, 1-8; Stem, 124; part. as act., 167.n.1.

Pass. with Dat. of Agent, 215.1; defined, 223; Historical, 225, 228; force of, 226; for Fut. Pf., 237; part. with habeó and teneó, 236; pass. with fut., 260; Subjv. as Potential, 257,9; in wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv., 252.2.a, 270.n.2; tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf. as subjv. or obj., 290.2; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 290.2.c; use of part., 291; sequence after, 511.n.3; in Consecutive Sentences, 513; Inf., 530.

periphrasis—for Impv., 271; for Fut. periphrastic, 515.n.2; for Fut., 521; for Apod. in Unreal Condition, 597.n.5.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—139; act., 247; pass., 251; with fut., 247.n.1; with futurum esse ut, 248; with in eo est, 246; with posse, valeo, 248.n.; Pf. part. with sum and fut., 250 and n.1; with Gen., 251; Fut. act., 253.

permitting—vbs. of, with Consecutive Clause, 552.2.

persons—in conjugation of vb., 113;1; concord of, 287; order of, 69.2.

personal pronouns—304; omitted, 69.1; Gen. of, as objective, 69.2; Gen. of, as Partitive, 69.3.

persuadere—with Inf., 546.n.1.

pertinac est—with Gen., 377.

piglet—with Gen., 377.

place—where, in Abl., 285; with vbs. of Placing, 69.1; with Towns, 288; as Cause, Means, etc., 289; with Books, etc., 287; with tésus, etc., 290; in Loc., 411; whence, in Abl., 298, 291; with Towns, 291; whither, in Acc., 337.

pleasure—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

plebe—one of, 69.6.

plenty—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adj. of, with Gen. or Abl., 69.2.

pleonasm—522.

PLUSUPERFECT—112.3; formation of, 114, 115; defined, 223; force of, 241; in Wsh, 200; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 277.3; tense force in Subjv., 377.

plural—of abstracts, 204.n.5; pred. with two subjs., 295; neut. pred. to two fems., 206.3.

plus—quam omitted with, 206.n.4; plus, plural, of Price, 306.1.

ponge—usage of, 416.19.

pose—two Accs., 320 and n.1; with 5 and Abl., 69.1.

position—of advs., 440; of neg., 448; of rel., 612; of correlative clause, 620.

positive—degree lacking, 87.3,7,8, and 9; in comparing qualities, 230.

possess conj. of, 119; use of Fut. and Fut. Pf. of, 242.n.2, 244.n.3; needs no periphrasis, 244.n.; Indic. for Subjv., 254.n.1; Impf. Indic. of Disappointment, 69.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 290.2.b; with quam, etc., to strengthen superlative, 303; non possit non, 444.n.1; in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597.n.3; in Logical Condition, 687.n.

Possession—Dat. of, 449; compared with Gen., 69.2; of qualities, 69.2; Gen. of, 306.2; in 1st and 2d person, 306.n.1.

possessive pronouns—100-106; usage of suns, 208.4; syntax of, 312; for Gen. of personal pron., 304.n.2; with Gen. in app., 331.n.2; for 1st and 2d persons in Subjective Gen., 306; as pred., 306.n.3; with interest and refer, 311; with domi, 411.n.3; position of, 478.n.1.

post—vbs. cdp. with, take Dat., 247; with Abl. or Acc. of Measure, 408.n.; as prep., 416.20.

postquam—see postquam.

postquam—with Hist. Pf. or Pr., 541; with Impf., 562; with Plupf., 562; with
GENERAL INDEX.

SUBVJ., ip. n.; Causal with PR. and PF., 544; in Iterative action, 506, 507.
POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE—285—286; for PR. and Fut., 287; for Past, 286; in questions, 280.

POFD—with Abl., 427 and n.1; with personal GER., 427, n.5.

PODIUS—QUAM, with Subjv. or INF., 644, n.8; see posses.

POWERS—adj. of, with GEN., 374; vbs. of, with INF., 485 and n.3; sequence after vb. of, 511, n.8; in Indic. rather than SUBVJ., 354, n.1, 355, n.

PRAE—vbs. cpd. with take DAT., 347; gives Preventing Cause, 406, n.3; as prep., 417, 9.

PRAETER—vbs. cpd. with take ACC., 321; use as prep., 419, 21.

PREDICATE—and copula, 205; with copulative vbs., 206; concord of, 211; in pl. with two subj.3, 225; concord of, in gender, 226; in person, 287; Attribution, 286; Apposition, ip. and n.6; after INF., 535, n.3.

PREPOSITIONS—defined, 10, 6; repeated with cpd. vbs., 331, n.2, 3; with countries and towns, 337, n.1–4; with domum, ip. n.3; omitted with countries and towns, ip. n.7; instead of DAT., 347, n.1; omitted with vbs. and adj. of separation, 300, 9 and 3; with abl. of origin, 306; syntax of, 412–418.

PRESENT—112, 3; SYSTEM, 114, 3, a; STEM, 133; defined, 222; HISTORICAL, 226, 229; SPECIFIC or UNIVERSAL, 237; of endeavor, ip. n.1; of resistance to pressure, ip. n.2; anticipates fut., 223; with iam, etc., 290; subj. as potential, 287, 2; subj. in wishes, 290; subj. as IMPVR., 323, 270, n.2; subj. as concessive, 294; tense relations in subjv., 277; inf. as subj. or obj., 290, 1; part., 283; sequence after Hist., 511, n.1.

PREVENTING—vbs. of, with nō, quōminus, or quin, 544, 549, 555, 5.

PRICE—Gen. of, 379; abl. of, 404.

PRIMUS, PRIMO, PRIMUM, 325, n.7; used partitively, 291; prior, 67, 9.

PRIUSquam—with indic., 574, 578; with PR., 575; with PR. or Fut., 578; non priusquam = dum, ip.; with subjv., 577; with ut or INF., 644, n.3.

PRÖ—to express disproportion, 299; with Nom. or ACC. in exclamations, 343, 1; for, compared with DAT., 544, n.9; as prep., 417, 10; with abl. GER., 423.

PROCOU—WITH abl. of separation, 300, 3, n.; as prep., 417, 11.

PROHIBERE—ip. n.6, 549; with quōminus, 549.

PROHIBITING—vbs. of, with DAT., 345, n.1.

PROMISING—vbs. of, with INF., 423, n.5, 527, n.4.

PRONOUNS—defined, 14, 3; decl. of, 17; personal, 100–122; Determinative, 102; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinite, 107; Pro-nominal Adjectives, 106; Possessive, 106–122; omitted, 207; syntax of, 304–319; with part. gen., 371; in O. O., 600.

PROPS—ip. n.1; position of, 675, n.1; propter and proximus, 57, 8.

PROPRIUS—with Gen. or DAT., 345, n.1.

PROPTER—for abl. of cause, 406, n.3; as prep., 419, 38; with Acc. GER., 423.

PROTASES—defined, 309; equivalents of, 500; omission of vb. of, 509.

PROTRACITION—742.

PUDET—with Gen., 377 and n.1.

PURPOSE—in inf., 423, n.5; in sup., 435; in fut. part., 433, n.8; sequence in clauses of, 512; reflexive in clauses of, 531; rel. clauses of, 620; see final sentences.

PUTARE—with Gen. of price, 379; with two Noms. in pass., 300.

PUTTING—vbs. of, with dat. and acc., or acc. and abl., 344.

QUERERE—with a, dū, ex, 330, n.1.

QUACCIS—175, 6.

QUALITY—possession of, 345, n.3; Gen. of, 348; gen. and abl. of, ip. n.2, 400, n.1; Gen. of, as prep., 348; abl. of, 400; Comparison of qualities, 309.

QUAM—after comparatives, 399; omission of, ip. n.4; with prō, ut, qui, to express disproportion, 398; in comparison of qualities, 299; with potest and superlative, 303; quam si, with subj. of comparison, 605; with qui or ut after comparatives, 631, 3; with comparative sentences, 644.

QUAMDIÜ—with, 500; with indic., 500.

QUAMQUAM—with indic. or subjv., 505.

QUAMVIS—with indic. or subjv., 500.

QUANDO—with causal indic., 549; with subjv., 541.
GENERAL INDEX.

quantity—rules for, 12, 708-712; of cpds., 715.
quant—will vbs. of Rating and Buying, 390.
quasi—with Subjv. of Comparison, 602.
que—added to rels., 111, 2; syntax of, 476.
questions—with Potential Subjv., 259; deliberative, 285, 468; rhetorical, 285, 273, 444, 468; direct simple, 463-467; with an, 467; direct disjunctive, 468; neg. of, 456; particles in indirect, 460; Indic. in, 463, 464; Subjv. in, 465, 466; indirect, 467; genuine, 463; exclamatory, 558.
quie interrogative—106 and n.
quif relative—106; after dignus, etc., 532, n.2; quod seiam, 657, n.; equiv. to cum is, 652, 654; equiv. to ut is, 650, 651; after comparatives with quam, 631, 3; see quô and quês.
quia—with Causal Indic. or Subjv., 540, 541.
quifumque—106; with Indic., 254, 4, 465.
quidam—107, 2; syntax of, 212.
quidem—position of, 679.
quilibet—107.
quin—nôn quin as Causal, 541, n.; in Consecutive Sentences, 553, 3; with vbs. of Preventing, Doubt and Uncertainty, 555; equiv. to ut nôn, 556; in Relative Sentences of Character, 632; fieri non possum quin, 556, n.
quiqui—105.
quère—conjugation of, 170, a.
quís indefinite—and quif, 107, 1; for aliiquís, Íb. n.1; syntax of, 215; aliiquís instead, Íb. n.; familiar usage of, 317, 2; quid as Inner Obj., 233, 1, n.2.
quís interrogative—106; and quif, Íb. n.
quiscum—106.
quispiam—107, 3; syntax of, 214.
quisquam—107, 3; syntax of, 217.
quisque—107, 5; syntax of, 218; with ordinals and superlatives, Íb. 2; with reflexives, Íb. 3; suum quisque, Íb. n.
quisquis—105; with Indic., 254, 4, 465.
quivis—107, 4.
quô—as Causal conjunction, 541, n.; quô in Final Clauses, 444, 9.
quod—so long as, 500; until, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572.
quod—after vbs. of Adding and Dropping, 504, 1; after demonstratives, Íb. 2; and ut, Íb. 1, n.; as to the fact that, with Subjv., 510, n.2; with Subjv. in O. O., Íb. 3; gives Ground in Exclamations, 534, a.1; with Causal Sentence in Indic. or Subjv., 540, 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 541; nôn quod, Íb. n.; quod si, 610, n.2.
quom—see cum.
quôninus—with vbs. of Preventing, 549.
quoniun—will Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541.
quoque—syntax of, 479; and etiam, 479, n.; with sed and vèrum, 462, 5 and n.1.
Rating—vbs. of, with Gen. and Abl., 379, 390.
reciprocal relations—by inter aè, 221.
recordāri—with Acc., 376, n.2.
reduplication—in Pr. stem, 123, II.; in Pf. stem, 124, III.; omitted in Pf., Íb.
Reference—Dat. of, 352.
rēfert—with Gen. and Abl., 381, 383; expression of Degree of Concern, 383.
reflexive—passive used for, 218; pronouns, 309; with ipse, 311, 2; in subord. clauses, 530-532; refers to real subj., 309, 2, 531, n.2.
refraining—vbs. of, with quin, 555, 1.
refusing—vbs. of, with nè, 548; with quôninus, 549; with quin, 555, 1.
relative pronouns—105; made indefinite, 111, 1; or universal, Íb. 2; in Inner Obj., 333, 1; and interrogative, 467, n.2.
RELATIVE SENTENCES—610-637; for Prosatia, 533, 1; position of, 612; antecedent in, 613; concord in, 614; repetition of antecedent, 615; incorporation of antecedent, 616; attraction of, 617; correlative of, 618; absorption of correlative, 619; position of correlative, 620; indefinite antecedent, 621; tenses in, 622, 623; in Iterative action, 623; moods in, 624-635; indefinite and generic relatives with Indic., 254, 14, 465; or Subjv., Íb. n.; explanatory, 626; Subjv. in, 657; quod seiam, etc., Íb. n.; with Subjv. by Partial Obliguit, 628; with Subjv. by Attraction, 629; Final, 630; Consecutive, 631; after definite antecedent or indefinite antecedent, Íb.; after comparative, Íb. 3; with quin, 632; Causal, 633; Concessive and Adversative, 634; in Inf., 636; combination of, 636; participle instead, 637, 638; in O. O., 655.
remembering—vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with Acc., Íb. n.2.
reminding—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with Abl. or Acc., ib. n.1,2.
removing—vbs. of, with Abl., 360,2.
representative—546 and n.
requiring—vbs. of, with two Acs., 330.
resisting—vbs. of, with Dat., 264.
resolution—of long syllable, 738.
resolving—vbs. of, with Inf., 423; with ut, 569.
Respect—Acc. of, 338; Abl. of, 367; Abl. of, with comparatives, 368.
restrictions—in Relative Sentences, 657, n.
Result—for Sentences of, see Consecutive Sentences.
rhythm—in arrangement, 657; defined, 720; names of, 720; rhythmical series, 720.
robust—decl. of, 45.
rogare—with two Acs., 399.
rul—at as limit of Motion, 337; in Abl. of Separation, 260,2; rụ̄ṛ in Loc. in, 411, n.1.
salvēre—conjugation of, 175,4.
saying—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 583; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 556,557; vbs. of with Nom. in pass., 558.
sclēre—first Inv. wanting, 267, n.; quod scientiam, 657, n.
secundum—as prep., 418,24; alter for secundus, 94, 5.
sed—with scientiam, quoque, after non modo, 423,5 and m.1; syntax of, 455.
seeming—vbs. of, with two Noms., 306.
semi-deponentes—187.
semi-haists—720.
semi-vocales—4, 3, A.
senex—decl. of, 71; Comp. of, 87, 9.
Separation—Gen. of, 382,2; Abl. of, 390.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES—509, 519; in sentences of Design, 515; in sentences of Result, 512; representation of Subj. in, 514, 515; in O. O., 518; after other moods, 517; after Inf. or part., 518; original Subj. in, 519; in Comparative Sentences, 608; after Hist. Pr., 611, n.1; after Pure Pf., 61, n.2; after seidend, etc., 511, n.; after vb. with future character, 515, n.3.
showing—vbs. of, with two Noms., 306; with two Acs., 340; with Acc. and Inf., 538, 537; with Nom. and Inf., 538.
al—with 3 in Wishes, 261; in Indirect Question after vbs. of Trial, 460,1, b; in Iterative action, 565, 567; sign of Condition, 560; al nōn and nisi, 561; alm, 563.
similis—compared, 57, 3; with Gen. or Dat., 399, n.1.
simul—as prep., 417,12; simul—simul, 423,1; Temporal, with atque (ā et), as soon as, 561-563; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564; with Fut. and Fut. Pf., 565.
sin—as use of, 563; strengthened by minus, etc., ib. n.
sine—as prep., 417,13.
sive—as use of, 460, 596, n.4.
sivus—decl. of, 70; with quī and Subjv., 621, 1.
Specification—Gen. of, 381.
Standard—Abl. of, 462, 463; with ex, 463, n; Abl. of, with ante or post, 463; of comparison omitted, 267.
stem—35, 1, 126; Present, 114,3, a, 125; Perfect, 114,3, b; 124; Supine, 114,3, c, 124; Formation of Verb stem, 125; varies between Conjugations, 136.
sub—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., * 381, 267; usage of, as prep., 418, 2.
subject—381; in Nom., 383; in Acc. with Inf., ib. n.1; forms of, 204; omitted, 207; prolepsis of subj. of dependent clause, 463; of Inf. omitted, 557, n.5; Acc. and Inf. as, 558; attraction of pred. after Acc. and Inf., ib. n.3.
Subjective—Genitive, 383, 384; poss. pron. instead, 394.
SUBJUNCTIVE—113,4; with generic relatives, 584, n.6, 595,1; force of, 555; Indic. with vbs. of Possibility, etc., ib. n.; Ideal and Unreal, 264,1; Potential and Opt., ib. 2; Potential of Pr. Part. and Fut., 287,288; Opt., 306; particles with Opt., 301; in asuessions, 269; as Impv., 269, 287, 277, n.1; as concessive, 264; tense relations of, 277; In Deliberative or Rhetorical questions, 265, 465, 466; in Indirect questions, 467; after vb. with Fut. character, 515, n.8; Original in dependence, 519; with quod, as to the fact that, 557, n.; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 564,4; in Temporal Clauses, in Iterative action, 557, n.; in Contemporaneous action, 573, 573; in Subsequent action, 577; with cum, 585, 586; in Relative Sentences, 567, 568; by Attraction, 504, n. 593; in O. O., 460-463.
subordinating—defined, 472; syntax of, Subordinate Clauses, 504, n.; division of, 503-502; moods in, 506; Sequence of Tenses in, 500-519.
GENERAL INDEX.

327

subsequent action—574–577; with Indic., 574–576; with Subjv., 577.

substantives—defined, 16.1; inflection of, 17; division of, 18; gender of, 19, 20; mobilis, 21.2; epicene, ἴδ. 3; heterogeneous, 67; heteroclitics, 68; metaplasias, ἴδ.; defective, 69; singularia tantum, ἴδ. A; pluralia tantum, ἴδ. B; heterologa, ἴδ. C; formation of, 180, 181, 183; adja. and parts. used as, 204, 205; Pl. of abstracts, ἴδ. n.4; agreement of pred., 211; with several adjs. in Sg., 290, n.2; verbal with Dat., 357.

subject—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 418.2.

suffixes—180–182.

sui—decl. of, 102; usage of, 300, 550–552; complement of Infinit., 200.3.

sum—see esse.

summus—comparison of, 87.2; used participltively, 201.2.

super—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; as prep., 418.4; with Abl. Ger., 453.

superlatives—in issimus, 66; in rimus, 67, 1; in limus, ἴδ. 3; in entissimus, ἴδ. 4 and 5; lacking, ἴδ. 9; of parts., 80; of advs., 93; meaning of, varies with position, 201.2; strengthened, 303; with Part. Gen., 372.

supine—112.5; system, 114.3.c; formation of, 115.3; stem, 135; defined, 434; Acc. of, 435; Abl. of, 436.

supra—as prep., 418.25.

suus—102; syntax of, 300; emphatic, ἴδ. 2; with prep. phrases, ἴδ. 4; suum cuique, 318.3.a.; with Gen. Ger., 428.n.1; in dependent clauses, 521.

syllaubs anceps—741.

syllables—division of, 10; names for, 11; open, 11.n.; close, ἴδ.; length of, 12; common, 13; quantity of final, 707–712.

syllables—690.

synapha—728.

ten—728.

tene—728.

tene—728.

trans—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 418.26.

transitive verb—defined, 213.
trial—vbs. of, with si, 408,1, 6.
ti—decl. of, 102; with mat and -pte, 102, 394,1,2; vestri and vestrum, 304,2 and 3, 364, 3; poss. pron. for, 304,2,4; tui, vestri, with Ger., 453,2,1.
tum—tum, 403,1; cum—tum, 508.
tuus—tuus; tui with Gen. Ger., 433,2,1.

U—length of Final—707, 6.
ubi—as soon as, with Indic., 561–663; with Iterative action, 503, 507.
ullus—decl. of, 76; and quisquam, 107, 3, a., 108; synax of, 317.
ulterior—67, 8.
ultri—as prep., 416, 27.
subjectio—vbs. of, with quin, 555, 3.
unntsquiquam—107, 5.
urbs—with name of Town, requires prep., 337, r.2, 356, 1, 201, 2, 411, 1, 2.
us—vbs. of, with abl., 408; with Pf. Part., 408.
ut—in wishes, 261; with quam, 361, 3; with poUtut, to strengthen superlatives, 303; nut—ita, 453, 4; after vbs. of Adding and Happening, 555, 1, 2; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543; nut non, ib. 4, 555, 5, 555; after vbs. of Fear, 550; to add restriction, 552, 3; after vbs. of Caution, 553, 1; after vbs. of Compelling and Permitting, ib. 2; after vbs. of Happening, ib. 8; after impersonals, ib. 4; Explanatory, 557; Exclamatory, 556; ut primum, as soon as, with Indic., 551–553; with Iterative sentences, 556, 557; with quin and Subj., 602; Concessive, 606; after comparatives, 621, 3.
ut, which—decl. of, 76, 106; utrum as interrogative particle, 458.
utilibet—100.
uterque—decl. of, 108; usage of, 292; with Part. Gen., 371, 1, 2.
utervis—108.
uit—with Abi., 407; with Person. Ger., 457, 1, 5.
utinam—in wishes, 361.

V—and u, 1, 6, 2; pronounciation of, 7.
v—he usage of, 408.
val—with superlative, 368; usage of, 404.
velle—conjugation of, 176; use of Fut. or Fut. Pf., 455, 2, 2; has no periphrasis, 455, 2; velim, 257, 2, 2; vellem, as Potential, 256; vellem, as Unreal, 256, 1; with Pf. Inf. act., 456, 2, 2; velim in predic. attrib., 566, 1; with Inf. or ut, 554, 1, 2.
volut, velut—if with Subj., 462.
vomere—with Gen. of Price, 379.
vomere—with Gen. of Price, 379.
vomit—106, 2, 1; with Gen. of Price, 379.
verbals—subst. with Dat., 357; in ox, with Gen., 375; formation of, 191.
vera—def., 66, 4; conjugation of, 17; inflection of, 114; deponents, 113; personal endings, 114; regular, 120, ff.; classes of, 123; list of, 127–165; Depen-
tants, 153–166; Semi-deponents, 167; Irregular, 168–174; Defective, 175; formation of, 190–200; composition of, 190, 200; Impersonal, 208; Concord of, 210, 211, 265–267; trans. and intrans., 213.
vor—syntax of, 457; with sol, 458.
vor—position, 413, 1, 1; usage, 416, 29.
vor—with etiam, 458, 2; syntax of, 458.
voc—voc. with Abi., 407; with personal Ger., 457, 1, 5.

test—101.
vetus—decl. of, 82, 2; comp. of, 67, 1, 2.
vides—vbs. of, 458, 2; with two Noms. in pass., 206; vidis, with Subj. for Impv., 458, 2.

Voca—defined, 33, 5; in 1, 33, 2, 2; in adj. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 331, 1, 1; in pred. app., 338, 1, 2.
Vocative—defined, 33, 5; in 1, 33, 2, 2; in adj. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 331, 1, 1; in pred. app., 338, 1, 2.
voice—112, 2, 213; act., 213; pass., 214.

Vu—decl. of, 45, 3.

voweis—quantity of final, 707.

Want—vbs. of, with Abi., 408; adj. of, with Gen. and Abl., ib. 2, 2.
warning—vbs. of, with ut, 546.
will—vbs. of, with Inf., 500, 2, c, 453, 2, 533; sequence after vbs. of, 516, 2, 2; with Final sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, ib. 2, 2; with simple Subj., ib. 2, 2.
wishes—in Subj., 260, 261.
without—translated by ut non, 552, 4, 2; quin, 568.

Y—length of final, 707, 3.
yes—trans. of, 471, 1, and e.

Zeugma—600.
Marriage

girl married man, quiet to each other man, girl and people in matrimonium dreu.